



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### **Usage guidelines**

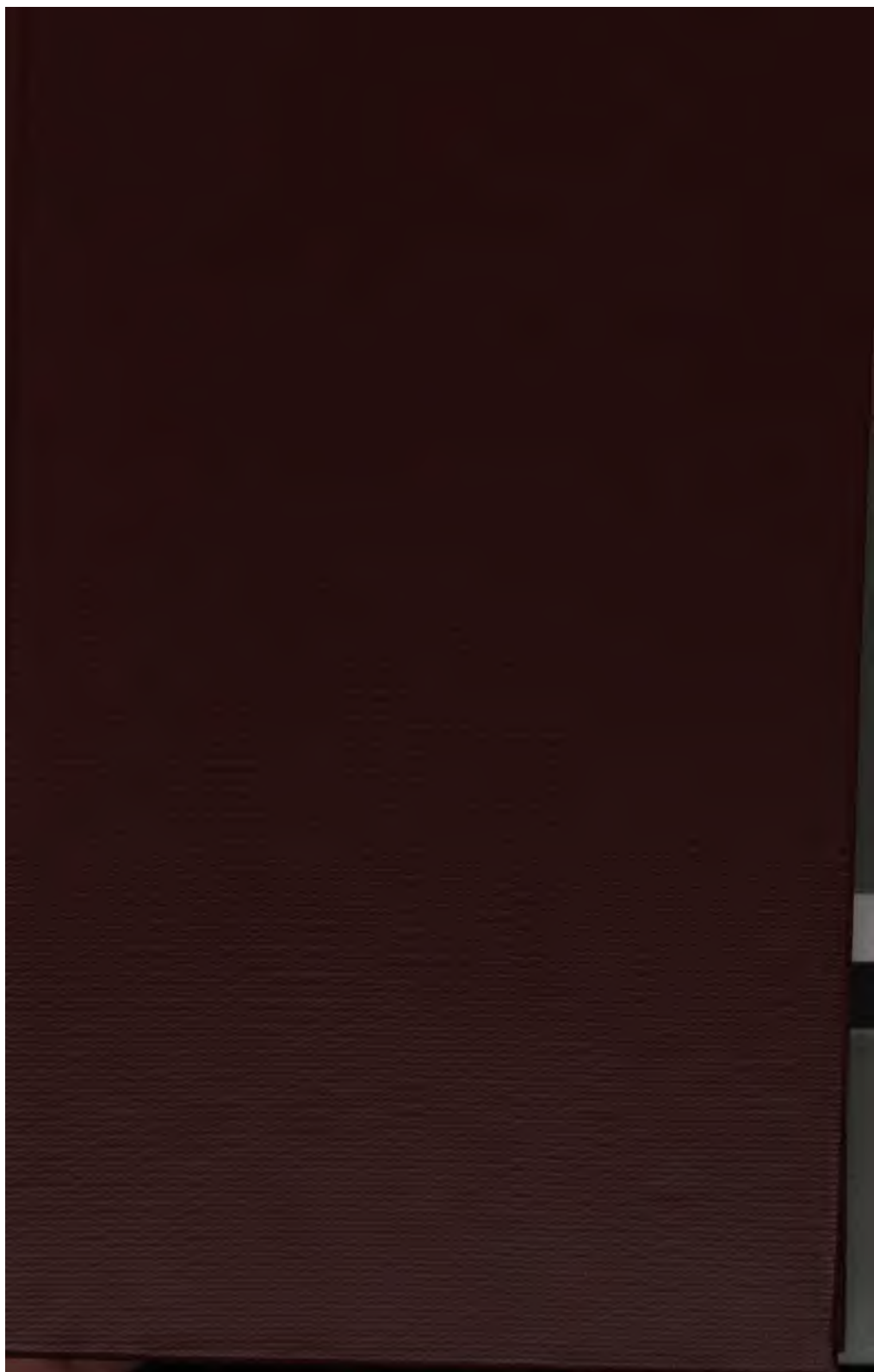
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### **About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



FROM THE  
**Subscription Fund**  
BEGUN IN 1858









Early English Text Society.

---

# Generydes,

A ROMANCE IN SEVEN-LINE STANZAS.

EDITED FROM

THE UNIQUE PAPER MS. IN TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

(ABOUT 1440 A.D.),

BY

W. ALDIS WRIGHT, ESQ., M.A.,  
BURSAR OF TRINITY COLL., CAMBRIDGE,

EDITOR OF 'DACON'S ESSAYS,' 'THE BIBLE WORDBOOK,' ETC.; JOINT EDITOR OF THE  
'CAMBRIDGE SHAKSPEARE,' ETC.

~~PART I.~~

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXIII.

*Price Three Shillings.*



# Early English Text Society.

## Committee of Management :

Director : FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, Esq.

Treasurer : HENRY B. WHEATLEY, Esq.

Hon. Sec. : G. JOACHIM, Esq., ST ANDREW HOUSE, CHANGE ALLEY, E.C.

J. MEADOWS COWPER, Esq.

REV. DR. RICHARD MORRIS.

ALEXANDER J. ELLIS, Esq.

J. A. H. MURRAY, Esq.

DANBY P. FRY, Esq.

EDWARD B. PEACOCK, Esq.

H. HUCKS GIBBS, Esq.

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT.

REV. J. RAWSON LUMBY.

HENRY SWEET, Esq.

(With power to add Workers to their number.)

## Bankers :

THE HEAD OFFICE OF THE UNION BANK OF LONDON,  
PRINCES STREET, E.C.

The Publications for 1865 and 1866 are out of print, but a separate subscription has been opened for their immediate reprint. The Texts for 1864, and all but three for 1865, have been reprinted. Subscribers who desire the Texts of all or any of these years should send their names at once to the Hon. Secretary, as several hundred additional names are required before the Texts for 1866 can be sent to press.

### *The Publications for 1864 (21s.) are :—*

1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. R. Morris. 16s.
2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 4s.
3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall. 4s.
4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. R. Morris. 10s.

### *The Publications for 1865 (21s.) are :—*

5. Hume's Orthographic and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s.
6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 8s.
7. Genesis & Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. R. Morris. 8s.
8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock. 7s.
9. Thynne on Chaucer's Works, ab. 1598, ed. Dr Kingsley.
10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley.
11. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., 1552, Part I., ed. F. Hall.

### *The Publications for 1867 (one guinea, less No. 24, 25, 26, out of print) are :—*

24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1430, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s.
25. The Stacions of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Glene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 1s.
26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS. (ab. 1440), ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 2s.
27. Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12s.
28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D. Part I. The earliest or Vernon Text; Text A. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s.
29. Early English Homilies (ab. 1290-30 A.D.) from unique MSS. in the Lambeth and other Libraries. Part I. Edited by R. Morris. 7s.
30. Pierce the Ploughmans Crede, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 2s.

### *The Publications for 1868 (one guinea) are :—*

31. Myrr's Duties of a Parish Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s.
32. The Babees Book, Urbanitatis, the Bokes of Nourture of John Russell and Hugh Rhodes, the Bokes of Keryng, Curtesy, and Demesneur, &c., with some French and Latin Poems on like subjects, ed. from Harleian and other MSS. by F. J. Furnivall. 15s.
33. The Knight de la Tour Landry from French of A.D. 1372), ab. 1440 A.D. A Father's Book for his Daughters, ed. from Harl. MS. 1764 and Caxton's version, by Thomas Wright. 8s.
34. Early English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.) from unique MSS. in the Lambeth and other Libraries. Part II., ed. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s.
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall. 2s.

### *The Publications for 1869 (one guinea) are :—*

36. Merlin, Part III. Edited by H. B. Wheatley, Esq.; with an Essay on Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie, Esq. 12s.
37. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part IV., containing Ane Satyre of the Three Estaits. Edited by F. Hall, Esq. 4s.
38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Part II. Text B. Edited from the MSS. by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. 6d.
39. The Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy, translated from Guido de Colonna. Edited from the unique MS. in the Hunterian Museum, Glasgow, by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the Rev. G. A. Panton. Part I. 10s. 6d.

# Generydes.

A ROMANCE IN SEVEN-LINE STANZAS.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

①

# Geneydes,

A ROMANCE IN SEVEN-LINE STANZAS.

711

—

EDITED FROM

THE UNIQUE PAPER MS. IN TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

(ABOUT 1440 A.D.),

*William*

BY

W. ALDIS WRIGHT, ESQ., M.A.,

HONORARY FELLOW AND BURSAR OF TRINITY COLL., CAMBRIDGE,

EDITOR OF 'BACON'S ESSAYS,' 'THE BIBLE WORDBOOK,' ETC.; JOINT EDITOR OF THE  
'CAMBRIDGE SHAKSPERE,' ETC.

LONDON:

*Fac. 55, 7.*

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL. ^

MDCCLXXVIII.

1878,

Eng. Lit., 1550

11472.55

1874, Jan. 12.  
H. A. P. & Co. & Co.  
(P. I.)

---

1879, Oct. 27.  
H. A. P. & Co. & Co.  
(P. I.)

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE present version of the story of Generydes is printed from a MS. in the Library of Trinity College, Cambridge, where it forms part of the Gale collection, and is marked O. 5. 2. From the fact that in the same volume are Lidgate's *Siege of Troy* and his *Siege of Thebes*, the whole volume was catalogued as *Lidgate's Poems*, and consequently the existence of an entirely unknown poem was not suspected. When Mr. Furnivall was engaged upon his edition of the Helmingham MS. of *Syr Generides* for the Roxburghe Club in 1866, my attention was directed to some printed fragments of another version of the story in seven-line stanzas which had been discovered by Mr. Bradshaw in the binding of an old volume in our Library, Michaelis Menoti *Sermones Quadragesimales*, Paris, 1525; a volume which had formerly belonged to Edmund Castell, the well-known Oriental scholar. After copying these for Mr. Furnivall, I found some other fragments of the same version among the papers of Sir John Fenn, the editor of the *Paston Letters*, which were in the possession of Mr. Philip Frere of Dungate, who had inherited them from his father, Sergeant Frere, the nephew and adopted son of Lady Fenn. These also I transcribed and forwarded to Mr. Furnivall, and a week later, accidentally opening the volume of *Lidgate's Poems* among the Gale MSS., my eye was attracted by the name 'Generydes,' and to my great satisfaction upon further examination I discovered that the MS. contained all but one leaf of the seven-line stanza version. It is a large folio, measuring  $17\frac{1}{4}$  inches by 12, vellum, and was written about the middle of the 15th century. No inference can be drawn from the fact that it is bound up with Lidgate's *Sieges of Troy and Thebes*, for it appears, upon closely examining it, to have been originally in a volume by itself, or to have formed a part of

another volume. The evidence of this is that the edges of the book are adorned with coats of arms, but these ornaments do not extend over the portion occupied by the story of Generydes, which was therefore, in all probability, originally distinct. At the end of the *Siege of Troy* occurs the signature 'Antonius Thwaites me possidet,' and at the end of the volume 'Henry Thwayts' and 'Henry Thwaites.' Anthony Thwaites may have been the son or descendant of John Thwaites of Hardingham, Norfolk, who married Anne, daughter of Sir William Knevet, and died 22 Henry VII., leaving a son Anthony (Blomefield's *Norfolk*, v. 1198, folio ed.). The book has evidently been in the Thwaites and Knevet families, for their arms are found in various combinations on the margins; and as the Thwaites arms do not appear in the first part, which contains the story of Generydes, whereas the Knevet arms are of frequent occurrence, it is possible that this may have belonged originally to the Knevet family, and may have been bound up with the Lidgate portion after the above-mentioned marriage of John Thwaites with Anne Knevet. The other coats of arms I have been unable to trace with any certainty. To do so would involve a minute and curious, but certainly lengthy investigation, and is altogether foreign to the purpose of this preface. As a further proof that the Generydes portion of the volume was originally distinct from the rest, I may add that the signatures of the quires, which, except the last, consist of eight leaves, are quite separate from those of the quires that follow, which evidently began a volume. Of the Generydes part there were originally 38 leaves, but one of these has been cut out, leaving a gap of 187 lines in the MS. after l. 4619. There are two columns in a page and an average of 45 lines in a column. The handwriting is very like that of the *Siege of Troy* and the *Siege of Thebes*, which follow, and all may have been the work of the same scribe.

The questions of the authorship of the English version and the source of the story are as obscure now as they were when Mr. Furnivall's edition of the other text appeared. I have applied to both M. Gaston Paris, and M. Paul Meyer, but neither of them has met with any French version of the story. It must have been sufficiently popular to have been twice translated into English, and

possibly may still be lying hid in some unexpected quarter. The disappearance of the original is scarcely more remarkable than the almost as complete disappearance of the printed edition, of which only a few mutilated fragments are known to exist. These, in all probability, belong to that which was licensed to Thomas Purfoote, as appears by the Registers of the Stationers' Company for the year 22 July, 1568—22 July, 1569, where the following entry occurs (*Arber's Reprint*, i. 389):—

**purfoote** Recevyd of **thomas purfoote** for his lycense for pryntinge  
of a boke intituled *GENERYDES* iiij<sup>d</sup>

From the poem itself we get no clue as to the original. The translator, to eke out his verse, occasionally introduces such phrases as 'the story tellith it me' (651), 'Mynne Auctour seith' (686), 'myn Auctour tellith me' (967), 'as the writeng seyth' (1081), 'myn Auctour doth witenesse' (1166), 'the story doth witenesse' (1348), 'the Story tellith me' (1648), 'the story makith mynde' (2131), 'I me reporte onto the letterys blake' (4526), 'as my Auctor doth write' (6002), 'in the story leke as I do fynde' (6732); but he tells us no more. In the Roxburghe Club version there is a French original spoken of, and a Latin translation from it by a clerk at Hertford, but here the information ends.

'Now of a geste that was sum tyme,  
That was radde in frensh ryme:  
A clerk itt in to latyn tooke  
Att hertford out of a booke,  
There in latin was it wretin,  
As clerkes wele knowen and weteñ.'

In order that those who read the story may not be interrupted by the gap which occurs in consequence of the loss of a leaf from the MS., I give in brief the missing portion from the other version.

After the slaughter of Sir Yuell, Generydes makes his way to the ship in company with Clarionas and the lavender, and reaches Persia in safety, where they are welcomed by the Sultan, who makes a great feast in honour of their return. After the first course had been served, appear three messengers from Auferius to the Sultan, begging him to send his son Generydes to assist him in recovering his lost kingdom



of India from Sir Amelok. The Sultan, who now hears for the first time that Generydes is a king's son, offers him half Persia and his daughter Clarionas in marriage. Generydes in return asks for a hundred knights, that he may win his father's heritage, and desires that his marriage with Clarionas may be put off till he comes back as a conqueror and can make her Queen of India. The Sultan grants his request, and allows Darel and those who were knighted with Generydes to accompany him. But when the plan was communicated to Clarionas she was filled with dismay.

The story then goes on as in the text.

I have in almost all cases printed the MS. as it is written, except where there was an obvious error destructive to the sense of a passage. In such instances I have sometimes corrected the text, putting the MS. reading at the foot of the page, and sometimes have introduced the correction in the Glossary. But I have not always attempted to fill up the defective or correct the irregular lines, and have sometimes left the reader to amend the text for himself. Professor Zupitza, in the first volume of *Anglia*, pp. 481—483, has printed some conjectural emendations, some of which I had already made in the margin of my own copy. They are included in the following list of correction :—

In 34 after *pite* insert *was*. In 39 for *lesse* read *lest*, as Professor Zupitza suggests. In 146 for *sothe* read *soche*. In 307 for *also* read *al so*. In 308 Professor Zupitza conjectures that we should read *preyse* for *plese*. In 335 omit *be*. In 414 omit *to*. In 454 for *hem* read *me*, as Zupitza suggests, where the MS. has *he*. In 601 for *fourth* read *fourth with*. In 707 for *renew* read *remew = remeve*. In 864 the MS. has *tell vs att it is*, for which I originally conjectured *telle what it is*, or *telle all as it is*. I now think the true reading is *telle it as it is*. Zupitza conjectures *as att (= that) it is*; but when *at* or *att* in this poem is used as a relative it is always preceded by 'that.' See 347, 591, 4388. In 1042 for *send* read *sendeth*. In 1163 the reference to the foot-note is omitted before *Ayre*. Omit full-stop at end of 1190. In 1330 for *obeyed* read *obeye*. In 1383 after *all* insert *that*, and omit *that* in 1386. In 1446 omit the second *he*. In 1455 Zupitza conjectures *wrought* for *sought*. In

1460 Zupitza suggests that *Anasere* should be printed instead of *Anasore*, because it is made to rhyme with *prisonere* and *ther*. Perhaps he is right, though in another passage, 2061, I had changed *ther* to *thore* for the sake of the rhyme, as the form *thore* occurs in 3394, 4316. The same correction would apply to 1725 (MS. *Anasare*), 2059; 2592, 2858, to which may be added 5575. In the present text, however, the forms of the name vary between *Anasore* and *Anasare*, while in the Roxburghe Club version we find *Anazares* and *Anazare*, and I do not feel certain that after all the instances noticed by Zupitza may not be cases of imperfect rhymes. In the various readings given from the printed fragments at p. 224 it will be seen that in 2059 the printed text has *Anazere*, but then in the next line the reading is altered to *that there were*. To proceed with the correction of the text: in 1556 omit *hoole*. In 1633 Zupitza conjectures *ye rebuke* for *he rebukith*; perhaps the single change of *he* to *ye* would be sufficient. In 1765 put a comma at the end of the line. In 2130 read *traytourly*. In 2481, 2482 something is wrong. Zupitza proposes to omit *That* in the first line. I would suggest the insertion of *it ranne* after *bak* in the second. See 2678. In side-note against 2524 for *Moutenor* read *Mountoner*. In 2576 the MS. has *hyn*, which I have corrected to *hym*, a form of *hem* which occurs more than once in the poem. Zupitza suggests *hem*. In 2682 *withoute moo* should not be between inverted commas. See Zupitza's note on Guy of Warwick, 719. In 2831 for *man of age* we should probably read *maner age*. In the side-note opposite 3018 for p. 60 read p. 69. In 3087 Zupitza suggests *left* for *lost*. In 3125 there is a corruption. We should probably read *Thus* for *This*, and the next word may be read *towardly* in the MS. In 3246 for *on* read *on to*. In 3297 for *to fight* read *for to fight*. In 3347 for *his* read *he his*; but there is still a corruption in the passage, as is seen from the faulty rhyme. Perhaps we should read *whanne he him understode*. In 3392 for *knew* read *knew how*. In 3412 for *take* read *to take*. In 3414 after *councell* insert *the*; and in 3416 after *some* insert *be made*, as Zupitza suggests. In 3570 for *specially* read *speciall*. In 3635 for *swift* read *swift*. In 3695, 3696 transfer the comma from

*voise to courte*. The number of leaf 20 should be opposite 3712. In 3761 for *said* read *saide*, as MS. In 3780 omit *Iuell* and the full-stop at the end of the line, and in 3781 insert *ride* after *cowde*. At the end of 3859 omit note of exclamation. In 3921 the MS. has *on on*; perhaps we should read *and on*. In 4069 for *after now* read *now after*. In the marginal note opposite 4201 for *Four* read *A few*. For 2467 read 4267 (p. 136). In 4489 the line should be amended by reading *at all aventure*. In 4702 for *be* read *he*, as MS. In 5333 for *noo* read *non*. In 5628 for *lorde* read *lady*; and in 5651 omit *on* after *lay*. In 5664 omit *mayde*; and in 5705 for *hir* read *his*. In 5718 after *please* insert *it*. In 5821 insert *on* before *apace*. In 5858 for *ganna yei fall* read *yei fill*. In 5894 omit *ought*. In 6029 for *thorough* read *thorough out*. In 6087 for *euerychone* read *euerych*; and insert *so* before *stronge* in 6091. In 6195 for *them* read *hym*. In 6271 the metre may be amended by reading *Ther to Abide to tyme, &c.* In 6296, 6297 there is some corruption, probably due to the omission of some lines. At the end of 6443 omit comma. In 6569 for *swounyng* read *swoune*. On p. 211, l. 9614 should be 6614; and in the following line *non* should be inserted after *of*. In 6619 insert *the* before *tideng*. In 6640 for *place* read *pales* = palace. In 6693 for *in* read *in to*. In 6718 insert *was glad* or *was fayn* before *of*. There is a corruption in 6821, but I do not see my way to a restoration of the text. In 6966 read, for the sake of the metre, *All as myn Auctour doth rehearse*. In the marginal note, 3435, for *untrew* read *untrue*; and add ERBYS, *sb.* herbs, 6821, to the Glossary.

Besides these there may be many others, but they are not such as to cause a reader any difficulty, and the remedy is generally very obvious.

The Glossary will, I trust, be found fairly complete.

W. A. W.

Trinity College, Cambridge.

December 7, 1878.

# G E N E R Y D E S.

---

In olde Romans and storys as I rede, Of Inde Somtyme ther was a nobyH kyng, Ientih, curteys, fuH trew in worde and dede, Wyse and manly preuyd in euery thyng, To his people fuH good and eke lovyng, Mighty and ryche, a mañ of nobyH fame, And Auferius this was the kynges name.	1 [leaf 1] Auferius, king of India,  4  a man of noble fame, 7
This worthy prince hadde weddyd in serteyne A fayre lady, and comne of nobyH kynne ; And what pleasure he cowde for her ordeyne, That shuld be do, ther was noo lette therin ; In euery thyng he dede hyr loue to wynne, He hadde nomore to lese and that he knewe, ffor afterward she was to hyñ vntrewe.	8 married a fair lady, Serenydes, daughter to the king of Africa, 11  14 who was unfaithful to him.
Hire fader was a mañ of grete powre, And kyng of aufrike as I vnderstonde, his doughter quene of Inde as ye shall here, kepyng right grete estate withynne the lande, And aH the reme obeyed to hyre hande ; And of hyr name to telle withoutyñ lese, The story seyth she hight Serenydes.	15  18  21
This kyng of ynd, of whom I spake before, hadde a Styward a mañ of grete renownñ, he gouernyd the contre bothe lesse and more, Also he hadde the Rule of euery towne, And namely tho that longyd to the crowne : him for to plese the pepiH were fuH fayne, And ser amelok his name was for sertayne.	22  His Steward, Sir Amelok, who governed the country, 25  28

was very intimate with her.	Not long after ther felle suche aqueyntaunce Betwix the Quene and hym, that allway stifi hire mynde, hyr thought, was sette to his plesaunce, All his desire hooly for to fulfil,	29  32
	And whenne he lyste she was aH atte his wille ; Gret pite that she in suche a wyse Shuld sette hyr wurchippe atte so litiH prise.	35
One day the king,  with four or five attendants,	Vppoñ a day the kyng' for his disporte An huntyng' went onto a fayre forest, Whanne he was sadde to putte hym in coumfort, he lefte his meñ at home bothe most and lesse, Save iiij or v suche as hym semyd best, And forth he gothe ther as the hartys hye, his houndys were oncopelyd by and by.	36  39  42
rode a hunting into a fair forest,	An hert was fownde among the holtys hye, And vppe vppoñ his fete he was a noñ ; The houndys went after with a mery crye, The kyng rode after aH hym self alone, TyH he hadde lost his knyghtes euerychone, The houndes and the hert, that was be fore, Withynne a while they harde of them nomore.	43  46  49
and was separated from his companions.	So rode he fourth as noo thyngge he roughit, hys game was lost, his knyghtes forþe be hynde, And specially on them was aH his thought, For houghie they were he wyste not them to fynde, Thus rydith he sore trobelyd in his mynde ; The day was gonne, wherefore right hertely To god he prayd to send hym some remedy.	50  53  56
He lost his way,	And, As god wold, hym happyd in a waye, Whiche brought hym streyte to a goodly place ; And as his goodis is redy to purvaye	57
but rode on till he came to a road which led to a house,		

- ffor good people in euery nedefuH case, 60  
 With that counfort he rode a better pase,  
 And whenne that he was come nygh hande *therate*, when a fair  
 A fayre mayde ther openyd hym the gate. 63 maiden opened  
 the gate
- She seid he was welcome to that ostage, 64 and welcomed  
 'There were nomore but she and other twayn), him.  
 One of them was a man) right ferre in age,  
 The toder was hyr mayden) in *sertayne*, 67 She and her maid  
 and an old man  
 were the only  
 inhabitants,  
 To make hym chere they dede ther besy payn),  
 To hyr chaunbyr she brought hym) verily,  
 Whiche was arayed right wele and richely. 70 and she  
 brought him  
 to her chamber,
- In that chaunber ther was an hanged bedde, 71 where was a  
 Of sylk and gold fuH curyously wrought, bed with curious  
 And ther vppon) a shete of launde was spredde, hangings.  
 As clenly dressed as it cowde be thought : 74  
 'And nowe,' *quod* she, 'that ye be hedyr brought,  
 Yow to counfort is holy myn entente,  
 This howse is all atte your comaundement.' 77
- Anone vppon) as she these wordis saide, 78  
 Ther come an hert in att the chaunber dore  
 All embosed ; the kyng) was sore dismayede,  
 Semyng) to hym), as it passid in the flore, 81  
 It was the same he chased in the more ;  
 This is, thought he, for me some *maner* trayne,  
 And ther with [all] she seyde to hym) ageyn) : 84  
 which the king  
 thought was the  
 same he had  
 chased.
- 'Be not a ferde of this sodeyn) aventur ; 85 'Be not afraid,'  
 It is for no harme, it is all for your beste, said she, 'it is all  
 for the best,  
 This old fader he knowit very sure,  
 Of vij Saugys callid the wysest 88 as the old man  
 knows, who is  
 the wisest of the  
 7 Sages of Rome.  
 That was in Rome, but *ther* he myght not rest,  
 fuH wekydly he and his vj felawes  
 In to the see were cast among the wawis. 91

4 SEREYNE TELLS AUFERIUS OF HIS WIFE'S UNFAITHFULNESS.

When he was cast adrift with his fellows, he was thrown on the coasts of Syria, where my father is king,	And as the grace of god it wold ordeyne, In Surre was this goodman cast a lande, Where my fader is kyng <sup>r</sup> and souerayne, Seke and wery ye may wele vnderstonde ; And whanne that he was founde on the sand, he sent for hym to come and not to fayle, And whenne he came was made chefe of his counceH.	92       95
and became the chief of his council. <sup>o</sup>	He sayde the land of Surry shuld be lost By a Gyaunte, and aH for love of me ; Wherefore be his avyse in to this cost I am come here, in lyke wyse as ye see ; And forthermore I praye yow take in gre, That I shaH in your presence declare, As fortune witt for youre ease and welefare.	99       102    105
By his advice I was sent here,  and I pray you now pardon me for what I shall say, [leaf 1, back]	And in this case to telle the mater playne, Of very trougth and make no more delays, This nyght <i>ther</i> shaH be gotten betwix vs twayne A child that shaH do mervelys in his dayes, And moche a do he shaH haue many wayes With grete travell, and aH eskape right wele, This old fader canne tell this euery dele.	106       109    112
for to-night a child shall be begotten between us that shall do wonders.	Only for this, and for noH other thyng, The hert that ye haue chased aH this daye, he was trewly the cause of your comyng, And to this place he gidyd yow the weye ; <sup>1</sup> This is the very trougth as I yow saye, Yet most ye knowe a thyng that is be hynd, Touchyng the quene, whiche is to yow vnkynd	113       116    119
For this cause the hart led you hither.	And vtterly ontrew in euery thyng ; She and the Stiward bothe of on assent, With ther sotilte and false Imageninge,	120

<sup>1</sup> MS. *refe.*

- Yow to distroye that is ther hoole entente, 123 and with the  
 ffor she is hoole at his commaund[e]ment ; Steward has  
 And all to do yow hurte and hynderaunce, plotted your  
 Whiche afterward shalbe to *your* plesaunce.' 126 death.'
- For these tidynges the kyng abasshid sore, 127 The king was  
 But ayenward whanne he thought on that mayde sore abashed,  
 Anone his cher amendid more and more,  
 Remembryng<sup>1</sup> the wordis that she sayde 130  
 Of his abideng<sup>1</sup> ther ; thenne he hyr prayed and asked to  
 To late hym<sup>1</sup> wete the very certente, know the real  
 And she answerd ayen<sup>1</sup> that myght not be. 133 cause of his  
 being there,
- 'This old fader that is my felaw here, 134 but she said  
 he canne telle that as wele as eny wight.' the old man  
 The kyng<sup>1</sup> hast[ed] to here of this mater, could tell him,  
 And prayed that man<sup>1</sup> that he wold telle hym<sup>1</sup> right.  
 he answered hym<sup>1</sup> and saide, 'as for that nyght  
 Go to your rest, for that is my counceit, and this he  
 To morow sha<sup>1</sup>ll ye knowe withoute fayn<sup>1</sup>, 140 promised to do  
 next day.
- Ano<sup>1</sup>n vpon ther soper<sup>1</sup> was redy, 141  
 She *seruyd* hym<sup>1</sup>, in<sup>1</sup> like wyse as hym<sup>1</sup> ought, At supper the  
 And euery thing Accordeng<sup>1</sup> by and by, lady waited  
 For his plesur<sup>1</sup> trowly ther lakkyd noght, 144 upon him, and
- With all deyntes trevly as cowde be thought ; 144  
 Hyre chere, hyr porte, it was in sothe awyse,  
 That more goodly that cowde noma<sup>1</sup>n devise. 147
- After soper, withynne a litill space 148  
 She brought hym<sup>1</sup> to his bedde with torche light,  
 And eyther stode so wele in otheris grace, after supper  
 That she with hym<sup>1</sup> layde in armys right ; 151 brought him to  
 And what plesure they hadde as for y<sup>t</sup> nyght, his bed.
- Peraventure full good, who so it wist, 154  
 I canne not saye, deme ye as ye list.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *and in.*



- But how that euer it was be twix them thwayne, 155  
 It happith, so the writeng' doth expresse,  
 That nyght ther was a child goten certeyn ;  
 After his hunteng' and his besynesse, 158  
 ffor his travel and his grete werynes  
 he felle a slepe, and for to saye yow more  
 She sleppyd not, but lay and syghid sore. 161
- after which the  
king fell asleep,  
but the lady  
lay awake  
sighing,  
 With hyr syghenyng' a non with AH she wept, 162  
 And on his armys dede the terys falle,  
 That thorough his shirte he felt it as he slept ;  
 Right sodenly he brayded and wooke with AH, 165  
 And curtesly on hyr he beganne to calle,  
 'I drede me sore,' quod he, 'in myn entente  
 That of my comyng heder ye repente.' 168
- letting her tears  
fall on his shirt;  
so that he  
awoke,  
 'Repente,' quod she, 'nay, nay, I yow ensure, 169  
 Your' departeng' is cause of all my smerte,  
 Only for that I do this payne endure,  
 ffor I shall lose the plesur' of myn hert, 172  
 And all my Ioye, I may it not asterte,  
 Withoute socour' or helpe O warentice,  
 My disteyney hath shape it in this wyse.' 175
- saying he feared  
she repented of  
his coming.  
 'Fair lady,' he said, 'I hope  
we shall not  
part so soon,  
 'My fayre lady,' quod he to here Ageyne,<sup>1</sup> 176  
 'I haue good hoope we shall not parte so sone,  
 And if we do, I seye yow certeyn  
 My chefe counfort is all to geder doon ; 179  
 To morow shall we wete or it be none,  
 This old fader that ye kepe with you here,  
 he shall telle vs the trougth of this mater.' 182
- but to-morrow  
the old man will  
tell us.  
 When it was day and it was tyme to rise, 183  
 This old fader on to the kyng' he goth,  
 And whanne he cam he spak in this wise ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Areyne*.

- ‘That I shaſt ſey, leve me withoute othe, 186 At daybreak the  
 This nyght is geten a ſone betwix yow both, old man  
 Whiche ſhalbe ſuche, myn) auctour doth expreſſe, told him that he  
 That aſt contres ſhaſt ſpeke of his prowesse. 189 muſt leave,
- Here may ye a byde no lenger in this place, 190  
 ffor very trougth for cauſes more thanne on ;  
 But of your’ ſhirt I muſt telle yow the cauſe,  
 Vppon) the whiche hir terys felt vppon) : 193 and that the  
 Ther ſhaſt non) waſſh them) owt but ſhe alone, could only be  
 Not be no maner of craft, take this of me, waſhed by the  
 But ſhe ſette handes therto it wiſt not be. 196 lady herſelf.
- And now to yow, madame, thus I ſaye ; 197 The lady he  
 Yow muſt departe, and I ſhaſt telle yow whye, warned to return  
 The kyng youre fader is right ſeke this day, to her father,  
 And lythe ner’ vppon) the poynte to dye ; 200 who was dying.  
 And but ye ryde this day right haſtely,  
 And leve aparte aſt other thyng) therfore, [leaf 2]  
 Ye are not lyke to ſpeke with) hym) nomore.’ 203
- When) he ſeid aſt that he thought) to ſeye, 204  
 Ther nedid noo displeaſur’ to be ſougth ;  
 The kyng) knewe wele ther was non) other way,  
 They muſt departe, and that was aſt his thought) ; 207  
 Thenne were they bothe ſo ferre in ſorow brought),  
 Be cauſe of ther’ ſo ſodenly departeng),  
 They cowde not ſpeke a word for erthely thyng). 210
- He toke his leve in ſorowfull) maner, 211 The king took his  
 hym for to be holde it was a grete pite ; leave in ſorrow,  
 And furthe he rideth) with) full) heuy) chere,  
 With) his knyghtes to mete and it wold be : 214  
 And at the laſt it happyd) hym) to ſee,  
 Where as they rode in a full) fayre vaile, and in a fair  
 he ſporyd) his hors and theder toke the way. 217 valley fell in with  
 his knyghts,

- They hym) perseyued sone, and forthe they went, 218  
 A none they mette the kynge vppon) the waye,  
 who saw that he was sad. he was no thyng' mery to ther entente,  
 That wist they wele yet durst they noo thyng' seye, 221  
 Withynne his brest he kept it day be day ;  
 And whanne that he came home, I yow ensure,  
 Of his counceit ther wist non) erthely creature. 224
- Now to this lady lete vs turne ageyn, 225  
 Whiche to Surry hath take hir viage,  
 The lady went her way to Syria with the old man and her maid, And in hir companye no mañ but twayn),  
 hir mayde and the old man) ferre in age ; 228  
 So atte last they come to the village,  
 Ther for to rest as for a nyghtis space,  
 A dayes Iurney owt of the kynges place. 231
- She Rode to court in grete heynesse, 232  
 And furth with añ she came to the kyng',  
 and came to her father, Which was febyñ and sokyd with sekenesse ;  
 Yet not for thy he hadde trew knowleginge 235  
 Of his doughter, and gave hyr his blyssyng',  
 who gave her his blessing, his land, is good, withoute eny stryffe,  
 and died, And so to god he passed owt of his lyffe. 238
- There was wepyng' and many a hevy chere, 239  
 Among' them añ grete sorow ganne they take,  
 And as it is the custom) and maner,  
 Anone they were arrayed in clothis blake ; 242  
 And sone<sup>1</sup> vppoñ ordenaunce ganne they make,  
 and was royally buried. In añ the hast posible as for his beryng',  
 In Ryañ wise accordyng' to A kyng'. 245
- This yong' lady so goodly and so faire, 246  
 The lordes añ and the Comyns of the lande,  
 Be cause she was his daughter and his ayre,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *sone* A.

- They toke hir for ther quene I vnderstonde, 249 His daughter  
 And crowned hir with septer in hyr hande ; was crowned  
 And afterward, as is the right vsage, queen,  
 The lordys all to hir dede homage. 252
- She was full wele belouyd in certeyne 253 and was well  
 Of hir lordes and of hir comenaute, beloved,  
 And of hir name she was callid Sereyne, 256 but refused to  
 ffro the first day of hir natiuite, marry.  
 ffuH humbly they hir be sougHt that she  
 Wold be maryed, for that was ther a vise, Her name was  
 But that she wold not in no maner a wyse. 259 Sereyne.
- The tyme came that hir wombe be ganne to grow 260 At length, when  
 Som dele gretter thanne it was wont to be, her womb began  
 But yet she wold not it hadde beH knowe ; to grow, she took  
 here mayde she callid furth in priuite, 263 counsel with her  
 Meden she hight, the story tellith it me, maid Medeyn,  
 To whom the quene hadde a right fey[th]full trost,  
 ffor to that mayde she mygHt sey what here lyst. 266
- And whan she came, she told here all the case, 267  
 lyke as it was of all here aventur :
- ‘Madame,’ quod she, ‘ I shall with goddes grace  
 ffuH trewly kepe your counceH be you sure :’ 270 who promised to  
 be true to her,  
 So went she fourth hyr seosynne to endure, and so it went on  
 Till atte last, be goddes purvyauce, till the time of  
 The tyme was come of hir delyueraunce. 273 her delivery  
 arrived.
- Thenne was ther non of counceH saue Medeyn ; 274  
 Ther was no noyse, nor ther was noo cryeng,  
 I canne wele thynk the gretter was hir payne ;  
 her meny hadde non other knowlege, 277  
 But hir sekene was of some other thinge :  
 So this lady, full debonerly and myld,  
 Brought furth a sonne whiche was a threfte child. 280 She brought forth  
 a son ;

but none knew save Medeyn, who took it to a lavender to be brought up.	Medeyne it toke and in hir lappe it leyde, She brought it streyght on to a lavender ; ' This is sothely my Suster sonne,' she sayde, ' I wold it were kept in good maner.'	281 284
A nurse was found for the child,	First to a norise, as fast as euer they canne, They brought the child withoute eny lese ; And thanne to chirch to make a cristenmañ,	288
who was christened Generydes.	And callid it be name Generydes ; Thenne his moder, after aȝ hir dissese, Askyd medeyñ if she hadde done wele And she seid yae, and told hir euery dele.	291 294
As soon as he could speak	Whenne the tyme was come that he cowde speke and goo, And vnderstonde what folkys did hym calle,	
the queen sent for Medeyn to bring him to court.	The quene anoñ, withoute wordes moo, Callid Medeyñ, and she came furth with aȝ : ' Medeyñ,' quod she, ' my wiȝ in <sup>1</sup> especiall Is for to haue my sone Generydes In courte <sup>2</sup> with me his honour to encrease.'	298 301
[leaf 2, back]	To curte he came a pratye yong <sup>r</sup> seruaunt, But what he was ther wyst noo creature, Saue only this that Medeyn was his Aunte, <sup>3</sup>	302
He came, and grew up at court,	And so fourth in courte he dede endure, Tiȝ he was wexen of a goodly stature, And ther with also Ientiȝ and curteys, That <sup>4</sup> aȝ the countre <sup>5</sup> right gretely did hym plesse.	305 308
till one day he asked Medeyn of his father.	Vppoñ A day he axkid of Medeyn Of his ffader, and hough is moder was, She answeryd hym, and this sho sayde ayen,	309

<sup>1</sup> MS. *is in.*      <sup>2</sup> MS. *contre.*      <sup>3</sup> MS. *Aunte.*  
<sup>4</sup> MS. *Thall.*      <sup>5</sup> ? *courte.*

- 'I yow beseche of respite in this case 312  
 Tilt on) the morow, and thenne with goddes grace  
 All that ye haue desired now of me,  
 Sone shaH ye knowe the very serteynte.' 315
- Of his desire the quene hadde knowleginge, 316  
 She sent for hym) and seid, 'Generydes,  
 Of ynde suerly your' fader is the kyng',  
 And I your moder am withoute lese; 319  
 But ye must kepe this mater husht and pece,  
 ffor ther is non) that knoweth it saue we twayne  
 In all the court, but if it be Medeyn.' 322
- And whenne he knowe this mater very right, 323  
 Streyght to the quene he seid for eny thing;  
 Besechyng' hir of licence that he myght  
 Se the courte where his fader is kyng': 326  
 ffor as hym) thought it were right wele semyng',  
 ffor to do hym) seruice as in that case,  
 And rather ther thanne in a stranger place. 329
- And he wold so demene hym) furth with all, 330  
 That in the countre ther shuld no maner weighth,  
 But if it were the kyng' in especiaH,  
 Wete what he<sup>1</sup> were be countenaunce or sight. 333  
 The quene Answeryd and seyde, 'all is but right  
 That ye desire, and therefore be myn) Assent  
 Is and shalbe to forder your ente[nt].'  
 336
- And furth with all she callid Natanell,<sup>2</sup> 337  
 A Ientiff man) right connyng and courteyse;  
 To hym) she told this mater euery dele,  
 Of hyr and of hir sonne Generydes, 340  
 And who is fader was withouten) lese,  
 And how that his desire in eny wise  
 Is for to do his fader some seruice. 343

The queen told him she was his mother, and the king of India his father.

He begged that he might go to India to his father.

promising to keep the secret of his birth.

The queen entrusted him to the care of Natanell.

<sup>1</sup> MS. I.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Natanell.

- ‘Therefore,’ *quod* she, ‘I *prae* yow feithfully, 344  
 That ye witt do the pleasure that ye may  
 Onto my sone, and teche hym throughely  
 That att longith to hym to do or saye ; 347  
 ffor his expencez and for his aray,  
 ffor hors or meñ that maye be for your spede,  
 he shañ not lakke no thyng that hym nede. 350
- whom she warned  
to beware of the  
Steward, But be weñ ware that the Stiward knowe not this, 351  
 Whiche is ontrewē and hatñ be many a daye ;  
 ffor if he may knowe who is sonne he is,  
 he witt suerly distroye hym and he maye : 354  
 Wherefore whanne ye come ther this shañ ye seye,  
 A Dukes sone he is and borñ in Greke,  
 To se the kyng and wurchippe for to seke. 357
- And whanne ye maye fynd good leyser and spase, 358  
 That sekerly ye may speke with the kyng,  
 Ye shañ me recomaunde on to his good grace  
 ffulf humbly, and take ye hym this ryng, 361  
 he gave it me atte our last departeng ;  
 Whē he it seth it shañ his thought renewe,  
 And suerly knowe that your message is trew.’ 364
- and to convey a  
ring from her to  
the king. This Ientih mañ gave answer<sup>1</sup> in this wise : 365  
 ‘Madame,’ *quod* he, ‘my witt is and shañ  
 To do your sone pleasure and *seruice*,  
 As ye shalbe right wele content withañ, 368  
 With goddes grace and what that euer befañ,  
 Better or werse or what aventure be tyde,  
 Ye shañ witt wete I witt with hym a byde.’ 371
- Natanell pro-  
mises to obey  
her wishes. Furthe on his way Rideth Generydes, 372  
 lakkyng no thing that cawde be hadde in mynde ;  
 And of his labour wuld he neuer seze,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *an answer.*

TiH he come streygh̄t atte Reme of ynd,	375	They come to India, to the chief city
Thenne forthermore as reasone wold hym bynd,		
Of dyuerse folke he asked where laye the kyng' :		
Att parentynne, they seid withoute feyning,	378	Parentine,
Off aH the land named the chefe Citee :	379	
Then NataneH as sone as euer he mygh̄t,		
The best loggyng' of aH that he cowde see,	382	where NataneH took a lodging,
ffor his maister he dede it redy digh̄t,		
And ther he toke his rest as for that nygh̄t, ✓		
And on the morow in good and riche araye,	385	and on the morrow they went to court.
he went to see the kyng' ther as he laye ;		
And NataneH with hym in companye.	386	
The kyng' was sette and serued in the haH,		The king was in the hall among his lords.
With knygh̄tes and Esquyers throughely,	389	
In grete astate among the lordes aH ;		
Thanne NataneH the porter' ganne to calle,		
he came anoñ withoute taryeng',	392	
And curtesly gaue them ther welcomyng'.		
Furthe anoñ in to the halle they ganne goo,	393	
And to the kyng' they made Reuerence,		They made their reverence to him,
lyke as it was accordyng' for to do.		
Thenne NataneH in opyn audience,	396	
Before his lordes in his hye presence,		
ffuH connyngly in aH his demeanyng',		
Right in this wise he seide onto the kyng' :	399	and NataneH said
' Rygh̄t noble prince, this Ientilman present	400	
To yow is come ferre out of his contre,		
A dukes sone of Greke born by disente,	403	that Generydes was the son of a duke of Greece,
here in your' court desireng' for to be,		[leaf 3]
To lerne connyng' and wurchippe for to see :		
The Duke his ffader wold he shuld do so,	406	who desired to be in the king's court.
And be rygh̄t gladde ye leste excepte hym so.'		



	When he hadde seid and made his Reuerence,	407
	The kyng <sup>e</sup> anon thanne answeyrd to NataneH,	
The king gave them welcome,	And seid he was welcome to his presence,	
	Be holding <sup>e</sup> wele his face and euerydele ;	410
and was re- minded of the lady who had harboured him so well,	Thenne that lady that harboryd hym) so wele ffeH in his mend, and thought be his visage he was full lyke to be of hire lenage.	413
	He loked fast oñ to hym) in stede fast wise,	414
thinking Ge- nerydes might be his son.	And thought alway his sonne that he shuld be : Whenne mete was do the kyng <sup>e</sup> be ganne to ryse, To nataneH his maister thanne saide he : <sup>1</sup>	417
	'This yong <sup>e</sup> Esquyer is right welcome to me ; he shaH lak noght, I say yow for certeyn ;' And he right lowly thanked hym) ageyn).	420
	They hadde mantellys and aH of om) makyng <sup>e</sup> ,	421
	Whiche were right some departed bothe in fere ;	
Generydes gives his mantle to the butler,	Generydes withoute taryeng <sup>e</sup> Gauē his mantiH on to the Boteler,	424
Natanell his to the porter.	Thenne Natanell, in right curtes maner', To the porter he gauē that was his owne, In thankefull wise the better to be knowen).	427
And so they live in court.	Thus in the courte dwellid Generydes,	428
	Right wele belouyd of euery creature, So weH wexen that he was doutelys A very goodly man), I you ensure :	431
	With good vesage, full metely of stature, his porte, his chere, and all his behavinge full like a Ientilman) in euery thyng <sup>e</sup> .	434
After a time, as the king was alone in a gallery,	It happyd so withynne a litiH space, The kyng <sup>e</sup> a lone went in [a] Galery ; Thanne Natanell aspied where he was,	435

<sup>1</sup> MS. *he saide.*

And to the kyng <sup>e</sup> he went trewly,	438	
To late hym <sup>e</sup> wete his erand by and by,		
lyke as he was comaunded for to sey,		
And thus he seid withoute more delay :	441	
‘Syr, if I durst be bold as in this case,	442	
My message wold I say, if it yow please,		
The quene Sereyne commandith hir to <i>your grace</i> ,		Natanell gave
And sent yow here your <sup>e</sup> sonne Generydes :	445	him the ring
Be cause ye sha <sup>ll</sup> think it is noo lese,		and message
She chargyd me to take yow this ring <sup>e</sup> ,		from Sereyne.
Ye gaue it hir atte your bothe departyng <sup>e</sup> .’	448	
The kyng <sup>e</sup> toke gode advise vppon <sup>e</sup> the reng <sup>e</sup> ,	449	
It was his owyn <sup>e</sup> , and that anon <sup>e</sup> he knowe ;		The king recog-
To Natane <sup>ll</sup> he seid withoute feyni[n]g <sup>e</sup> ,		nized the ring
‘Gramercy, frend, for your message is trew,	452	and thanked
Ye haue brought hym <sup>e</sup> that doth <sup>e</sup> my ioye renew ;		Natanell.
Whanne he come first hem <sup>1</sup> thought it shuld be he,		
Wherefore I <i>prae</i> yow bryng <sup>e</sup> hym <sup>e</sup> on <sup>e</sup> to me.’	455	
Thanne furt <sup>h</sup> with a <sup>ll</sup> departed Natane <sup>ll</sup> ,	456	
Generydes he brought on to the kyng <sup>e</sup> ;		Generydes was
Whanne he was come the kyng be held hym <sup>e</sup> we <sup>ll</sup> ,		then brought
And liked hym <sup>e</sup> right wele in euery thyng <sup>e</sup> ,	459	to the king,
God wote he was so gladde of his comyng <sup>e</sup> ,		
That ther cowde noman <sup>e</sup> deme betwix <sup>e</sup> hem <sup>e</sup> twayne,		
Whiche of them <sup>e</sup> bothe were gladder in certayne.	462	and both were
		glad.
Whanne this was do he went to his <i>seruice</i> ,	463	
The kyng dede ca <sup>ll</sup> on to hym <sup>e</sup> Natane <sup>ll</sup> ,		
And charged hym <sup>e</sup> in eny maner wise,		
Aboute a <sup>ll</sup> thyng <sup>e</sup> that he shuld kepe hym <sup>e</sup> welle ;	466	
Thanne <i>seruyd</i> he the quene att euery mele,		After this Ge-
Bothe att hir mete and soper decently,		nerides attended
The whiche he dede fu <sup>ll</sup> wele and manerly.	469	upon the queen,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *he*.

16 GENERYDES REJECTS THE PROFFERS OF HIS FATHER'S WIFE.

	Withynne a <sup>1</sup> while it happyd in y <sup>is</sup> wise,	470
	The quene beheld Generydes so weh,	
	And liked hym so wele in his service,	
	That aH hir loue on hym was euery dele,	473
	And in hyr self she cowde non other fele ;	
	Withoute that she myght have his loue ageyn,	
	She were on don for euere in certayne.	476
	Not long after the kyng on hunteng went,	477
	Generydes that day abode behynd,	
	The quene knew that, and sone for hym she sent,	
	And told hym aH that lay sore in hir mynd ;	480
	'Generydes,' quod she, 'if I myght fynd	
	That ye wold loue me best and so endure,	483
	I shaH do yow the same I you ensure.	
	FuH long agoo I was in this purpose,	484
	Butt thenne I myght not telle yow what I ment,	
	Desireng yow to kepe this mater close,	
	And lete me haue knowlage of your entent ;	487
	I promys you if ye wiH assent,	
	In grete wurchippe I shaH yow wele avaunce,	
	And alway do that may be your plesaunce.'	490
	Generydes stode stiff in grete musyng,	491
	And to the quene gaued answer in this case :	
	'Madame,' quod he, 'I am bounde to the kyng,	
	To be his man her and in euery place ;	494
	And I so moche am hold to his grace,	
	That for to haue his Reme myself alone,	
	I wold not be ontrew to his person.'	497
	With that he toke his leue and furth he went ;	498
	And whanne she sawe it wold non other be,	
	She threte hym sore, and seid he shuld repent,	

who liked him  
so well that all  
her love was  
set upon him,

and one day,  
when the king  
was gone a-  
hunting, she  
told him all,

promising him  
great worship  
if he would  
assent.

Generydes said,  
'I am the king's  
man, and can-  
not be untrue  
to him,'

and took his  
leave.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ai*.

- She rente hir here, a wonder thyng<sup>t</sup> to see, 501 The queen en-  
 And brought hir self clene owt of charite ; raged, tore her  
 The Stiward came and sawe aH was amys, hair and threaten-  
 'Madame,' quod he, 'what grete affraye is this?' 504 ed vengeance,
- 'Afraye,' quod she, 'so may ye wele it calle.' 505 telling the  
 'But who did this?' quod he, 'I prae yow saye ; Steward  
 Telle me the sothe, and late me dele withaH, 508  
 ffor I shaH sone a wreke aH this arraye,  
 What euer he be he shaH repente the daye  
 That he was bold, in earnest or in game, [leaf 3, back.]  
 To do to yow this villany and Shame.' 511
- 'It is,' quod she, 'that fals Generydes, 512  
 Be cause he myght not haue his wiH of me ;  
 ffor by noo prayour he wold neuer sese,  
 But thus he hath arayed me as ye se.' 515 that Generydes  
 And whanne the Stiward hard that it was he, had offered her  
 'Madame,' quod he, 'be ye no mor' displesid, violence.  
 ffor in this case your' hart shaH sone be eased.' 518
- He toke a naked sward and forth he goth, 519 The Steward  
 Generydes to slee if that he myght ; took a sword  
 But he wist wele befor<sup>n</sup> the quene was wroth, and went forth  
 Wherefore be tyme he went owt of hir sight : 522 to kill Generydes ;
- To his chaunber' the Stiward goth full right, 525 but he had gone  
 In euery place he sought hym vppe and don, to his lodging  
 And he was atte his logging' in the town, in the town,
- Owt of daunger, and with hym NataneH 526  
 To whom he told this mater aH in feere ; ✓  
 Quod he ageyn, 'here in we shaH do weH  
 TH that the kyng' come home we wilbe here, 529 and told Na-  
 Thanne wiH it be good tyme to draw yow neer', tanell, who  
 And do seruice like as ye did be foore, advised him to  
 What euer fall they shaH preyse yow the more.' 532 await the king's  
 return.

18 SIR AMELOK HITS GENERYDES, AND IS STABBED BY THE KING.

- The king came home, and Generydes served in the hall,      The kyng came home, with hym his knyghtez aȝ, 533  
 Generydes, as he was wont to do,  
 fuȝ wele and goodly seruyd in the haȝ :  
 The Stiward hadde fuȝ grete enuy therto, 536  
 And in his hand he bare a staff also ;  
 So goȝ he furthe in myddes of the prese,  
 In grete anger threting Generydes 539
- Withoute reason, and seid, ‘ what dost y<sup>n</sup> here ? 540  
 here is noman content of thii seruice.’  
 Generydes he gauē hym noȝ answere ;  
 ‘ Why spekest thu not ? ’ quod he, ‘ thu art not wise.’  
 And with that word, in fuȝ crewell wise,  
 he toke hym be the heere ther as he stode,  
 And smote hym so that his nose braste on blode. 546
- when the Steward took him by the hair and smote him.      And whanne the kyng perseyuid aȝ the case, 547  
 Thow he were wrothe ther ought nomaȝ hym blame,  
 To see his sonne so wrongyd as he was ;  
 he callid oȝ to the Stiward bi his name, 550  
 ‘ Traytour,’ quod he, ‘ god geve y<sup>e</sup> uery shame,  
 This yong Squyer suerly dede noȝ offence,  
 And thou hast smetyȝ hym here in my presence. 553
- Not only now thou dost me villany, 554  
 Butt here afore thou hast do many moo :’  
 and stabbed him in the arm.      And with his knyff he smote hym<sup>1</sup> hastely  
 Thorough the arme, and when he hadde so do, 557  
 ‘ Out of my sight I warne the that y<sup>n</sup> goo.’  
 With that the quene was wroȝ in hir maner,  
 Thought she anoȝ this towchith me right ner. 560
- The Steward went to his castle      Owt of the court the Stiward went his weye, 561  
 To his casteȝ he toke the wey fuȝ right,  
 And made hym strong of men and of array,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *hym hym*.

And euermore his thought was day and nyght	564	
To avenge hym) of the kyng' if that he myght;		and plotted
To that purpose he sette aH his entente,		vengeance.
And moche people he hadde of his assent.	567	
Now late vs leue aH this as for A space,	568	
And to Generydes I wiH returne,		Generydes was so
So rebukyde and skomfite as he was,		discomfited
he cowde not make no chere but alwey mourn,	571	that he could not
And lenger ther he thought not to sogeourne, <sup>1</sup>		remain,
But hastely to make his departeng',		
And furth withaH he came to the kyng'.	574	
He knelid down) and seid right in this wise ;	575	and begged the
'Ser, if it please your goodnesse for to hire,		king
With yow I haue contynued my seruice		
In pese and rest, and now y <sup>e</sup> 2 Steward her'	578	
hath smete me in full cruell maner,		
And hath putte me to Shame in your' presence,		
And wile I wote I dede hym) non) offence.	581	
I may not ease my hert as in this case,	582	
That dotH me harme whanne I remembre me,		
here afterward I shaH, be goddis grace,		
Think ther vppon) whanne I a seasone see,	585	
I wiH no lenger dwelle in this contre,		
Wherefore, I you beseche, sithe it is so,		
That ye wiH graunte me licence for to go ;	588	to let him go.
And whiH I leue your' trew man shaH I be,	589	
Where euer I traveH to and fro,		
To do yow pleasur' that at lithe in me,		
ffor right gretly am I holden) therto.'	592	
And whanne the kyng' knew weH that he wold go,		The king
And that ther was non) other meane to fynde,		
God wote he was right heuy in his mynd.	595	

<sup>1</sup> MS. *sogeourur*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *now is y'*.

and all his knights were sorry	The knyghtes ah, and the squyers truely, Were full sory of his sone departeng, Notwithstandyng ther was noo remedy, But furth he goth withoute more taryeng, Right vmbly he toke leue of the kyng, And so fourth he went thorough owt y <sup>e</sup> haH, ffull curtesly he toke leue of them) ah.	596      599   602
when he took leave.		
Generydes and NataneH	Generydes and also NataneH To ther logging' they toke the redy waye, And trused ther' harnes euery dele, Whanne that was do Generydes ganne saye, ' Now late vs here appoynt for our' Iurnay In to what land or contre we shaft goo.' Quod nataneH, ' that hold I wele to do :	603      606   609
trussed up their harness		
and resolved to go		
[leaf 4]	To Surry ward, hough seye ye now be that? The quene Sereyne wold right fayne se you <i>ther</i> . ' AH that is sothe,' quod he, ' but wote ye what? In stranger' place fayne wold I that we were, ffor I am now of age harmes to bere ; And to be knyght as I see other be, The more wurchippe the better think[eth] me.'	610      613   616
to Persia.	' AH this is very sothe,' quod NataneH, ' To your entent I canne right wele agree ; Ther is a land I am remembryd wele, Men) call it Perse, a plenteuous contre, Ther and [yow] wiH the Sowdon) may yow see, The whiche is knowyn) bothe ferre And nere, A myghti prince, a man) of gret powre.'	617      620   623
	Generydes thanne answerd in this wise : ' To that contre I rede we take the waye, ffor ther we may not fayle of good seruice,	624

As ye suppose, tell me what ye seye.' 627  
 'Kepe still,' quod he, 'your purpose I yow praye,  
 To myn entent ther is best abydeng',  
 I wote he wiñ be gladde of your comyng.' 630

Ther hors, ther meñ, were redy euerychon, 631  
 To that contre they toke the wey full right,  
 And on hir wey so ferre fourth were thei goon,  
 That of the Citee sone they hadde a sight, 634  
 Theder they came be thanne it was nyght,  
 And fourth withaht to ther loggyng' they went,  
 The best that they cowde fynde to ther entent. 637

It was the best Citee of aht the lande, 638  
 And mountener it hight withoute fayle,  
 Therin the Sowdon) was I vnderstonde,  
 In a casteH full riche of appareH. 641  
 Generydes thanne after his grete appareH,  
 And NataneH they bothe in good aray,  
 To the Sowdon) they toke y<sup>e</sup> redy way. 644

And whanne they came ther' as the Sowdon) was, 645  
 Ther' wer' knyghtes and Squyers many on,  
 hym) self walkeng' in his disporteng' place,  
 They aht awaiteng' vppon) his persone, 648  
 Generydes and NataneH anoon)  
 Avaunsed them the sowdon) for to see,  
 Goffore he hight, the story tellith it me. 651

Whanne<sup>1</sup> he hym) saw he did to hym) obesaunce, 652  
 full manerly and seyð right in this wise ;  
 'Ser, if it be your' wiñ and your' pleasaunce,  
 her am I come to offer' my seruice 655  
 To your' lordshippe, right as ye list to devise,  
 Now please it yow to take me for your' man),  
 And I shaht do suche seruice as I canne.' 658

They came to the chief city, Mountener, where the Sultan Goffore dwelt,

and found him walking in his pleasure ground.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Thanne*.



- The Sowdon stode and hard hym) euery dele, 659  
 he toke good hede att hym) in euery thing; ;  
 And doughit ye not he lekid hym) right wele,  
 Bothe his person) and all his demeaneng, 662  
 And furthwith gaue hym) his welcomyngt  
 ffuH curtesly, and seid in IentilH wise ;  
 'I am) content of you to haue seruice : 665
- What<sup>1</sup> is your' name? I prae yow tell it me.' 666  
 'My name,' quod he, 'ser, is Generydes.'  
 'Generydes,' he said, 'wele mote ye thee ;  
 A Ientilman) ye seme withouten) lese, 669  
 And in wurchippe right lekely to encrease ;  
 and was accepted. Wherefore of suche as do to me seruice  
 I wiH that ye be nexst in eny wise.' 672
- The Sultan's daughter,  
 The Sowdon hadde his doughter and his ayre 673  
 In his paly s vnder his gouernaunce,  
 And for certeyne she was right inderly fayre,  
 And, as the writengt makith remembraunce, 676  
 ffuH womanly of speche and countenance ;  
 In suche wise hir' name beganne to sprede,  
 That euery man) spake of hir' goodlyheed. 679
- And as the Sowdon) was sett att his mete, 680  
 Generydes softely he beganne to calle,  
 The best deynte that before hym) was sett  
 he toke it hym), and badde hym) goo with all 683  
 To his doughter : 'my lord,' quod he, 'I shaH.'  
 So fourth he goth ther as this lady was,  
 Clarionas, Mynne Auctour seith she hight clarionas. 686
- loved Generydes, This fayre lady behelde Generydes, 687  
 In stedefast wise on) hym) she cast hir eye,  
 All his maners so wele it did hyr plece,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *That*.

- That she constreyned was in certeyn<sup>te</sup> 690  
 To loue hym best, it wold non o<sup>th</sup>er be ;  
 She thought it dede hir good on<sup>o</sup> hym to thynk,  
 And of hir cuppe she offeryd hym to drynk. 693
- He toke it of hir' hand full curtesly, 694  
 And ferthermore, as I this mater fele,  
 In<sup>o</sup> his conseyte, I say<sup>1</sup> yow certeynly,  
 hym liked neuer creatur' so wele : 697  
 his mynde, his thought, was sett oon hir yche deell ; and his mind was  
 set on her.  
 And, as I cowde perseyue in my<sup>n</sup> entent,  
 There hartes bothe were sone of on<sup>o</sup> Assent. 700
- Generydes he toke his leue anon, 701  
 To sone she thought as after hir avise,  
 Yet or<sup>2</sup> that he departed was and goon,  
 To kysse hym she forgate not in no wise, 704  
 he thanked hir and offerid hir serui<sup>ce</sup>,  
 To be hire man<sup>o</sup> and alway to be trew,  
 So to endur' and neuer to renew. 707
- Vppe from<sup>o</sup> hir mete arose clarionas, 708  
 And on<sup>o</sup> hir bedde she leyde hir fourth with AH ;  
 hir mayden had grete merve<sup>ll</sup> what it was,  
 And full softly on<sup>o</sup> hir' she be ganne to calle, 711  
 'Madame,' quod she, 'what thing' is now be fa<sup>ll</sup> ?  
 Of your' disese I prae yow telle it me,  
 To wete yow seke it is a gre[te] pite.' 714 [leaf 4, back]
- Ther with the lady gaue answe<sup>re</sup> ageyn 715 She told her  
 maid, Mirabell,  
 Vnto hir mayden, Mirabe<sup>ll</sup> was her' name ;  
 'Of my disese,' quod she, 'yf I shuld layne of her disease,  
 Only to yow, I wis I were to blame ; 718  
 I haue founde yow, in ernest and in game,  
 Att all tymes full secrete and full trew,  
 And soth to saye I neuer other knewe : 721

- And for to telle you pleny of my dissese, 722  
 This is the cause ; ther is on) specialy  
 hath don) me harme, god wote causeles,  
 I neuer offendid hym) truly ; 725  
 And me think ther is noo remedy,  
 ffor I was neuer seke on) this maner',  
 A fore this tyme now knowe ye aH in fer'. 728
- 'Not aH,' quod she, 'madame, that may not be ; 729  
 ffor yet I haue no knowlage whiche he is.'  
 ✓ 'It is,' quod she, 'a yong Squyer', parde ;  
 he is but late come to my lord, I wis, 732  
 A very goodly man), so haue I blisse.'  
 'AH this may be, and I beleue the same ;  
 But good madame,' quod she, 'what is his name?' 735
- and that unless  
 she could see  
 Generydes,  
 'To seye yow sothe,<sup>1</sup> Generydes he hight.' 736  
 Quod she ageyn, 'now wote ye euery dele ;  
 Butt I of hym) right sone may haue a sight,  
 it would not  
 long be well  
 with her.  
 With me I wote it wiH not long be wele, 739  
 ffor hym) only is aH that euer I fele,  
 And alway more and more it doth encrease ;  
 God wote I am no thing' in hertys ease.' 742
- 'Madame,' quod she, 'dismay yow neuer a dele, 743  
 Be of good chere, hurt not yow to soore ;  
 Doughte ye noo thing' AH this shalbe right wele,  
 ffor I shaft trewly do my part ther fore 746  
 With right good wiH, and for to say yow mor',  
 ffor<sup>2</sup> this mater I shaft do wele ordeyne  
 That ye suerly shaft speke with hym) ayen.' 749
- With that anon) clarionas be ganne 750  
 To take hir' chere mor' comfortably,  
 Notwithstondyng' she was bothe pale and wanne,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *the sothe*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *And for*.

- And to hir ma[y]de she seid full soberly, 753  
 'love MyrabeH, I thank yow hertely,  
 ffor of myn payne now I haue some respite,  
 And if I leue I shaft it yow wele aquyte.' 756
- Now late vs leue apart clarionas, 757  
 And to Generydes turne we ageyn,  
 Whiche for hir sake stondith in hevy case,  
 As full of thought as he myght be certayn); 760  
 Out of the cowrt he went for very peyn,  
 Streight to his logging' hastely he hym spedd,  
 Whanne he came ther he leyde hym on his bedd. 763
- His maister had merveH what it ded mene 764 told his master  
of his case.  
 So sodenly to see hym in that case,  
 AH distemperyd and out of colour' clene,  
 he mused sore what maner a thing it was ; 767  
 And whanne that he myght gete a metely space,  
 Right thus he seid to Generydes,<sup>1</sup>  
 'I *prae* yow, *ser*, Telle me your' disseso.' 770
- 'Mayster,' quod he, 'aH that lythe in my hert, 771  
 What euer it be, to yow I wolle not layn)  
 Why and wherefore I suffer aH this smert,<sup>2</sup>  
 Clarionas she causith it certayn), 774  
 ffor hir only I suffer aH this payne,  
 And for to sey the very certaynte,  
 I wote not why she shuld do this to me.' 777
- 'Ye wote what, *ser*, after myn) avise, 778 Nafanell pro-  
mises to speak  
with Clarionas.  
 Be mery and that is my counceff,  
 In this mater I shaft do yow *seruice*,  
 And *peraventur*' sumwhat it shaft *prevaile* ; 781  
 To morow I shaft be ther withoute faile,  
 And speke with hir' as touching this mater',  
 And what she seith ye shaft haue pleyne answer'.' 784

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Geroerydes*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *this certeyn smert*.

- 'Maister,' *quod* he, 'I thank you hartely, 785  
 To yow only is all my very trost,  
 And what ye think that I shall do trowly,  
 In this mater' demeane me as ye list; 788  
 hough I shall spede fayne wold I that I wist.'  
 'Wele, *ser*,' *quod* he, 'I canne noo ferther saye,  
 To my power I shall do what I may.' 791
- With that he partid fro Generydes, 792  
 And on the morow, whanne he hadde tyme and space,  
 Onto the court he went withouten lese,  
 Therfor to speke with fayre clarionas. 795  
 Whanne he<sup>1</sup> was come ther as she was,  
 Myrabelle came and this to hym ganne seye,  
 'Where is,' *quod* she, 'your maister, I yow prae?' 798
- 'He is at his lodging full ill at ease  
 at ease' 'Att his loggyng', foh ih att ease,' *quod* he, 799  
 'And so a be a sithe afore yester day ;  
 What hym aylith I woote noo thing' *parde*,  
 His comfort and his chere is all awaye, 802  
 Butt after myn entent this dare I saye,  
 All this is grow, to tel the mater clere,  
 since he was last here.' Sithe he now last was with my lady here.' 805
- Mirabell perceived his meaning,  
 and thought all went well. Whan Mirabell *perseivid* what he ment, 806  
 And what desire he hadde thanne was she fayn,  
 All this goth wele, thought she, to myn entent.  
 'Wele, *ser*,' she saide, 'to yow I will be playn ; 809  
 Sithe your maister was here, I will nott layne,  
 My lady hath be seke bothe day and nyght,  
 [leaf 5] ffor she hadd neuer rest I yow be hight. 812
- Yet not for thy, if ye haue ought to saye 813  
 ffor your maister be his comaund[e]ment,  
 Goo forth anon with owt more delaye,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *she*.

- And telle hir aH the trougth of your' entent, 816  
 To speke with yow she wilbe wele content.' Natanell sought  
the princes,  
 So furth withaH, after his purpose was,  
 Streight fourth he goth on to Clarionas. 819
- 'Madame,' quod he, 'my lord Generydes 820 and told her  
of Generydes,  
 To you hym recomaundith for certayne,  
 A wofuH man, clene owt of hartes ease,  
 And for to telle yow aH the mater playn), 823  
 If it please yow ye may respite his payn),  
 Of your' goodnesse to graunt hym that licence,  
 That he may come on to your' nobiH presence.' 826 who begged that  
he might come  
into her presence.
- Whenne she had herd these wordes euerydele, 827  
 'Come nere,' she said, 'Mirabell, I you p[r]laye.'  
 'Madame,' quod she, 'I vnderstonde hym wele ;  
 As me semyth with your' wurchippe ye may 830  
 Send me for hym and here what he wiH saye,  
 his maister here right sone for hym wiH goo.'  
 'I am content,' quod she, 'that it be so.' 833
- MyrabeH came and toke hym owt Aside ; 834  
 'Do after me,' quod she, 'as in this case :  
 Att this wyndow my lady shaH abide,  
 ffor thorough owt the gardeyn he shaH pace, 837 into the garden.  
 And ther he shaH haue good leyser and space,  
 To saye what that hym list in secrete wise ;  
 Now goo furth for this is myn) avise.' 840
- Furth on) his way departith Nataneh 841  
 To his maister, and founde hym passeng' sadde :  
 'What tidynges now,' quod he, 'wiH it be wele ?'  
 'Right wele,' quod he, 'be ye noo thyng' adred : 844  
 Whanne ye knowe aH I wote ye wiH be glad,  
 As for the first, now take this of me aloon,<sup>1</sup>  
 She wiH that ye come speke with her anon).' 847

<sup>1</sup> *aloon* added in another hand.

Who was glad now but Ge- nerydes?	Now who was gladde, and who was weſt apayde,	848
	And endly mery but Generydes, Remembryng <sup>r</sup> what Nataneth had seid?	
	So furth he goth, and neuer wold he sese,	851
	Into the courte in myddes of the preſe,	
He went to the garden to Clarionas,	And ſo furth on vn to Clarionas, In the gardeyn where apoynted was.	854
	Whan he hyr ſaw, he fayled countenaunce,	855
	Where with ſuerly he was not wele apayed;	
	And in like wiſe, to ſey yow in ſubſtance, On here behalf ſhe was ſomwhat diſmayde;	858
and told her	Yet atte laſt right thus to hir he ſaide, 'Madame,' quod he, 'be cauſe I hadde licence, I am more bold to come to your' preſence :	861
	And for to ſey yow myn entent I wiſ,	862
	As for my ſelf this is the mater playn, ffor I muſt ſuerly tell vs att <sup>1</sup> it is ;	
of his pain of heart for her ſake.	My hert is ouercome with very payn	865
	Ah for your' ſake, and ſo hath beñ certeyn Sithe I was here on maſſage ſekerly.'	
	'hoo ſo?' quod ſhe, <sup>2</sup> 'I haue grete wounder why.	868
	What <sup>3</sup> cauſe haue ye to putte me in this witte?	869
The truth was ſoon known on both ſides	As for my part I do no thyng <sup>r</sup> nee ſey, I rede putte ſuche thoughtes in reſpite ;	872
	Where I haue not offendid be this day,	
	Wherby ye ſhuld be hurt by eny way :	
	Wherefore,' quod ſhe, 'in ernest and in game, To putte in me the defaute ye are to blame.'	875
	'Trewly, Madame,' thenne ſeid Generydes,	876
	'Of me ye ought to magry to purchase, And for to con) yow thanke for my diſſeſe,	

<sup>1</sup> So MS. ; perhaps for *telle what*, or *telle all as*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *he*.<sup>3</sup> MS. *That*.

- Now trewly that were a strange case. 879  
 Yet be the meane of fauour and of grace  
 Ye may me helpe aH only and no mo,  
 O trewth it were your' wurchippe so to do.' 882
- Quod she ageyn, 'if it were for to blame, 883 though after  
some bashfulness  
on Clarionas's  
part,  
 My wurchippe were amendes for to make ;  
 And in like wise ye aught to do the same,  
 If ther were eny suche that for your sake 886  
 had so sufferyd payn or heynesse had tak ;  
 Peraventour I myght be on) of thoo,  
 What will ye sey,' quod she, 'and it be so ?' 889
- 'Madame,' quod he, 'I here yow speke right wele, 890  
 fuH fayne, god woote, I wold that it wer' soo.'  
 'Trewly,' quod she, 'it is thus euerydele,  
 I yow ensure, I may not goo ther' fro ; 893  
 But my wurchippe may not avowe it soo.  
 This is the very trouth withoute feyning,  
 ffor loue wiH haue his course for eny thing.' 896 .
- When MyrabeH had hard aH this array, 897  
 'After this werr,' quod she, 'god send vs pece :  
 I canne wiH think it wiH not lest alway.'  
 'Now god defende it,' quod Generydes ; 900  
 'I must depart,' quod she, 'withoutyn) lese,  
 As for A tyme your' pleasur' for to spare,  
 Of eviH speche it is good to be ware.' 903
- And shortly for to say you as it was, 904  
 A fuH [a]corde was made betwix them) twayn) :  
 he gaue a ryng' on) to Clarionas,  
 And she toke hym) Another for certeyn) ; 907 and they ex-  
changed rings.  
 With trew promys eyther for ioye or payn),  
 In stedefast wise ther hertys to ensure,  
 Neuer<sup>1</sup> to chaunge but alway [to] endure. 910

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Nouer*.



30 GENERYDES OFTEN MEETS HIS LOVE. MALICHIAS HATES HIM.

And by that tyme fer passid was the day, 911  
 MirabeH seyð, 'it is hye tyme for to goo.'  
 Thanne wist he wele ther was non) other waye,  
 [leaf 5, back] he must departe wheder he wiH or noo : 914  
 he toke his leue, wherewiH he was fuH woo ;  
 And as for hir she was nott wele contente,  
 Yet not for thy she kist hym) or she went. 917

FuH of[te] tymes ther<sup>1</sup> were betwix hem)<sup>2</sup> twayne, 918  
 They often meet in secret. Dayes apoynted to mete in secrete wise :  
 Notwithstandyng' I say yow for certeyn,  
 To hir wurchippe was thought noo preiudice, 921  
 Butt only to owe hir his seruice,  
 As feythfully as cowde be thought or ment,  
 Ther was non) other' thyng' in ther entent. 924

So furth he goth fuH streyte in to the halle, 925  
 To do seruice hym) thought it for the best ;  
 And for to sey yow soth) among' them AH,  
 In court there was none like Generydes, Thorough) owt the court he was the goodliest, 928  
 In his demeaning' the most Ientilest,  
 And wiH a spere to renne in warre or pece,  
 Ther was non) like on) to Generides. 931

Havkyng', hunteng', he cowd good skiH ther on) ; 932  
 And what that eny Ientilman) shuld do,  
 ffor very trougth in aH the courte<sup>3</sup> was non),  
 Knyght or squyer, so wele willyng' ther to : 935  
 and all loved him save Malichias. Thorough) owt the courte<sup>3</sup> he hadde the love also  
 Of euery creatur', bothe more and lesse,  
 Saue of A knyght callid ser Malichias. 938

As [for] a tyme leue we Generydes, 939  
 His father's (the king of India's) Steward And late vs now speke of the kyng' of ynd,  
 And of his Stiward whiche wold neuer sese,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *they*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *hym*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *contre*.

But of malice compasing <sup>r</sup> in his mynd	942	
AH maner weyes som treson <sup>1</sup> for to fynd ;		
With aH the helpe that he cowde gete certeyn),		
ffor to distroye his lord and souereyn).	945	plotted against his lord,
And to <i>perfourme</i> aH that he hadde take in hand,	946	
This fals Stiward he had gaderid people grete,		and gathered an army
To the nowmber <sup>r</sup> of iiij or v thousand,		
Of meñ of warre the best that he cowd gete ;	949	
And in A busshment fuH sone he had them sett		
Nyhand the town), his treson) to be gynne,		
And be that meane the cite for to wynne.	952	to win the city.
Off his tresone the quene knowe wele also,	953	The queen knew the treason.
It to <i>perfourme</i> she did aH hir entent,		
And of hir counceH ther were lordes <sup>2</sup> moo,		
And certeyn) of them) were of hir dissente :	956	
Of aH this werk the kyng <sup>r</sup> was innocent,		
And of ther falsed no thing <sup>r</sup> <i>perseyud</i> ,		
The more pite he shuld be so disseyued.	959	
And shortly to procede whaH this was do,	960	
There were iij lordes came oH to the kyng <sup>r</sup> ,		
Desireng <sup>r</sup> hym) on huntynge <sup>r</sup> for to goo,		
ffuH ontrewly ther with ymagenyng <sup>r</sup> ;	963	
To ther desire the kyng <sup>r</sup> was welewillyng <sup>r</sup> ,		While the king was hunting with three lords
So fourth on) huntynge <sup>r</sup> he rode certeynly,		
The iij lordes with hym) in companye,	966	
And ij Squyers, myn) Auctour tellith me ;	967	
And while he was most besy in his game,		
This fals Stiward had goten) the Citee,		the Steward took the city
The whiche was callid pareyntyn) be name,	970	
And made hym) self proclamed in the same		and proclamed himself king.
AH openly bothe kyng <sup>r</sup> and souereyn),		
Ther was no man) that durst saye ther ageyn).	973	

<sup>1</sup> MS. *tresom*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *lordes*.

32 AUFERIUS HEARS OF HIS QUEEN'S AND AMELOK'S TREACHERY.

- The king heard  
thereof from a  
forester,
- þe kyng' hym self knowe noo thyng' of this case, 974  
 TiH atte last a forster came rideng' ;  
 And, wete ye wele, so sorowfuH he was,  
 That he onnethe mygHt speke to the kyng', 977  
 And ther he told hym euery maner thyng',  
 Of his Stiward and of his fals treason,  
 And what people he hadde withynne the town). 980
- and that the  
three lords were  
traitors also.
- ' I must,' quod he, ' telle yow myn) avise and entent ;  
 The quene is cause of this on) happy case,  
 ffor these iij lordes ar' of hir Assent,  
 That are Abideng' with you in the chase ; 984  
 And whanne the kyng' perseuyd hough it was,  
 AH his huntyng' was don and his besynesse,  
 An hevy mañ [he was] and coumfortles. 987
- In this musyng' he rideth furth a pase, 988  
 The iij lordes they mette hym) on the waye :  
 ' Traytours,' quod he, ' god geve yow euyH grace  
 ffor your' seruice that ye haue don) to me, 991  
 So vntrewly your' prince for to be traye,  
 Whiche neuer hurt nor harme on) to yow ment,  
 I trost to god ye shaft it sore repent.' 994
- AH his wordes they sett Att litiH price, 995  
 ffor whye they drede hym) not the soth to saye :  
 And to the kyng' [they seyde] right in this wise,  
 ' Take it in gre the fortune of this day.' 998  
 And whanne he saw ther was non) other way,  
 he drew his swerd And smote on) of them so,  
 And<sup>1</sup> from the grownde he mygHt noo ferther goo, 1001
- He drew his  
sword and slew  
one.
- Butt felle down) dede then) in continent. 1002  
 his felawes fledde as fast as euer they mygHt ;  
 The kyng' sawe that, and after them) he went,
- The others fled,

<sup>1</sup> ? *That*.

And ouer toke them) long or it was nyght. 1005 but the king  
 So ferthermore to saye yow the very right, overtook  
 he slew them) bothe And sayde, 'traytours erante, and slew them  
 Of your falshed ye shaH yow neuer avaute.' 1008 too.

And vpon) this he turned bak ageyn) 1009  
 To his squyers, whiche were right ferre behynd,  
 And in this wise he dede to them) complayn):  
 'I have,' quod he, 'founde yow bothe trew and kynde,  
 Now lak I good where with I shuld yow fynd,  
 And for to counfort me now in my nede,  
 I canne noo more but Ihesu be your' spede.' 1015

Whenne his squyers had hard hym) thus complayn), [leaf 6]  
 They answerd hym ayen) in goodly wise ;  
 'Ser, think you not but we shaH do our' payn)  
 To counfort yow, and do yow suche seruice, 1019  
 As our' connyng' And Powre may suffice,  
 And though your' hart be now noo thing' in rest,  
 With goddes grace AH shalbe for your' best.' 1022

The kyng was plesid wele with ther counfort, 1023  
 And as hym) thought he prayed them) for to saye  
 To what contre it were best to resorte,  
 That for hym) self he myght some what purvaye. 1026  
 One of them) seyde, 'lo yender lyght the waye ;  
 Streyght to the Reme of Trace it wiH yow bryng', With his two  
 Wherein dwellyth a prince, A<sup>1</sup> nobyH kyng.' 1029 squires  
 to Thrace,  
 he took his way

Toward that land he toke the waye fuH right, 1030  
 Whiche was callid a plentevous contre ;  
 Whanne he came ther, as fast as euer he<sup>2</sup> myght  
 To se the kyng' he went in certayn[t]e, 1033  
 In humble<sup>3</sup> wise, besechyng' hym) that he  
 Might do hym) seruice with his squyers twayne,  
 In like wise as his pleasur' wold ordeyne. 1036

<sup>1</sup> MS. *a A.*                      <sup>2</sup> MS. *she.*                      <sup>3</sup> MS. *humbly.*  
 GENERYDES.                      3

34 KING AUFERIUS BECOMES THE KING OF THRACE'S STEWARD.

- and entered the  
king's service,
- The kyng<sup>t</sup> was wele contente of his comyng<sup>t</sup>, 1037  
 And of *seruice* he seid he shuld not fayle ;  
 What he shuld do he told hym *euery* thing<sup>t</sup>,  
 That myght only to his wurchippe preuaile ; 1040  
 And so alway, after thought and travaile,  
 God send rest and coumfort, be ye sure,  
 To *euery* wele disposid creature. 1043
- Thus in that contre abideth stiH alway 1044  
 The kyng<sup>t</sup> of ynd, vnknowen<sup>d</sup> in *euery* wise,  
 With his ij squyers, a wayteng<sup>t</sup> day be day  
 hym<sup>d</sup> for to *serue* as they made ther promys ; 1047  
 And so this prince contynued in *seruice*,  
 Right weH be trost and cherishid with the kyng<sup>t</sup>,  
 ffor he cowde please hym<sup>d</sup> in *euery* thing<sup>t</sup>. 1050
- AH that he dede was done so wittely, 1051  
 his demeanyng<sup>t</sup> was suche thorough<sup>t</sup> owt the place,  
 That *euery* man<sup>d</sup> hym<sup>d</sup> preysid by and by,  
 And he so wele stode in the kyngges grace, 1054  
 That he hym<sup>d</sup> gaue, withynne a litiH space,  
 and was made  
Steward.  
 Of all his lande the Stiuar[d]shepe to holde,  
 And full power to rewle it as he wold. 1057
- When he dede as wele as cowde be thought, 1058  
 Onto the kynggez honour<sup>t</sup> in certayne,  
 Iustice was kept like wise as it owt,  
 Ther was noman<sup>d</sup> be resan<sup>d</sup> myght complayne ; 1061  
 And for he shuld his charge wele susteyn<sup>d</sup>,  
 The kyng hym<sup>d</sup> gaue clerly an<sup>d</sup> Erllys lande,  
 The whiche but late was com in to his hand. 1064  
 The king gave  
him an Earl's  
land.
- Now of this mater<sup>t</sup> a while let vs sese 1065  
 As for a tyme, And speke of quene sereyne,  
 That was moder on to Generydes,

- And hough that she hadde herd the tidenggez playn,  
 hough ontrewly his fader be a trayn  
 Of his lordes made after ther entente,  
 he was putte owt of his land by ther Assent. 1071
- Off hym and of there sonne Generydes 1072  
 Was vtterly her mend and aH here thought ;  
 And trewly to leue in hartes ease,  
 That cowde she nough tih that she hadde hym sought ;  
 Of her estate no pleasure she ne rough t,  
 Saue only for to knowe the certeynte  
 Of auferius the kyng where he shuld be. 1078
- And fourth with aH she ganne an erle to calle, 1079  
 The whiche in sothe hadde widded hir Cosyn,  
 Right as the writeng' seyth in especiaH,  
 A fayre lady and nexst of AH hir kynne ; 1082  
 The Erle to truste was noo daunger in,  
 ffor he was ware and wise I yow ensure,  
 And therwith trew as eny creature. 1085
- She told hym AH the grounde of the mater 1086  
 In euery thing, and how it was be fall,  
 Of auferius and of hir sonne in fere,  
 And hough the kyng betrayed was withaH, 1089  
 ' Wherefore my purpose is in especiaH  
 To take on me the labour and the payn,  
 Where euer he were to fynd hym in certeyn.' 1092
- Then<sup>1</sup> to the Erle she seid in this maner : 1093  
 ' Ye shaH here haue the rewle and gouernaunce  
 Of this contre, with aH my full powre ;  
 My men shaH be vnder your obeiseaunce, 1096  
 And hough it be be disteyne or chaunce,  
 What euer falle, if I come not Ayen,  
 Ye<sup>2</sup> shaH be here both lord And souerayn.' 1099

Sereyne  
 heard how the  
 king of India had  
 been put out of  
 his land.

and sent for an  
 Earl

to take the  
 rule of the  
 country while  
 she went in  
 search of  
 Auferius and  
 Generydes.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *When.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *he.*

36 QUEEN SEREYNE REACHES INDIA, AND FINDS AUFERIUS'S MAN.

	‘Madame,’ he seid, ‘to gouerne this contre	1100
	It is noo liteff thing <sup>e</sup> to take in hand ;	
	ffor yow it is moche bettyr thanne for me ;	
	Yet neuer the lese, sithe I vnderstonde	1103
	Your purpose is to depart owt of the land,	
	I wolle fulfille your’ pleasur’ in this case,	
	And trewly as I canne be goddes grace.’	1106
Queen Sereyne set off,	Now Gothe quene Sereyn <sup>e</sup> fourth <sup>e</sup> on <sup>e</sup> hir Iurnaye,	1107
	And in hir company she hadde a knyght,	
	A trosty man, and othe[r] squyers twaynne,	
	With but few moo ther hors for to dight ;	1110
came to India	So to the Reme of ynd they went full right,	
	And sone vppon <sup>e</sup> ther labour’ and traveff	
to Parentine,	To parentyne she came with owt fayle,	1113
	A towne whiche is rehersed here by fore.	1114
	Anon’ witha <sup>ff</sup> was purveyd a logging	
[leaf 6, back]	ffor this lady ; and, for to say yow more,	
and lodged with the faithful forester,	hire oste was sumtyme dwellyng with the kyng,	1117
	The same forster that brought to hym <sup>e</sup> tidengge,	
	Of his Stiward and of his fals treson,	
	As he rode in the forest vppe and down <sup>e</sup> .	1120
	As for a nyght ther toke she hir’ loggyng,	1121
	And made on <sup>e</sup> calle the good man <sup>e</sup> of the place,	
	‘Good ser,’ quod she, ‘telle me where is the kyng ;	
	I haue grete nede,’ quod she, ‘on <sup>e</sup> to his grace.	1124
	Sumtyme a lady weff att ease I was,	
	And now be force,’ quod she, ‘siche is my chaunce,	
	I am putte ow[t] of my <sup>e</sup> enheritaunce.’	1127
	‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘here is noo remedy :	1128
	The kyng suerly is putte owt of his right	
	By grete tresone, I saye yow certainly,	

- By his Stiward and by the quenys myght, 1131  
 Whiche I may soore repent bothe day and nyght;  
 ffor now A dayis I lese all that I wanne,  
 Where here before I was<sup>1</sup> a threfty man). 1134
- Wherfor to hym I wiH, this is noo naye, 1135 whom she  
prevalled upon  
 Where euer he be, I say yow certaynly.  
 Thanne sayd the quene, 'good ser, I yow pray,  
 That ye wiH come with me in companye ; 1138 to come in search  
of the king.  
 hym for to fynd I purpose vtterly,  
 And I shaH paye your' costez euery dele.'  
 Quod he, 'madame, I gre me wele 1141
- In your' presence to travell day by day.' 1142  
 So on the morow departed quene Sereyne, On the morrow  
they departed  
 As erly as she cowde on hir Iurnay,  
 With hir to goo the forster was right fayn). 1145  
 So many dayes she laboryd certayn,  
 That of the Reame of Trace she had a sight, for Thrace,  
 And thederward they toke the wey full right. 1148
- Whan they came ther the[y] sawe a faire cite, 1149 and came to  
a fair city  
 As full a pepill as it cowde suffice,  
 The fayre Reuer grete pleasur' for to see,  
 With shippez grete of dyuerce merchaundise, 1152  
 All goodly thing that eny cowde wele devise ;  
 And as the Story makith remembraunce, of which Auferius  
was governor.  
 kyng Auferius had ther the gouernaunce. 1155
- And ther he was purposing to Abyde, 1156  
 As for A tyme for materys for the kyngt :  
 The quene Sereyn was be the Ryuers side  
 Right Wele loggid, and whan she hadde tidengt' 1159 The queen lodged  
by the river side.  
 A[nd] trew knowlage of Auferius the kyng,  
 hough he but late was come to the Citee,  
 God wote full wele therof apayed was she. 1162

<sup>1</sup> MS. *vis.*



38 QUEEN SEREYNE WASHES AUFERIUS'S SHIRT, AS SHE ALONE COULD.

- For hir' disporte she goth to take the Ayre, 1163<sup>a</sup>  
 And to the Reueres side she ganne hir dresse ;  
 Ther was a brygge full strongly made and fayre,  
 And ther she sawe, myn) Auctour doth witnesse, 1166  
 iij lavenders ded aH ther besynesse  
 A sherte to wassh ; thanne seid she to them) iij,  
 ' What do ye here, fayre susters myn) ? ' quod she.
- They told her they had been about it for  
 Quod on) of them), ' that were good to be knowe, 1170  
 It is a wonder wark withouten) doubt ;  
 We wassh a shirte, and euer shaft I trow,  
 two years. ffor this ij yere we haue ben) it about, 1173  
 And yet we cannot gete the spotte[s] owt,  
 Wherefore they calle vs noo good lauenders,  
 And we haue vsid it thus many yerez.' 1176
- She took it from them  
 ' Shewe me y<sup>e</sup> shirte,' thanne seid the quene Sereyn),  
 ' And I shaft se what I shaft do ther to :  
 Whanne I haue do, ye shaft haue it ageyn),  
 And do ther with what ye list to do.' 1180  
 She toke the Shirte withoute wordes moo,  
 and washed it clean,  
 And wesht it onys and ryneshed it so clene,  
 That afterward was noo spotte on) it seen). 1183
- When) she had don), she toke it them) ageyn), 1184  
 Or tyme that she departed fro the place ;  
 To hir logging went the quene Sereyn),  
 and returned to her lodging. The lavenders wondered,  
 The lavenders hadde wonder of that case, 1187  
 They mused sore and mervelid how it was :  
 And home they went the women) euerychon),  
 , Whanne it was drye they bare it fourth) anon). 1190
- and took the shirt to Auferius,  
 To auferius the kyng where as he laye, 1191  
 In a casteH full goodly to behold ;  
 And whanne he sawe his shirt in that aray,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Araye*.

- Withoute spotte, he beganne to be cold, 1194 who called to  
 To thynk hough that a good old man) hym) told, mind what the  
 Bothe of [the] shirte and other thingez aH, old man had  
 Whiche sith that tyme full trewly hath be fah. 1197 told him.
- The same forster that came with quene Sereyn), 1198 The forseter  
 To the castill he toke the way full right, who came with  
 To se his lord, god wote, he was full fayn. the queen went  
 Whanne he came ther of hym) he hadde a sight, 1201 to the castle
- And spake to hym) as sone as euer he myght ;  
 The kyng hym) knew, wherof he was full glad,  
 Not withstondeng he fond hym) passyng sadde. 1204 and found the  
 king sad.
- 'Ser, if it please your' lordshippe,' thanne quod he,  
 'I yow beseche tell me your heynesse : 'Sir,' said he,  
 'why is this  
 heavynesse ?'  
 To wete yow in this plight it grevith me,  
 ffor if I myght I wold it fayne redresse ; 1208  
 And oftentimes it hath be sene expresse,  
 In grete materys, withouten) eny fayle,  
 A sympill mannys counceH may prevayle.' 1211
- To hym) Ayn) seid Auferius the kyng ; 1212 The king  
 'I knowe your' trowth, and soo hath doon) Alway,  
 And for to sey yow [sothe] withoute feyneng,  
 AH this is come to me sithe yester day, 1215  
 And hough and in what wise I shaH yow saye :'  
 And so fourth he told of quene Sereyn),  
 And hough a child was gote betwix them) twayne, 1218 told him of queen  
 Sereyn,  
 [leaf 7]
- And of his shert where on) hir<sup>1</sup> terys felle, 1219 and of her tears  
 That non) shuld wasH them) owt saue only she : on his shirt which  
 'Now is it clene, whiche lekith me full ille, none but herself  
 could wash out.  
 ffor thus I thynk It canne non) other be ; 1222  
 But she is dede in very certente.'  
 'Nay,' quod he, 'ser, I trow it be not soo,  
 ye shaH here better tydengez or ye goo. 1225  
 'But she is dead.'  
 'Nay, Sir,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *his*. But see ll. 162, 193.

- I saw a fair lady wash a shirt by the river's side. I saw but late vpon the Ryueres side 1226  
 One wash a shert, I wote not whose it is.  
 Whanne he<sup>1</sup> hard that he wold not long<sup>1</sup> abide  
 But askid more, 'now telle me who did this,' 1229  
*Quod* auferius, 'so haue ye Ioye and blysse.'  
 'A fayre lady,' *quod* he, 'I yow ensure,  
 And for to chese a goodly creature. 1232
- I came with her out of India to seek you.' I came with hir owt of the Reme of ynd, 1233  
 And atte myn howse ther toke she<sup>2</sup> hir loggyng<sup>1</sup>;  
 She askid me where that she shuld yow fynde,  
 And I told hir I hadd no knowlachyng<sup>1</sup>; 1236  
 So fourth she went and left all other thing,  
 At a venture your welefare for to see,  
 And so came I with hir to this citee.' 1239
- 'Now, help me to see her,' said Auferius. 'Now, for my loue, helpe that I may hir see 1240  
 In eny wise,' *quod* Auferius the kyng;  
 'ffor I canne think right wele that it is she,  
 Whom that I loue aboue all other thing.' 1243  
 The forster seid, '*ser*, on to hir loggyng,  
 When euer it please yow, I shall be your gyde;  
 ffor she is here by vpon the Ryueres side.' 1246
- Without delay he went to her lodging. In this mater ther was no more to saye, 1247  
 No lenger advise nor lenger abyding,  
 Butt furth he rideth vpon his hakeney,  
 Vpon the Reuerys side to hir logging<sup>1</sup>: 1250  
 And whanne she had knowlache of his comyng,  
 Remembryng<sup>1</sup> hough that she shuld hym see,  
 Wete ye right wele a glad woman was she. 1253
- When she saw him When he was come and knewe that it was she, 1254  
 ffor very glad he wist not what to saye;  
 Whenne she hym sawe it wold non other be,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *she*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *che*.

- Butt furth with aH in swounyng<sup>1</sup> ther she<sup>1</sup> lay. 1257 she fell down in  
 As sone as he hir sawe in that arraye, a swoon.
- God wote he was an hevy man<sup>1</sup> therefore,  
 And ther with [all] abisshid more and more. 1260
- Yet Atte last full Ientilly he went, 1261  
 And toke hir in his armys for sertayn,  
 hir to commfort he did aH his intent ;  
 With that she came vnto hir self ageyn. 1264
- Thanne was ther ioye betwix them<sup>1</sup> twayn,  
 ffor to telle yow aH it were a wounder, Then was there  
 And ofte they kist or they wold<sup>1</sup> part A sonder. 1267 joy betwixt  
 them.
- Thanne was ther not ferre owt of the Citee 1268 Not far from the  
 A fayre casteH, and thederward he went city was a fair  
 Owt of the Citee, not<sup>2</sup> ferre past ij myle or iij, castle.
- That was his owen<sup>1</sup> att his comaundment. 1271
- Whanne [he] came ther for moche people he sent,  
 The whiche held of his lordshippe and fraunchesse, He sends for  
 That *thei* shuld come to hym<sup>1</sup> in eny wise. 1274
- And so they dede meche people in certayn<sup>1</sup> ; 1275  
 Whanne they were come he told them<sup>1</sup> aH the case,  
 Desireng<sup>1</sup> them<sup>1</sup> to goo for quene Sereyne Sereyne  
 To the Citee, and bryng hir<sup>1</sup> to this place ; 1278 thither,
- ffor he purposith sone, with goddes grace,  
 In as short tyme as he cowde wele devise,  
 hir for to wedde in honorabiH wise. 1281 that he might  
 marry her.
- To this casteH they came with quene Sereyn<sup>1</sup>, 1282  
 Right wele a compayned in euery wise,  
 Of hir comyng<sup>1</sup> the peopiH were full fayn,  
 And offeryd hir right lowly ther seruice ; 1285  
 Atte hir pleasur<sup>1</sup> and atte hir owyn devise,  
 In that casteH she tared for to rest,  
 Onto the tyme they purvayed for the fest. 1288

<sup>1</sup> MS. *se*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *nor*.

42 THE KING OF THRACE DIES. A PARLIAMENT IS SUMMONED.

Meanwhile the king fell sick	In this meane while, the kynges massenger To Auferius he came withoute fey[n]ing'. Curlus he hight and seid in this maner : ' My lord,' quod he, ' ye must come to the kyng' In all the hast, and make noo taryng'; I drede me sore he may not long endure, ffor he is passyng seke I yow ensure.'	1289   1292   1295
and died	When Auferius the kyng herd that he saide, All sodenly he waxhid bothe pale and wanne ; ffurth on his waye to ride he hym purvayde Vnto the kyng As fast as euer he canne, And wete ye with he was an hevy man : ffor by the tyme he came vnto that place, The kyng was dede, whiche was a hevy case.	1296   1299   1302
	For hym was made grete ordenaunce I yow ensure ; The peopiH wept, ther hertys were full sore, And for to purvaye for his sepulture They besyed them echon, bothe lesse and more, Thanne was ther made an ordenaunce therfore, full rially with all maner seruice ; As felt to his estate in euery wise.	1306     1309
without heir.	W[i]thynne a while after all this was do, A non ther was callid a parlement, By Auferius and other lordis moo, fully concludid all by on Assent, Be cause the kyng left non of his disente, Nor of his blode of that land to be kyng, To chese them on And lefe all other thing.	1310   1313   1316
The parliament	And whanne they were Assemelyd euerychone, And them Advised them wele in euery thing'; They were fully Accordid all in one,	1317

- That Auferius suerly shuld be ther kyngt: 1320 chose Auferius  
 he was to them so trew And so loving, to succeed him.  
 And so rightwise in euery Iugement, [leaf 7, back]  
 That so able was non to ther entent. 1323
- And shortly to procede in this mater, 1324  
 They chase hym kyngt by voice of the land,  
 The lordes and the Ientilles aH in feere,  
 To hym dede homage as I vnderstonde, 1327  
 With full promes ther feithes in his hand,  
 Atte aH seasones to hym to owe ther seruice,  
 • And hym obeyed in eny maner wise. 1330
- Whanne this was do he sent for quene Sereyne, 1331  
 And in as goodly hast as it myght be,  
 The mariage was made be twix them twayn),  
 With grete honour and grete solempnite, 1334 The mariage  
 So grete a gaderyng was neuer in that contre ; betwixt him and  
 ffor to that fest he bedde his lordes euerychone, Queen Sereyne,  
 Theder thei came and ladys many on). 1337
- And whanne the fest was aH to geder don), 1338  
 Not long after withynne a liteH space,  
 The quene Sereyne was with child full sone  
 And whanne tyme came, as god wiH geve hir grace, and in due  
 She bare a sonne, a threfte child he was ; time she bare a  
 And whanne that he was growe to mannys age, son,  
 he was callid Ismael the Savage : 1344 Ismael the  
 Savage.
- For he was wild in aH his demening), 1345  
 Vnto the tyme he drew to more sadnesse,  
 Thanne afterward he was withoute feyningt  
 A nobyH knyght, the story doth witnesse : 1348  
 Now late vs thenne speke of Generydes,  
 What payn he hadde for fayre clarionas,  
 • By grete envy of cursid malichias. 1351  
 Now let us  
 speak of  
 Generydes.

44 MALICHIAS SETS THE SULTAN OF EGYPT AGAINST GENERYDES.

- One morning he  
went to speak  
with his lady. In a mornynge' arose Generydes, 1352  
To his lady he toke the way full right,  
To speke with hir as for his hartys ease ;  
This Malichias of hym he had a sight, 1355  
And after hym, as fast as euer he myght,  
full secretly he goth hym to aspye,  
hym for to do sum shame and velanye. 1358
- Malichias hid  
in a tree to  
hear what  
they said,  
And to perfourme all his purpose in dede, 1359  
Vppe in a tree he stode full secretly,  
That what they seid therof he toke good heede,  
and told the  
Sultan all that  
he could say to  
And to the Sowdon told it by and by : 1362  
And where as he dede noo thynge' ellys trewly,  
But spake with hir to telle hir' his entente,  
he hym reportid wers thanne euer he ment, 1365
- her dishonour.  
The Sultan  
sware they  
should die,  
To hir dishonour all that he cowde say. 1366  
Whanne the Sowdon had knowlage of this case,  
he sware his othe ther was non other waye,  
Butt bothe they shuld be dede be goddes grace. 1369  
To hym anon thanne sayde Malichias,  
' Of your' doughter ye may not avenge yow soo,  
But as for hym ye wote what is to do.' 1372
- but could not  
kill Generydes  
for fear of the  
people.  
Yet in his wraught this thought he euer among', 1373  
If he shuld avenge hym sodenly,  
All his pepill wold say he did hym wrong',  
Withoute Iustice to cause hym so to dye ; 1376  
And to eschew the Rumber and the crye,  
his purpose thanne he chaungyd all in feere :  
And Malichias was wroth in his maner, 1379
- And thought he was mystr[est]ed vtterly, 1380  
Be cause the Sowdon dede not as he ment ;  
ffor he was faynd to think that he shuld dye,

- Butt for aH he myst of his entent, 1383 Malichias  
 Yet in his malice he was so fervent did not leave  
 he wold not leve, butt stille alway opece<sup>1</sup> his malice
- Dede aH that he cowde to hurt Generydes. 1386 against  
 Generydes.
- So on) a tyme full streyght he toke the waye 1387  
 To the Sowdon, and seid in this maner ;  
 ‘ My lord,’ quod he, ‘ ye leve not that I saye,  
 And if it please yow my counceH for to here, 1390  
 Ye shaH haue knowlache of this mater clere.’  
 ‘ Wele thanne,’ quod he, ‘ if I may fynd it soo,  
 Ye shaH sone wete what I shaH do therto.’ 1393
- ‘ In a mornynge, if it please yow to rise,’ 1394 He took the  
 Quod Malichias, ‘ I canne say yow nomore, Sultan one  
 But<sup>2</sup> ye shaH se your’ self in euery wise morning  
 The very trougth, as I haue seid before ; 1397  
 And wete ye wiH it grevith me full soore,  
 That ye shuld me mystrest by eny waye,  
 I wold not that for more thanne I wold saye.’ 1400
- The<sup>3</sup> Sowdon sayde, ‘ as towchyng this mater, 1401  
 I wolle gladly be after your’ avise.’  
 Soo on) a day the wedder was full clere,  
 In a mornynge the Sowdon) ganne to rise, 1404  
 As erly as he cowde in eny wise ;  
 ffurth on he goth, and with hym) Malichias,  
 Streight to the chaunbour of Clarionas. 1407 to the chamber of  
 Clarionas,
- Save Malichias with hym) ther was noo moo, 1408  
 Atte A wyndow they stode hym) to Aspye.  
 Generydes, as he was wont to do,  
 ffull sone after he came full secretly, 1411 where they  
 watched the  
 lovers from a  
 window.
- As oft tyme As he came, yet trewly  
 he mystrestid neuer erthely man) be fore,  
 Yet As he Stode he Seighed wonder soore. 1414 Generydes  
 was sad

<sup>1</sup> MS. *opece*. Perhaps we should read *alway stille opece*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *Be*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *She*.



- To hym) anof) thanne seid Clarionas, 1415  
 ‘Ye seigh gretly, I prae yow telle me why.’  
 ‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘for certayn) it was,  
 for a dream he had dreamt of Malichias. This nyght I hadde a wonder dreme trewly 1418  
 Of Malichias ; noo mo but<sup>1</sup> he And I  
 Were in A place, this is the certeyn[te],  
 And of my clothez ther he robbid me. 1421
- I drew my swerd to reskewe hym) ageyn), 1422  
 Butt in that case I myght not haue my wil),  
 [leaf 8] The Sowdon) came and cast me downe, I wene,  
 In a depe pitte, whiche grevid me full ih) : 1425  
 With that my swerd owt of myn) hand it fell  
 On) Malichias and gave hym suche a wounde  
 Vppon) the hede that downe he felle to the grownde.
- Yet cowde I not eskafe owt of the pitte, 1429  
 ffor aH the craft that I cowde wele devise ;  
 Butt atte last, as god wold fortune it,  
 Ye aH only, and by your) interprise, 1432  
 Owt of daunger ye causid me to rise.’  
 To hym) anone thanne seid clarionas,  
 ‘I am a ferde,’ quod she, ‘of Malichias ; 1435
- Clarionas also had had a dream. For I dremyd that he wold haue me slayn), 1436  
 Save it lay not in his powere to do,  
 ffor he purposith by some maner trayn),  
 Whanne he may see a tyme to shew vs woo.’ 1439
- When they had spoken And whanne thei had to geder spoken soo,  
 Supposyng<sup>t</sup> wele that aH had ben) in pece,  
 the Sultan took Generydes The Sowdon) came and toke Generydes, 1442
- In grete anger rebukyng<sup>t</sup> hym) full soore, 1443  
 And chargid Malichias in aH the hast  
 To bynd hym) fast, and also fferthermore

<sup>1</sup> MS. *be*.

- That he in prison depe he shuld be cast, 1446 and ordered  
 Ther to abide while that his lyff may last ; him to be put  
 Or ellys he shuld by<sup>1</sup> Malichias avise in prison.  
 Be putte to deth in a right shamefull wise. 1449
- For his doughter he sent full hastily, 1450 His daughter he  
 And in his hete gave hir' a grete repreff, called by a  
 And callid hir, god wote, right shamefully shameful name.  
 AH other wise thanne he cowde make the preff: 1453
- And in his hert it was an vtter greff,  
 ffor he demyd on hir that she ne sought,<sup>2</sup>  
 Whiche afterward full gretely hym for thought. 1456
- Now Generydes goth with Malichias, 1457 Generydes was  
 his handes bounden as a prisonere, put in a tower,  
 Streyght to a towre wherein the prison was ;
- And hym delyueryd onto Anasore, 1460 under the  
 A gentill knyght keping the prison ther, charge of  
 To kepe hym hard and straye in his office, Anasore,  
 Withoute favour in eny maner wise. 1463
- And for to shew his malys vtterly, 1464  
 With strong yrons this cursed Malichias  
 he feteryd hym, and that soo greuously and fettered  
 The blode sprange owt in many dyuerse places ;<sup>3</sup> 1467 grievously by  
 And whith an hevy hammer that ther was, Malichias.  
 On his leggyss so sore he lette hym falle,  
 Att euery tyme he brake the skynne with aH. 1470
- Thanne Anasar was wrothe in his maner, 1471  
 And in this wise seid to Malichias,  
 ' Ye do me wrong, sithe I am keper here,  
 To do that is myn office in this case ; 1474  
 ffor his offence<sup>4</sup> or how that [euer] it was,  
 It is agayn aH reson in certayne,  
 To do [to] hym this importabiH payn.' 1477

<sup>1</sup> MS. *be by*.      <sup>2</sup> So MS. ; perhaps for *that he ne ought*.

<sup>3</sup> So MS. ; perhaps for *place*.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *office*.

- For noo prayer yet wold he neuer sece, 1478  
 But trewely did as he did before :  
 Longer suffer mygħt not Generydes,  
 At length Generydes smote him that he died. Nor nought he wold thow he shuld die<sup>1</sup> therefore, 1481  
 And with his fist he smote hym) wonder soore,  
 That bothe his eyne owt of his hede ganne falle,  
 And sodenly he died furth withaħ. 1484
- The keeper gave out And whanne the keper sawe that he was dede, 1485  
 Thanne was he sory for Generydes ;  
 If it were knowen) that he were don) to ded,  
 The Sowdon) wold be wroth) withouten) lese, 1488  
 Owt of reason) that noman) cowde hym) sese :  
 Wherefore he founde a meane to his entente,  
 By there avise that were with) hym) present. 1491
- How<sup>2</sup> Malichias whanne he came fro the towre, 1492  
 And don) that the Sowdon) bad hym) do,  
 that he fell down- stairs and brake his neck. his fete fayled in vnhappy oure,  
 And down) he felle and brake his nek in ij ; 1495  
 And for to make a preff that it was soo,  
 They toke hym) vppe and layde hym) soft and fayr,  
 Down) Atte lowest foote of aħ the stayre. 1498
- Thus were they aħ accordyd euerychone, 1499  
 Generydes to quyte aħ vtterly ;  
 Among) them) aħ ther was on,  
 A knight Darell A knyght that alway was in companye 1502  
 With anasor, and lovyd hym) trewly ;  
 And as he wold the toder wold the same  
 In euery thing), and dareħ was his name. 1505
- was chief of the council in this matter, In this mater) he was chef of counceħ 1506  
 With anasor to helpe Generydes :  
 he bad hym) goo and in no wise to fayle

<sup>1</sup> MS. *did*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *Now*.

To the Sowdon, and telle hym the processe, And he wold be <sup>1</sup> on of his cheff witnessse. Thanne anosor <sup>r</sup> ther as the Sowdon was ffuH sone he went, and told hym aH the case.	1509	and Anasore went to tell the Sultan,
Yet or [that] he departyd was and gone, ffuH streyte he went vnto Generydes, And of his bandis losed hym anon), That he somewhat myght be att his hartes ease. ffor though <sup>2</sup> ther were a noyse among the prese, Yet wist he wele as for fayre Clarionas, That he was no thing gilty in that case.	1513  1516  1519	first having loosed Generydes.
Furth in his waye goth now the Chastelyn, And to the Sowdon saide in this maner : ' I shaH yow telle of a ventur <sup>r</sup> certeyn, And that a strange, if it please yow to here, hough Malichias, withynne my office here, Toke vppon hym as for Generydes A H that ye bad me do withoute lease.	1520  1523  1526	He tells his tale,
And ouer that he dede fuH trewely, With strong Irons and feteryd hym fuH sore, <sup>3</sup> The blode ranne owt and that fuH petevously ; Whanne he had don, to seye yow ferthermore, Downne of the greses he felle the hede before, And brake his nek, it myght non other be, ffor this he died in very certeynte.'	1527  1530  1533	[leaf 8, back]
Whanne the Sowdon hard this, I yow be hight Ther myght no man be wrother thanne was he, ' What, <i>serys</i> !' he seith, ' this goth not A H a right : Thow Chastelyn, in what wise may this be ? A H this is done but for a sotilte, To hide your <sup>r</sup> fалshede vnder a coverture, But he shaH dye to morow be ye sure.'	1534  1537  1540	and the Sultan was wroth and suspicious,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *he*.      <sup>2</sup> MS. *thought*.      <sup>3</sup> MS. *fast*.  
GENERYDES.      4

- To hym anon answered the Chastelyn; 1541  
 'Ser; if it please your' lordshepe for to here,  
 ffor your' wurchippe yow most your' self reteyne,  
 And take a good avise in this mater, 1544  
 See that your' grounde be very good and clere,  
 To your' entente accordeng' to the same,  
 Or ellys it is but slaunder to your' name.' 1547
- The more he spak the more he lost his payn; 1548  
 Whanne Anasar' saw that he went his wey :  
 The Sowden callid fourth his chaumberleyn,  
 'Goo,' quod he, 'as fast as euer ye may, 1551  
 And see that Malichias in good arraye  
 Be caryed thens, ther as his body is,  
 'To the temple in honorabiH wise.' 1554
- Now goth the chaumberlayn furth on his way, 1555  
 With aH the hoole howse att his comaundment,  
 And whanne they came ther as the body lay,  
 It for to bery after ther entent, 1558  
 Ther they founde it with hundes alto rent,  
 Some rede, some blak, and some of dyuerse hude,  
 Ther cowde no man nownber the multitude. 1561
- Eche of them bare a pece away, 1562  
 Of flessH ne boon ther was no thyng behynd ;  
 The chammerleyn whanne he sawe that arraye,  
 he went furth sore musyng in his mynde, 1565  
 And told the Sowdon as he shuld it fynde ;  
 In euery thyng thanne was he grevid soore,  
 And more wrother thanne he was before. 1568
- Thanne for his lordes<sup>1</sup> furth with aH he sent, 1569  
 That they<sup>2</sup> shuld come withoute eny fayle :  
 Whanne they were come anon incontyent,

and ordered  
 Malichias to be  
 buried.

His body was  
 found torn to  
 pieces by hounds.

The Sultan was  
 more wroth,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *lordes thanne*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *he*.

- Generydes was brought owt of the Iayle, 1572 and sent for  
 ffuH sore aferd as it was noo mervah ; Generydes,  
 And ther he stode before them euerychone,  
 Right in this wise the Sowdon sayde anon : 1575
- ‘ This felaw her, this yong man that ye see, 1576 whom he accused  
 Generydes,’ he saide, ‘ that is his name ; before his lords  
 he was suerly the man that plesid me,  
 Wenying to me that he hadde be the same ; 1579  
 Butte now he hath don me an vtter shame,  
 ffor he hath done my doughter villanye, of seducing his  
 And layne be hir I sey yow certenly. 1582 daughter.
- I saw hym speke with hir in secrete wise, 1583  
 Wherefore I wote it may non other be ;  
 And I shaH wele aquyte hym his seruice,  
 ffor he shaH dye therefore, now trostith me ; 1586  
 That other may ensampyH take and see,  
 To be ware how they in suche case  
 here afterward offende in eny place.’ 1589
- With that anon answerd Generides : 1590  
 ‘ My lord,’ quod he, ‘ if ye cause me to dye,  
 Ye do me wrong, I take god to my witnesse ;  
 And wele I wote ther is no reasone whye, 1593  
 ffor in this poynt I am no thyng guilty,  
 And that I shaH make good, I yow ensure,  
 On knyght or Squyer whiH my lyff endure.’ 1596
- Whanne the Sowdon had hard aH that he seid ; 1597  
 ‘ Trowist thou to fyght,’ quod he, ‘ as in this case ?  
 Nay think it not, thy bost shaH sone be layde,  
 ffor thou shalt [dye] to morow withoute grace, 1600  
 And what that euer be withynne this place,  
 That wolle for the entrete in eny wise, but the Sultan  
 he shaH not spede I yow promysse. 1603 urged his lords

- to condemn him  
to death.      Wherefore I wold ye gave your' full assent      1604  
 Among yow all this processe to fulfill,  
 Accordeng' plenly to that Iugement.'
- All were silent  
but Anasore      And ther withaH the lordes were ful stille,      1607  
 And seid noo word neyther good nee ill,  
 Thanne Atte last the Chastelyn) alone,  
 like as a knyght spake afore them) euerychone :      1610
- 'My lordes All,' he seid, 'hough may this be?      1611  
 This is a thyng whiche I neuer sawe,  
 The Sowdon) doth vs wrong, As thinkith me,  
 To make vs deme a man) withoute lawe ;      1614  
 And for my part, for favour or for awe,  
 I shaH neuer assent to this mater,  
 Consideryng what he hath proferyd her.'      1617
- Thanne was the Sowdon) owt of pacience      1618  
 With Anasore, And spake full hastily ;  
 'Ye are,' quod he, 'to bold in my presence,  
 Ayenst my wilH to speke so vtterly,      1621  
 It is noo sygne of very loue trewly,  
 Not withstondeng I wote wele what ye mene,  
 But troste me wele it goo not as ye wene.'      1624
- and Darell, who  
took the part of  
Generydes.      Thanne came DareH and putt hym) self in prese,      1625  
 Where here be fore rehersed is by name,  
 Of nobyH kynne he was withouten) lese,  
 The more bolder he was to take a blame      1628  
 In this mater accordyng' to the same ;  
 And in this wise he seid be fore them) all,  
 And to the Sowdon) in especiaH :      1631
- 'As for my felawe her, the Chastelayn),      1632  
 I haue merveH that he rebukith hym) soo ;  
 And wele I wote that he hath don) his payn),

- ffor your' pleasur' in aH that he cowde doo, 1635  
 And vtterly this wiH I saye also,  
 he that wiH do Generydes a shame,  
 I yow ensure he shaH do me the same.' 1638
- Thanne to the Sowdon) furtH with aH they went, 1639  
 The lordes and the knyghtes euerychone,  
 And prayed hym) to respite the Iugement,  
 ffor certenly his wurchippe laye ther on); 1642  
 And wele they wist that reson) was ther [n]on),  
 A man) to deme, in eny maner case,  
 Withoute lawe and in so litiH space. 1645
- The Sowdon) was as wrothe as he myght be, 1646  
 That in noo wise he wist not what to saye ;  
 Thanne was ther on), the Story tellith me,  
 A knyght whiche hadde be with hym) many a day,  
 And wele cheryshed with hym) he was Alway,  
 like as he wold the Sowdon) wold the same  
 In euery thyng), and Lucas was his name. 1652
- Vnto the Sowdon) he seid thus anon): 1653  
 ' Me think, ser, as ferre as I canne fele,  
 These lordes and these knyghtes euerychone  
 In this mater they haue not seyde but wele, 1656  
 hasty processe wiH shende it euery dele,  
 Avise yow wele and do be good counceH,  
 And that shaH gretly yow honour and provaile.' 1659
- Whanne the Sowdon) had hard hym) euery dele, 1660  
 Withynne a while he was right temperate,  
 Of aH his wordes he remembryd wele,  
 And with hym) self he was half atte debate ; 1663  
 he thought he wold noo more be obstenate,  
 And gaue them) respite be fore them euerychon),  
 TiH one and xx<sup>ti</sup> dayes were come and goon). 1666

The lords then  
 prayed the  
 Sultan to  
 respite the  
 judgment.

The Sultan  
 was wroth,

but was pre-  
 vailed upon by  
 Lucas,

and gave a  
 respite of xxi  
 days.



- Therof was aH the felashepe fuH fayn), 1667  
 And wele content that he hadde suche [grace]  
 Generydes went to prisone went ayeyn),  
 Generydes went back to prison,  
 Atte hartes ease meche better thanne he was ; 1670  
 ffor Anasore hadde graunt hym) aH the place  
 ffor his Disporte, to take it as hym) list,  
 In hym) he hadde no maner of mystrest. 1673
- Whille he was stille in prisone a bideng), 1674  
 his thought was aH on) Clarionas ;  
 and thought of Clarionas.  
 And euer in his mynd remembryng,  
 how fayre<sup>1</sup> of hewe and womanly she was ; 1677  
 And if he myght stonde in so good a case,  
 hir to reioyse and haue hir atte his wissh),  
 Of aH his payne he wold not sett a rissh. 1680
- She was vppe on) A chaunbyr stiH opece, 1681  
 And euery man) that passid to and fro  
 She askyd fast aftur Generydes,  
 In very trougth if he were dede or noo ; 1684  
 They seid he was ageyn) to prisone goo,  
 And was a lyue they knewe it for certayn),  
 The whiche some what confort[e]d) hir Ayeyn). 1687
- The Sowdon) charge[d] them to kepe the day, 1688  
 In eny wise what thing that euer fall) :  
 And so they dede his pleasure to obeye,  
 Theder they came ichon) in generaH ; 1691  
 Thanne was the place to litiH for them) aH,  
 Wherefore the Sowdon) anon) dede ordeyne  
 A larger place aH owt vppon) the playn). 1694
- And for to determytte this mater, 1695  
 Generydes was brought out of the gaile ;  
 Generydes was brought out of prison,  
 The Sowdon) thanne rehersed) thanne in fere

<sup>1</sup> MS. *good fayre*.

- his displeasur' withoute eny fayle, 1698 and the Sultan  
 hough he myght best to his entente prevaile ; related his  
 And sodenly, among them euerychone, displeasur,  
 ffurth with ther came a massanger anon), 1701
- In hast[y] wise as fast as he cowde ride, 1702  
 And to the Sowdon he seid, right in this wise :  
 ' I am not come my message for to hide, when a mes-  
 But boldly for to telle you myn) avise. 1705 senger came  
 Ther is a kyng not ferre from) thise partise, from the King  
 In all contres ther as men) riden) and goon),  
 Vnder hevyn) so grete ther levith non). 1708
- Kyngt of Egipte he is, the soth to saye, 1709 of Egypt,  
 And haue merveth, sithe ye be hold soo wise,  
 That ye so long haue putte it in delaye,  
 And come not furth to offer your' seruice ; 1712  
 Wherefore he wiht that ye in eny wise  
 Yeld vppe your' land att his comaund[e]ment,  
 And vtterly obey to his entent : 1715 demanding the  
 Sultan's land.
- And for to take avise in this mater, 1716  
 he grauntith yow a moneth day of space,  
 And by that day to geve a playn answere,  
 As ye wiht be demeanyd in this case ; 1719  
 And your' doughter also clarionas, and his daughter,  
 I counceH yow to send hir to the kyng,  
 ffor your' ease and weelfare in tyme comyng.' 1722
- Whanne he hadde seid his message all in feere, 1723  
 The Sowdon) was displeasid for certayn) ;  
 And furth with all he chargid Anasar',  
 To take with hym) Generydes ayeyn), 1726  
 And ther to kepe hym) suerly qn) A payn),  
 ffor he myght not procede furmabely,  
 Because the tidynges came so hastely. 1729

	' Now telle what maner a man) is he,'	1730
	Seid the Sowdon), ' that is of suche powre ;	
[leaf 9, back]	And sey me now the very certente.'	
	To hym) anon) thanne seid the Massenger,	1733
	' If it please yow to wete, that ye shaH here :	
Belen the Bold is the King of Egypt's name.	Belen the bold his name is ouer aH,	
	And kyng of kyngges now men) do hym) calle ;	1736
	His loggyng is vppon) a fayre Ryuer,	1737
	Callid teger, not ferre owt of this cost ;	
	And there he lith with right a grete powre,	
	his owne persone and also aH his oste ;	1740
	he wiH that it be knowen) to litiH <sup>1</sup> And most,	
	That fro that grownde he wiH nott part Away,	
	TiH he haue redy word what ye <sup>2</sup> wiH saye.'	1743
	The Sowdon) thanne gave Answere furth) with aH,	1744
The Sultan refused his daughter,	And in this wise seid to the massanger ;	
	' Of my doughter, as for the principaH,	
	I lete yow wete, for pleasur' nee for fere	1747
	Think not ther on), for she shaH not come ther',	
	Nother in no nother place I yow ensure,	
	The whiche myght sownne onto here dishonour.	1750
	As for the Remenaunte of your' message,	1751
and for the rest of the message,	Be cause I wiH not lette yow of your' waye,	
	Whanne euer ye wiH ye may take your' viage,	
	ffor your' Answere I wiH that ye shaH sey,	1754
he would answer it in a month.	I wiH send word withynne a moneth day	
	Vnto your' prince, where euer he be present,	
	AH vtterly the fyne of myn) entent.'	1757
	The massanger anon) he toke his leue,	1758
The messenger left, and the Sultan consulted his lords,	And furth) he went whanne he hadde his answer'.	
	The Sowdon) anon) he ganne his counceH to meve	

<sup>1</sup> MS. *likill*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *he*.

- Of that mater that towchid hym) soo nere, 1761  
 And Askid ther avise in this mater,  
 Not on) nor twayne, but aH in generaH,  
 Thanne spake *ser* Dareh,<sup>1</sup> and Answerd furth with AH :
- ' These lordes here, that ben) of your counceH 1765  
 And my falow, and I be on Assent  
 In that mater to se what may prevaile,  
 As we seme <sup>1</sup> best we shaH shewe our' entent.' 1768  
 Thanne spake lucas anon) encontinent,  
 ' Ser, dough't ye not,' quod he, ' in this case  
 It shaH be purvayde fore with goddes grace ; 1771
- Sithe tyme of mend this land ded neuer soo, 1772  
 And as for vs we wiH not [now] begynne.' who advised  
 him to resist  
 Belen,  
 his lordes aH Assentid wele therto,  
 And thought that lucas seid right wele therin. 1775  
 ' We trost,' quod they, ' the victory for to wynne,  
 Vppon) that prince so myghti in his strength,  
 Or ij monethys be fully drawe o length. 1778
- But this we wiH require yow euerychone, 1779  
 To shew your' grace on to Generydes ; and to release  
 Generydes.  
 ffor wele we wote offence he hath do non),  
 Vs thynk he shuld the soner haue his pece ; 1782  
 We yow beseche your rancour for to sese,<sup>2</sup>  
 ffor att this tyme he may do good *seruice*,  
 And suche as shaH please yow in euery wise. 1785
- And in this wise, yf it please yow to here, 1786  
 Be myn) avise ye shaH send<sup>3</sup> for your ost :  
 And these lordes that ben) with yow here,  
 lett them) send for ther men) in euery cost, 1789  
 In aH ther best array both lesse and most ;  
 And so shaH yow, with aH your' baronage,  
 Defende your' lande that it pay noo trewage.' 1792

<sup>1</sup> So MS. ? *deme.*<sup>2</sup> MS. *sesee.*<sup>3</sup> MS. *sent.*

- The Sultan           The Sowdon markyd wele ther wordes aH,           1793  
 And thought it was but reason that they seide.  
 ‘ Now, *seris*,’ quod he, ‘ sithe yow in generall  
 ffor this young man) so specially hath prayed,           1796  
 That ye desire of me shaH nott be nayed ;  
 Ye may telle hym) he shaH stonde in my grace,  
 like as he dede before in eny place.’           1799
- They were right glad and thankyd hym) icheon), 1800  
 That they for hym) had sped so wele that day ;  
 and Anasor            Thanne Anasor’ and DareH went anon)  
 and Darell            Vnto the towre where he in prison) laye.           1803  
 ‘ What tydinges now,’ quod he, ‘ I praye yow saye.’  
 ‘ Be of good chere,’ quod they, ‘ dought ye no dele,  
 Your’ pece is made, and aH shaH be right wele.’ 1806
- They toke his fetters of incontenent           1807  
 ffrom) his leggis, and whan) they had so do,  
 Thanne was he glad Inow, and furth he went  
 To the Sowdon) as fast as he cowde goo,           1810  
 With DareH and *ser* Anasor’ Also ;  
 And whanne that he come to his *presens*,  
 fuH vmbely he did his Reuerence,           1813
- And to the Sowdon) seid right in this wise ;           1814  
 Generydes begs    ‘ I wold beseche yow, *ser*, graunte me *your* grace,  
 for the Sultan’s    I neuer offendid yow in my *seruice*,  
 favour,                Nother to yow nor to Clarionas.           1817  
 But hir to wurchippe as my dute was  
 In that that I cowde do, I yow ensure,  
 As long as I in *seruice* dede indure.           1820
- And more ouer, as for the massanger,           1821  
 It grevid me fuH iH to here hym) speke :  
 he sett his wordes in soo grete maner,

- That I wold fayn on hym haue ben wreke ; 1824  
 With your licence his purpose shaH I breke,  
 And if I may your pleasure vnderstonde,  
 With that prowde kyng I wiH fight hand be hand. 1827
- and offers to  
fight the king  
of Egypt hand  
to hand.
- He shaH not do your daughter dishonour, 1828  
 As long as god wiH send me lyff and space ;  
 Nor of his pride shaH neuer come that our' [leaf 10]  
 That ye shaH paye trebute, be goddis grace, 1831  
 This land shaH neuer stande in suche case ;  
 And if ye geve me leve, withoute fayle  
 ffor aH his strength I wiH hym onys assayle.' 1834
- Whanne the Sowdon had hard hym sey so wiH, 1835  
 ' Generydes,' quod he, ' I geue yow grace,  
 AH myn eviH wiH I for geve euery deele,  
 And ye to stonde in soo good a case 1838  
 As euer ye dede withynne eny place ;  
 ffor now I know that ye, in euery wise,  
 haue contynued full trew in your seruice. 1841
- The Sultan  
restored Gene-  
rydes to favour,
- And ferthermore, withoute more dalay, 1842  
 To morow suerly I wiH make yow a knyght ;  
 And for your' sake an hundred more that day  
 Ther shaH be made, and then with goddes myght 1845  
 I shaH purvay as for the landes right,  
 It to defende, and that it may be clere  
 ffrom aH seruage and clene owt of daunger.' 1848
- and promised  
on the morrow :  
to make him a  
knight.
- Thanne was his thought vppon Clarionas, 1849  
 Sithe he hir saughe hym thought passing long ;  
 That she myght stonde in his favour and grace<sup>1</sup>  
 like as she dede, for he had don hir wrong ; 1852  
 And that he cowde remembre euer among :  
 Wherefore he thought hir to recompence,  
 he sendith for hir to come to his presence. 1855

<sup>1</sup> MS. *his grace*.

- Thanne Anasore was chargid for to goo 1856  
 Vnto the chaunbyr of fayre Clarionas,  
 To bryng her furth the Sowdon bad hym soo,  
 That euery man myght see withynne the place, 1859  
 hough wele she stode with hym in euery case :  
 And whanne she came befoore hym, for certayn,  
 The Sowdon toke hir in his armys twayn. 1862  
 and took her  
 in his arms.
- ‘ Doughter,’ he seid, ‘ for yow I am to blame, 1863  
 ffuH wrongfully to me ye were accusid,  
 And not gilty I wiH recorde the same,  
 To say the soth it may not be refusid ; 1866  
 So hold I yow aH vtterly excusid  
 In euery thing<sup>1</sup>; and here, or where ye be,  
 Att AH tymes right wele come on to me.’ 1869
- Clarionas was fayn whanne this was doo, 1870  
 Of hym she toke hir leve fuH curtesly ;  
 Thanne was Generydes fuH glad also,  
 Be cause hir pece was made so trewly : 1873  
 And as she went he cast on hir his Iee,  
 So as he durst, to saue hym self fro blame,  
 And she ayenward Aquyte hym with the same. 1876
- Thanne was ther sone Assigned knyghtez twayn 1877  
 To bryng hir to hir chaumber furth with AH,  
 And on the morow the Sowdon for certayn  
 With his lordes he come in to the haH, 1880  
 And ther anone [among] his knyghtez aH,  
 And, soth to say, the first of eny man  
 Generides the order ther beganne. 1883  
 Generydes the  
 first of any.
- The lordes toke ther leve on be on), 1884  
 To make them redy atte ther owyn devise ;  
 The ffelischepe departid euerychon

<sup>1</sup> MS. *think*.

- To goo and come ageyn to ther *seruice*, 1887  
 And *euery* man in defensible wise,  
 hors and harnes withoute eny more delay,  
 To muster withynne a moneth day. 1890
- Furst the Sowdon sent his letters owt, 1891  
 With massengers as fast as they cowde ride, The Sultan sent letters to the kings and princes  
 To kynges and to princes all about, 1894  
 The next that were marching on euery side,  
 Desiring them armour to provide  
 And in all goodly hast for them he sende <sup>1</sup>  
 To come to hym his contre to defende. 1897 to help him.
- These *lettres* came on to these princez all, 1898  
 hym for to helpe they grauntid euerychone,  
 Whanne they were come, furst in especiall There came Croves, king of Arabia,  
 Croves the kyng of Arabye was on; 1901  
 .ij. thousand knyghtes came with hym alone,  
 Be side archers a nowmbyr full notabyll,  
 Whiche for werre Were right good men and able. 1904
- The kyng was wele in age I yow ensur, 1905  
 And anasor his sone was for certeyn father of Anasor,  
 A goodly prince and comly of stature;  
 Of his comeng the Sowdon was fayn; 1908  
 Notwithstandyng it was to hym a payn  
 So ferre owt of his contre to travaill,  
 But his promesse was suche he wold not fayle. 1911
- Next after hym ther came owt of turkey 1912  
 A myghti prince, and with hym people grete, a prince of Turkey, and his two sons,  
 A thousand helmys with hym in companye,  
 O[f] his contre the best that he cowde gete, 1915  
 his soñnes bothe with hym were not <sup>2</sup> for yete,  
 And for to sey yow soth, and not to feyn,  
 Trewly they were full semely knyngthez twayn; 1918

<sup>1</sup> MS. *sent*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *not ferre*.



- Off grete wurchippe and of right nobiſſ fame, 1919  
 David and Abell, The eldest hight *ser* Dauid, as I rede,  
 The yonger sone *ser* Abeſſ was his name,  
 Whiche of his enmys <sup>1</sup> had but litiſſ drede ; 1922  
 The kyng hym ſelf was a leſt man in dede,  
 Also he louyd wele fayre Clarionas,  
 Butt she hadde sette hir hert in other place. 1925
- the king of  
 Cæsarea, Thanne came the prince of Cesare sone vppon), 1926  
 With vij hundred knyghtes of his own) lande ;  
 [leaf 10, back]  
 Cherydone,  
 the father of  
 Darell, The Story seiſſ his name was Cherydone,  
 And *ser* Dareſſ his sonne was, I vnderſtonde : 1929  
 This prince was hold full manly of his hande,  
 his archers and his foote men) wele arrayed,  
 The Sowdon) of hym) was right wele apayd. 1932
- Obeth, king  
 of Sicily, Thanne came the fortſſt, whiche was of Sesiſſ kyng,  
 A wurthy prince, And Obeth was his name ;  
 .v. honderyd knyghtes he dede with hym) bring,  
 And men) a foote accordeng) to the same ; 1936  
 The prince hym) ſelf of good and noble fame,  
 Theder to come he was right wele content,  
 As sone as he his lettres to hym) ſent. 1939
- the king of  
 Nicomedia,  
 Esaunce,  
 (with 8000 men as  
 black as coal,) Nexst after come the kyng of Nicomede, 1940  
 iij. thousand men) he brought on) to the Citee ;  
 As blak as cole icheon) thei <sup>2</sup> were in dede,  
 Save only ther tethe ther was noo white to see, 1943  
 Strong men) they were the story telliſſ it me :  
 Esaunce he hight, the story doth wisse,  
 A curteſe knyght and full of gentilnes. 1946
- the king of  
 Ethiopia, From) Ethiope ther came another kyng, 1947  
 ij thowsand knyghtes att his gouernaunce,  
 With <sup>3</sup> meche pepiſſ on) foote Att his leding :

<sup>1</sup> MS. *elmys*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *ther*.<sup>3</sup> MS. *Whiche*.

Thanne after came A riaH ordenaunce,	1950	
Too myghty princes with a grete pusaunce,		
ffro Masedeyn and owt of Arkadye,		and the princes of Macedon
Ther cowde no man the nowmber specifie.	1953	and Arcadia,
Thanne came Moab, of Capadoor the kyng,	1954	Moab, the king of Cappadocia,
To the Sowdon as fast as he cowde hye		
With ij knyghtes in felashepe rideng,		
Balam the tone And yeferus trewly,	1957	
The kyng of Damask and of Ermony,		the kings of Damascus and of Ermony,
Of knyghtes wel Arrayed with spere and Shelde,		
xv. thowsand they brought in to the feld.	1960	
Sone after come the kyng of orkenay,	1961	the king of Orkney, and after him two kings more,
In his companye ther came also		
Another kyng in good riche Arraye;		
And after hym ther came ij kynggez moo,	1964	
O thirde Cesall the kyng was on of thoo;		
And what peopyH they brought among them three,		and a third Cesall,
Mynne Auctour seith it is a wonder to see.	1967	
Now haue I here rehersed in substaunce	1968	
xv kynges, As shortly as I myght,		15 kings in all,
With ther powre and AH ther hoole pusaunce,		
Whiche was so grete, to sey yow very right,	1971	
The Cite myght resseyue them day ne nyght;		and met in a wood without the town.
Butt vnder nethe a woode withoute the town,		
Ther was sette vppe the Sowdones pavilyon	1974	The Sultan's pavillon
Vppon A playn, and made of silk and gold	1975	was set up on a plain,
As richely as thei cowde wele ordeyne,		
With many moo full goodly to beholde,		with many more.
And tentys large, full riche and wele besen,	1978	
And who so had be thence a myle or twayn,		
Vppon the feld to loke or cast his Ie,		
It shuld hym seme a town or A Citee.	1981	

64 THE TURKISH KING'S SON DECLARES PERSIA SHALL BE FREE.

Upon a time the Sultan went	Vppon a tyme the seasonē was fayre, With his lordes the Sowdon) toke the waye, Owt of the Cite to take the ayre, In the feld vppon) a Somerys day,	1982
to see the host,	And for to see the Ost in ther arraye ; Beholdyng them) with countenance right stabill, hym) semyd they were pepitt innumerable.	1985
and told them of the king of Egypt's demand	Thanne seid he thus vnto them) euerychon), That were princes and other lordes aH, ' In this contre, ' quod he, ' ther is come on), And kyng of kyngges thus he doth hym) calle, Whiche thing may neuer in my reasone falle ; ffor ther may non) be suche in dede ne thought, Butt he that fourmed aH this world of nought.	1989 1992 1995
for tribute.	Also he askid tr[i]bute of this land, Whiche may not be, what case that euer fall.' The forrest ganne to speke, I vnderstonde, The kyngges sonne of turkey furth with aH ;	1996 1999
Sir Abell said,	A semely prince, ser abell they do hym) calle, Vnto the Sowdon) sone he gauē <sup>1</sup> answer, As these wordes he seid as ye shaH here :	2002
the land of Persia should pay no tribute.	' As for the land of perse, this wiH I saye, It ought to paye noo tribute in noo wise ; Ne our' enmys shaH neuer see the day, ffor we are strongge I now I yow promys Too kepe it from) aH suche maner seruice ;	2003 2006'
We will meet the Egyptians in the field.	And for to make it good with spere and Sheld, Goo we to morow and mete them) in the feld.	2009
	Do as ye leke, for this is my counceH ; Besechyng yow to be remembryd here, That whanne the lande of perse hatH gevynd) bateH,	2010

<sup>1</sup> MS. *gaue an.*

- Of tyme passid before in many yere, 2013  
 My lord and fader hath ben Banyere,  
 And in the formest bateH for to be  
 he and his ayeris claymeth it of dewte. 2016
- Also to be made constabiH of your' ost, 2017 Let me be the  
constable of  
your host,  
 And the voward to haue in gouernaunce,  
 ffor to Turkey of right it longith most ;  
 Beseching yow with vmbles obeysaunce, 2020  
 Of your lordshipe ye list so it Avaunce,  
 That I may [here] withoute envy or blame  
 The formest baner in my faders name.' 2023 and standard-  
bearer.'
- Anon) with aH the Sowdon) gaue answere ; 2024 [leaf 11]  
The Sultan  
granted his  
desire.  
 'AH your' desire I graunt, it is but right.'  
 The kyng hym) thankid in full curtes maner,  
 Thanne to ther tentys sone they ganne them) dight,  
 And dressid aH ther harnes ouer nyght,  
 That they myght on) the morow withoute fayle  
 AH maner men) be redy to BateH. 2030
- Whanne it was day, forward they ganne them) dresse 2034 At daybreak  
they made them  
ready for batt'le,  
 In bright harnes these princes euerychone,  
 With other dyuerce lordes more and lesse,  
 Of Dukes and Erles and Barons anon),  
 Ther helmes garnysshed that they had vpon),  
 With perlys and dyamauntez of price,  
 Ther course[r]s trappid in the fressest wise. 2037
- In the Citee through owt in euery strete 2038  
 Ther was grete noyse of pepill aH aboutH,  
 To dresse them) fourth ther enmys for to mete,  
 And sone vpon) withoute eny dought 2041  
 ffro the Citee the Sowdon) passid owt,  
 And rideth streyte to his pavilion),  
 With lordes aboutH hym) in euery rome. 2044 and went out  
of the city,

- And whanne that they were redy to goo, 2045  
 And AH assemelid in a companye,  
 60,000 strong. iij skore thowsand they were withoute moo. /  
 Thanne were ordeyned the wardes by and by; 2048  
 The foremost ward the king of Turkey had with  
 The formest warde AH redy for to gye  
 The kyng<sup>t</sup> of Turkey had in gouernaunce,  
 Be very right of his enheritaunce. 2051
- 8000 knyghts; Thre thowsand knyghtes att his demening, 2052  
 Be side Archers and foote men that were ther,  
 And As his graunt was atte begynneng,  
 his sonne ser AbeH he was baneer. 2055  
 The secunde ward, to certifie yow here,  
 Was putte on to the kyng<sup>t</sup> of Araby,  
 the king of Arabia had the second, with 2000;  
 iij thowsand knyghtez in his companye. 2058
- the third, Sir Anasore and Generydes,  
 The iij<sup>de</sup> ward ther in was ser Anasore, 2059  
 And with hym was Generydes also,  
 And AH the new made knyghtez they were thore,<sup>1</sup>  
 with 1500; And xv hundred men withoute moo, 2062  
 Of chosen men what euer they shuld do,  
 AH vnder nethe bothe the rule of more<sup>2</sup> and lesse,  
 Of Anasore and [of] Generydes. 2065
- Cherydone was fourth,  
 The prince of Cesare, callid cherydone, 2066  
 he was the iij<sup>th</sup>, aH in Another ward,  
 his felishepe wele be sene echon,  
 with 1000 knyghts waiting on him; next came the king of Sicily and 8000 knyghts;  
 A thowsand knyght[ez] wayteng<sup>t</sup> on his gard. 2069  
 Thanne came the kyng of CeseH afterward,  
 iij thowsand knyghtez in his companye,  
 With Archers and foote men by and by. 2072
- the king of Nicomedia  
 Next after hym came the kyng of Nycomede, 2073  
 V thowsand knyghtes, wonder to behold,  
 full begely shapen bothe in lengeth And brede,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ȝ<sup>r</sup>*.<sup>2</sup> So MS. ? *the rule bothe more.*

- As blak as coole, as I befoore haue told, 2076  
 The vij<sup>te</sup> bateH to rule it as he wold, ruled the sixth  
 And as in writeng in fynde<sup>1</sup> remembraunce, battle;  
 Was putte hooly on to his gouernaunce. 2079
- The kyng of Ethiope, with pepiH grete, 2080 the king of  
 The vij<sup>te</sup> ward he hadd in gouernaunce, Ethiopia had the  
 ffuH wele purveid his enmys for to mete; seventh;  
 And in the viij<sup>te</sup> ward, to saye yow the substaunce, the king of  
 iij kyng[ez] moo, with aH ther ordenaunce, Macedon and  
 Of Masedoyne and other kynges twayne, two others the  
 With moche peopiH to sey yow the certayn. 2086 eighth;
- The ix<sup>te</sup> ward the kyng of Capadoce, 2087 the ninth, the  
 With the nowmber of knyghtez iij thowsand, king of Cappa-  
 ffuH wele wellyd to werre vpon ther foys; docia;  
 The x<sup>te</sup> batayH kyng Balam toke on hond, 2090 the tenth, king  
 With iij thowsand knyghtez I vnderstonde; Balam;  
 The xj<sup>te</sup> ward<sup>2</sup> therin was zepherus, the eleventh,  
 A myghti prince in armys corageus. 2093 Zephyrus;
- The xij<sup>te</sup> ward the kyng of Orkenaye, 2094 the king of  
 With grete peopiH I say yow sekerly; Orkney twelfth;  
 The xiiij<sup>te</sup>, the southly<sup>3</sup> for to say, the thirteenth,  
 Kyng<sup>4</sup> phares with a nobiH companie; 2097 King Phares;  
 The last saue on the kyng of Barbary. the last but one  
 These iij princes hadde after ther entente the king of  
 vj thowsand knyghtez in ther poyntement. 2100 Barbary.
- The last bateH therin the Sowdon was, 2101 The Sultan was  
 iij thowsand knyghtez with hym ther were, last of all,  
 Some of his lande and some of dyuerce place, 2104  
 And euery man wele dressid in his geere; and Darell his  
 In that bateH DareH was Baner, standard-bearer.  
 And as the story seith in euery wise  
 he was a likely knyght for that Office. 2107

<sup>1</sup> So MS. ? *I fynde.*    <sup>2</sup> MS. *was.*    <sup>3</sup> So MS. ? *southe,*

	Anon) with aH ther Baneres were displayed,	2108
It was a royal sight to see them arrayed.	A riath sight it was to behold,	
	Eche of them) wele horsid and arrayed,	
	And in ther harnes dressid as they wold,	2111
	Ther cote Armers of siluer and of gold ; And so forward they partid aH in feere, The trompettys blew, it was A Loye to here.	2114
Now let us turn again to the [leaf 11, back] mighty king.	Now late vs leue them rideng on) the way,	2115
	And to this mygh̄ti kyng turne we agayn, Hough he purveith in aH that euer he may, And in what wise that he may best ordeyne,	2118
	Of euery ward to make a capteyn, ffirst he appoynted in especiaH, hym) self was in the foremost of them) aH.	2121
He was in the foremost ward.	Three kynggez were with hym) in companye,	2122
	Also he hadde of <sup>1</sup> knyghtes vj. thowsand, And in nowmber as many by and by, In euery warde was poynted afore hand,	2125
	And by writeng as I vnderstonde ; Gwynan his sonne, whiche was fuH dere, Of his bateH he made hym) Banere.	2128
Three kings were with him,		
and Gwynan his son, standard- bearer.	Thanne came ser Amelok, the kyng of ynd,	2129
	Whiche lande, god wote, fuH traytoru[s]ly he wanne, And vntrewly, the story makith mynde, Betrayed his prince whiche was a nobiH man).	2132
who betrayed king Auferius.	The secunde ward ser Amelok beganne With meche pepiH, to say yow certenly, ij kynges mo were in his companye.	2135
	Sanyk,	So forthermore thanne came the kyng Sanyk
king of Africa,	Nexst afterward, and with hym) kynggez twayn) ; A mygh̄ti prince, and kyng <sup>2</sup> of Auferyk, <sup>3</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> MS. *hadde f.*    <sup>2</sup> MS. *kyng he was.*    <sup>3</sup> MS. *Anseryk.*

And fader to the quene of ynde certayn,	2139	
The whiche forsoke hir husbond be a trayn):		
This prince hadde in his rewle and gouernaunce		
The iij <sup>de</sup> bateH with aH the ordenaunce.	2142	had the third battle;
The iiij <sup>te</sup> bateH to rule and to ordeyne	2143	the king of Thrace the fourth;
Madane <sup>1</sup> hadde it, whiche was kyng of Trace ;		
And as myn) Auctour specifieth certayn		
Right yong And fressh a lest man) he was.	2146	
And in the v <sup>te</sup> ther came Barachias,		the fifth, Barachias, king of Europe;
Kyng of Europe, and suche a companye		
As euery ward was poynted by and by.	2149	
Nexst after hym) came Ermones the kyng,	2150	the sixth, king Ermones,
The vij <sup>te</sup> BateH to gouerne as he wold,		
ffuH boustous folk and ih) faryng,		with men
With visages fowle, fuH gresely to beholde,	2153	
AH of on) sorte they were both yong and old,		
Ther bakkes and ther belly were soo large,		so big that horses could not carry them,
Ther was noo hors of them wold bere the charge ;	2156	
Wherefore they rode on) camelys euerychon),	2157	so they rode on camels,
Think wele it was a vounderfuH array,		
ffor as for spere or swerd they handelid non),		
Ther wepons were more stronger, I yow say,	2160	and had weapons (see p. 80) like mattocks, with long helues;
lyke as mattokez Shapyn) so were they,		
Ther helvys long, that whanne they shuld fight		
Ther strokes shuld come with grete wight.	2163	
Two kynges moo were in his company,	2164	
Of suche making and of on) maner kynd.		
The vij <sup>te</sup> ward the kyng of Assirye,		the seventh, Galad, king of Assyria;
Galad he hight in story, as I fynde,	2167	
A prince worthy for to [be] had in mynd ;		
The viij <sup>te</sup> BateH therin was manassen,		the eighth, Manassen;
And vnder hym) was his sone ruben).	2170	

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Madame*.



70 KING AUFERIUS LEADS THE KING OF EGYPT'S 10TH BATTALION.

<p>the ninth, Lamadone, king of Libya;</p>	<p>The kyng of lybie, callid lamadone,</p>	<p>2171</p>
<p>the tenth, Auferius,</p>	<p>The ix<sup>te</sup> warde hadde att his leding; And the x<sup>te</sup>, the last of euerychone, Was auferius, the welebelouyd kyng</p>	<p>2174</p>
<p>king of India,</p>	<p>That was of ynd, and ther had his dwellyng Til he was putte [from] his enheritaunce, Wherof be fore was made remembraunce.</p>	<p>2177</p>
<p>who knew not that he had to fight against his son Generydes.</p>	<p>Two kynges mo were in his poyntement, With the nowmber of knyghtes accordeng, Owt of the Reme of Trace with hym ther were, To wayte on hym ther were [they] well willyng, But of on thing he had no knowlaching, That his fortune was suche withoute lese To fight ayenst his sone Generydes :</p>	<p>2178 2181 2184</p>
<p>The Sultan sent out 3 knyghts to reconnoitre.</p>	<p>The last bateil was putt on to his gard, And for this cawse it was apoyntid so, Ser Amelok he hadde the secunde ward, That noo debate shuld be bytwix them twoo, Thanne after this ther was no more a doo ; The men of armys bothe with spere and sheld, With grete corage dressid them in to the feld.</p>	<p>2185 2188 2191</p>
<p>The Sultan sent out 3 knyghts to reconnoitre.</p>	<p>And on the toder part forward they went ; Among his men the Sowdon came rideng, And prevely iij knyghtez owt he sent, Of his enmys to knowe ther demeanyng, They brought hym word ayenward thei were comyng, And so they rode y<sup>e</sup> space of half a nyght, That euerychone of other hadde a sight.</p>	<p>2192 2195 2198</p>
<p>The Sultan sent out 3 knyghts to reconnoitre.</p>	<p>Thanne afterward thei made noo taryeng, But furth they goo withoute eny lett, Wete ye wele ther was a sorowfull encounteryng,</p>	<p>2199</p>

- Whanne the batels to geder were mett, 2202 The battles met.  
 Euerychone on) other ferly they sette  
 With grete corage, and trewly for to speke  
 It was a world to here the sperys breke. 2205
- The kyng of kynggez rode on euery side, 2206 The king of  
 ffuH clene armyd formest of euerychone, kings  
 There were butt fewe his strokes wold abide, [leaf 12]  
 So many he on) horsid one be one ; 2209 unhorsed many a  
 A comly prince he was to loke vppon, one.  
 And therwith [all] right good and honorable, 2212  
 And in the feld a knyght right comfortable.
- Ser abeH was of perse the Banere, 2213 Sir Abell met  
 Avaunsid hym) and to a kyng ganne ride, him,  
 And thorough owt the body he hym) bare, 2216  
 That on) his hors he myght not longe abide,  
 Butt to the grownde he felle and ther he dyed ;  
 And thanne ser AbeH, in a hasty brayde, 2219  
 Vnto the kyng of kyngges thanne he seide :
- ' Good ser,' quod he, ' how likith yow this game ?'  
 With tho wordes the kyng liked fuH itt,  
 he thought fuH wele to quyte hym) with y<sup>e</sup> same,  
 And ranne to hym) with a fuH eger wiH, 2223  
 That from ser AbeH downe the baner feH,  
 And suche a stroke he hadde, to say yow trew, but lost his  
 That from) his hors almost he ther ouer threw. 2226 banner in the  
 fight,
- The kyng his fader sawe the baner down), 2227 which his father  
 he hastyd hym) as fast as euer he myght, rescued.  
 And with an hundered knyghtes of renown) 2230  
 The baner sone they reisd it vppe right ;  
 Thanne was the bateH sore, I yow be hight,  
 And many slayn) ; but or the day was past  
 The men of perse wiH drew them) atte last. 2233 The men of  
 Persia withdrew,

- The nexst bateH, whanne thei wist how it was,    2234  
 Generydes and Anasore in certayn),  
 but Generydes came up and won the ground again,  
 They brought ther felishepe bothe more and lesse,  
 And in a while they wanne the grownd ayen);    2237  
 Generydes sawe Guynan on) the playn),  
 The kyngges sone, rideng' with spere and sheld;  
 he taryd not, butt mette hym) in the feld.    2240
- Gwaynan on) to Generides he ranne,    2241  
 And with [his] spere he brake his sheld on) twayne;  
 Generides ayenward like a man)  
 With stode his stroke, and smote hym) so ageyn), 2244  
 That from) his hors he felle vppon) the playn),  
 And who that euer that was wele payde or wroth),  
 fought with Gwynan,  
 he toke his hors with hym and furth he goth).    2247
- Thanne was ther on) not ferre owt of y<sup>e</sup> prese,    2248  
 lyke a harowed he semyd for to be,  
 To hym) Anon) thanne seid Generydes,  
 'Good ser,' quod he, 'doo now sum what for me;'  
 'What is your' wiH and pleasure?' quod he.  
 'My lorde,' he seid, 'that ye wiH in this nede  
 Change my SadyH and sett it on) this stede.    2254
- Whanne ye haue do, take ye my stede therfore.' 2255  
 Sygrem hym did as Generides hym) badde,  
 he hight so, and to sey yow more  
 In his demeanyng he was wise and sadde;    2258  
 Of bothe partys right grete favour' he hadde,  
 To gentilmen) he was right servisable,  
 And ther withaH full good and companable.    2261
- Generydes leppe vppe vppon) his stede,    2262  
 A better was not onder nethe the sonne;  
 ffor grete suerte in story as I rede,  
 and took his horse,

- The kyng of kyngges gave it to his sonne, 2265  
 Or the bateH was eny thing begonne ;  
 Sygrem was glad of chaungyng<sup>r</sup> of his hors,  
 ffor of his owne he gave butt litih fors. 2268 giving his own  
to Sygrem.
- To hym anon thanne seid Generydes, 2269 He aske Sygrem  
where Sir  
Amelok is.  
 ‘ Sygrem,’ quod he, ‘ do me to vnderstonde  
 Ser Amelok, if he be in the preese,  
 Whiche trayturlly hath wonne my faders lande. 2272  
 ffayne wold I wete if he were nye hande.’  
 ‘ Trewly,’ he seid, ‘ now I remembyr me,  
 Suche one ther is in very certente. 2275
- Butt as for yow, I wote not what ye be, 2276  
 hym knowe I wele trewly, that is noo nay ;  
 The first bateH saue on ther in is he,  
 This is the very trougth that I yow saye, 2279  
 And what ye be, I beseche and praye  
 To lete me wete the truthe in euery wise,  
 And I shaH trewly owe yow my seruice.’ 2282 Tell me who  
you are.’
- Generydes thanne gaue hym this answe<sup>r</sup> ; 2283 Generydes said,  
 ‘ Sygrem,’ he seid, ‘ to yow I wiH not leyne,  
 I shaH yow telle the trouth of this mater,  
 kyng auferius is my fader in certeyn, 2286 ‘ Auferius is  
my father.’  
 Whiche was of ynd bothe lord and souereyn,  
 And now is kyng of Trace, as I yow say,  
 Butt lete this go noo ferther, I yow praye.’ 2289
- ‘ Kyng<sup>r</sup> auferius,’ quod he, ‘ I knowe hym wele, 2290 ‘ I know him  
well,’ replied  
Sygrem,  
 The last bateH of aH ther in he is,  
 As ferre as I canne vnderstonde and fele,  
 Ser Amelok is not his frende I wis, 2293 ‘ and Sir Amelok  
is not his friend.’  
 And by what reason I wiH telh yow this ;  
 The kyng of kynggez partyd them twayn,  
 Be cause they shuld noo debate begynne certeyn.’ 2296

74 GENERYDES FINDS AND FIGHTS THE TRAITOR SIR AMELOK.

- 'How shall I know Sir Amelok?' said Generydes. 'How shaH I doo,' thanne seid Generydes, 2297  
 'Of Amelok to haue sum knowlacyng? ffor hym that I may knowe among' the preese, But if I haue sum redy tokyni[n]g.' 2300  
 'I shaH yow telle,' quod he, 'withoute feyneng, his stede is gray withoute layen, The hede is whigh't, to say yow for certayn.' 2303
- For more knowelage to telle yow which is he, 2304  
 his harmes are, who so list to be holde, and his arms are the field gules [leaf 12, back] with three banda of gold.' 2307  
 The felde of Goulys in very certeynte, Ther with also iij bandes aH of gold.' 2307  
 And whanne that he Generydes had told Of Amelok, and hough he shuld hym fynde, Wete ye wele he was the gladder in hys mynde. 2310
- They ride on together, Furth on) his stede rideth Generydes, 2311  
 To fynd ser Amelok if that he may, With hym rideth Sygrem stiH opeese, And as they twayne rode spekyng' be the waye, 2314  
 Segrem was ware wher in a valay and meet Sir Amelok in a valley. Ser Amelok came on) rideng A pace, hym for to rest as for a litiH space : 2317
- 'Loo yender is ser Amelok,' he seid, 2318  
 'And saving' on) with hym ther is no moo.' And with that word Generydes abrayde, 'Now is,' quod he, 'good tyme for me to goo ;' 2321  
 So furth he ridith tiH that he came hym too : The toder sawe hym come with spere and sheld, They fight. And furth he gothe and mette hym in the feld. 2324
- Amelok brake in two Generydes' shield. And atte first he stroke Generydes, 2325  
 And with that stroke he brast his sheld in twayn), Anone with aH he quyte hym dowteles,

- And smote his sheld quyte on) the playn). 2328 Generydes cuts  
 Thanne seid Generides, 'now am I fayn), away Amelok's  
 Thow shalt not laughē atte me in mokrery, shield.  
 ffor thow hast lost thy sheld as wele as I. 2331
- And as for on) thyng<sup>1</sup> I shaſt the wele ensure, 2332  
 As for thy sheld thu shalt haue it no more,  
 ffor myn) is broke it may noo more endure,  
 Be thow right sure I wiſt haue thynne therefore :<sup>2</sup> 2335  
 And thanne beganne the bateH passing sore,  
 Ther was non) of them) shewid favour<sup>3</sup> to a nother,  
 ffor right dedely the tone hatid the toder. 2338
- Syr Amelok was wrothe as he myght be, 2339  
 And to Generydes right thus he sayde ;  
 'I shaſt yow quyte that thu hast doo to me,'  
 And smote hym) on) the hide wiſt ſuche a brayde, 2342 They fight on.  
 That in hym) self he was some what dismayed :  
 Quod Amelok, 'thu hast I now this day,  
 Reche me my<sup>1</sup> sheld and thu goo thy waye.' 2345
- 'Thow getist it not, fals traytour [that] thu art, 2346 Generydes  
 Or thu goo farther thu shalt haue myschaunse, reproaches  
 ffor thu hast wiſt thy fals envyous hert Amelok for  
 Putte my fader from) his enheritaunce, his treachery.  
 Whiche was his Ioye, his lyfe, and his pleasur,<sup>2</sup> 2349  
 And in my faders presence thu me smote,<sup>2</sup>  
 Whiche I haue not forgete yet, god it wote. 2352
- And thanne I myght not ease my hert in dede, 2353  
 But now thu shalt repent it or thu goo :'  
 And wiſt his swerd he smette hym) on) the hede, Sir Amelok  
 The helme to brast anon) in peces two ; 2356 is wounded  
 his lippys and his noose he smote away also,  
 Clene from) his face, and ther wiſt aH full sone,  
 he bledde so fast that he felle in A swonne. 2359 and unhorsed,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *thy*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *smette*.

- To hym thanne seide Generides anon, 2360  
 'WhiH ere thu bad I shuld reche the thy sheld,  
 And now me think thu hast nede of on,  
 ffor neyther spere ne sheld that thu may weld : ' 2363  
 but rescued And with that word vppeward his hede [he] helde,  
 Risyng with aH to helpe hym self right fayne ;  
 Generydes thanne smote hym down ageyn, 2366
- Hym for to slee was fully his entente. 2367  
 by his knights. With that anon his knyghtes came hym to,  
 And sette hym on his hors and furth they went,  
 As soft a pace as y<sup>et</sup> myght with hym goo, 2370  
 Too se hym in that plight they were full woo ;  
 Generydes took the horse he had won of Amelok, his stede anon thanne toke Generydes,  
 And led hym furth with hym in to the prese. 2373
- And whanne that he was eskepyd trewly, 2374  
 Sygrem he found anon in contenant,  
 'My frende,' quod [he], 'I prae yow fetHfully  
 To do my massage after myn entent, 2377  
 That ye wiH take this stede, and hym present  
 To auferius my lord and fader dere,  
 And say to hym that I haue wonne hym here 2380  
 and sent it to Auferius by Sygrem.
- Off Amalok, the traytour most vntrewe ; 2381  
 And if he aske as for more witesse,  
 Who sent to hym and how that I hym knewe,  
 Telle hym it is his sone Generydes, 2384  
 And hough that Amelok in aH the prese,  
 Withynne his howse and in his high presence,  
 full cruely smote hym with violence ; 2387
- And he ayenward smete hym with his knyff 2388  
 Thorough the Arme in very certente.'  
 Sygrem Ayenward seid, 'ser, be my liff,

- I shaſt do that ye haue comaundyd me, 2391  
 And take hym this present where euer he be.  
 ' Now goo Sygrem, as fast as ye may spede,  
 To Auferius to present hym this stede. ' 2394
- And whanne this stede to Auferius was brought, 2395  
 And wist fro whence he came, thanne was he fayn ;  
 ' Now, good Sygrem, as euer I may do ought  
 ffor thy pleasur,' quod auferius ayen, 2398  
 ' Of my sonne telle me somme token playn),  
 hough I may best knowe hym among them aſt ;'  
 ' Ser,' quod Sygrem, ' with right good wiſt I shaſt.' 2401
- Sygrem hym told tokynnes moo thanne on), 2402  
 his sonne to knowe be right of his office,  
 What colour was his hors he rode vpon),  
 And what harmys he bare, and what devise, 2405  
 Aſt this he told hym in full redy wise ;  
 kyng auferius ther with he was contente,  
 And hym rewardid weſt for his presente.<sup>1</sup> 2408
- As now putte we this mater in respite, 2409  
 And to Generydes turne we ageyn),  
 Whiche founde his felawes aſt most discomfete,  
 ffor they had fought aſt the day certeyn) ; 2412  
 Yet whanne they hym sawe thenne were *thei* fayn),  
 And ganne reioyse whanne they to geder mette,  
 With knyghtly corage frely on they sette. 2415
- And thanne beganne the bateſt passing sore ; 2416  
 They fought alway to geder stiſt opece,  
 The men of perse were hartid more and more,  
 Aſt be counfort of Generydes : 2419  
 he styntid not, nor neuer wold he sese,  
 And with his swerd where that his stroke glynt,  
 Owt of ther sadiſt full redely they went. 2422

Auferius asked  
 Sygrem some  
 token by which  
 he might know  
 [leaf 13]  
 his son.

He told him the  
 colour of his  
 horse and his  
 arms.

Generydes found  
 his fellows  
 almost dis-  
 comfited.

When they saw  
 him they were  
 glad.

Every one went  
 down before the  
 stroke of  
 Generydes.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *presence*.



- The king of kings  
asked Sygrem,      The kyng of kyngges toke good hede [      ],      2423  
To hym he callid Sygrem furth with all anon,
- 'What knight is  
yonder on my  
son's horse?'      'What knyghte is yender,' quod he, 'canne ye me saye?  
That in the feld outrayth euerychone;      2426  
So good a knyght as he me semyth non  
In all the world, but on thyng I merveth,  
My sonnys stede hath he, withoute fayle;      2429
- Where with trewly I am not wele apayed,      2430  
Notwithstondeng a nobyht knyght is he,  
And that ye knowe right wele, Sygrem,' he sayd,  
'Wherefore I wold he were dwellyng with me;      2433  
Of gold and siluer he shaft haue plente,  
Townys and castelys at his obyseaunce,  
And other thinges moo to his plesaunce.'      2436
- 'Str,' quoth  
Sygrem, 'he is of  
a high lineage,      'Ser,' quod Sygrem, 'trewly it wih not be,      2437  
he is descendid of an high lenage,  
And as fer<sup>1</sup> furth as I canne fele and see,  
he waytith after right grete heritage,      2440  
ffor with the Sowdon he wih take no wage,  
And for to telle yow trouthe as in this case,  
his trost is to haue fayre Clarionas.'      2443
- and his trust  
is to have  
Clarionas.'      'Nay,' said the  
king, 'I take her  
for my own,  
and will make it  
good on his  
body.'      'Clarionas,' quod he, 'nay, lette be that;      2444  
I take hir for my owen, ser, be the rode,  
Whether he wih or noo, for wote ye what,  
Vppon his body I wih make it good:'      2447  
And whanne Sygrem these wordes vnderstode,  
ffull sone he went to Generydes,  
And told hym what he seid more or lesse.      2450
- Belen now  
seeks Generydes,      Now kyng Belleyn secheith Generydes      2451  
Thorough the ost, to fynde hym if he maye,  
And as he rode a side hand of the prece,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *for*.

- he sawe where that he rode in [a] valaye ; 2454 and finds him in  
 To hym anon fuht streyght he toke the waye, a valley.  
 And on a high he beganne to crye,  
 'Turne the,' he seid, 'for tyme it is trewly : 2457
- Vppon my stede blanchard thu ridest here, 2458  
 Butt on my list thu shalt hym sone for goo.'  
 That word anon Generides ganne here,  
 he turnyd hym withoute wordes moo. 2461  
 They toke ther coursis and ranne to geder soo, They ran  
 Thanne iche atte other' and bothe ther sperys helde, together and were  
 But thei were clene onhorsid in the feld. 2464 both unhorsed,
- Vppon ther stedis sone thei were ayeyn, 2465 but got up on  
 And so they fought to geder' hand to hand, their steeds  
 Ther was noo favour' shewid be twix them twayn, again, and  
 Butt strokes grete and sore, I vnderstonde ; 2468 fought hand to  
 ij better knyghtes were not in all the land, hand.  
 ffor long' thei fought and neuer wold thei lette,  
 Ne yet departe to tyme the ostes mette.<sup>1</sup> 2471
- Thanne wax the bateff euer more and more, 2472 The battle waxed  
 As thei resortid on euery side ; sore.  
 lordes and knyghtez were hurt right soore,  
 And many ligging dede with woundes wide ; 2475  
 lucas fuht sone Manessen had aspied, Lucas rode at  
 With sheld and spere he dressid hym full right, Manassen,  
 And ranne to hym in all that euer he myght. 2478
- The stede<sup>2</sup> was good that lucas rode vppon, 2479  
 And suche a stroke he gave hym with a spere,  
 That thorough the harnes and the shulder bon,  
 Thorough owt his bak and slew hym ther ; 2482 and slew him,  
 Thanne to the kyng he seid in this maner :  
 'Take yow here this present or ye goo,  
 And I shaft do my part to send yow moo.' 2485

<sup>1</sup> MS. *mettez.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *stode.*

Tho wordes toke the kyng in Mокkery, 2486  
 And made hym redy with spere and sheld,  
 To ser lucas he ranne full egerly  
 And stroke hym fro his hors in to the feld ; 2489  
 With that anon Generydes beheld  
 how lucas was owtrayed among' his foys,  
 And in he came and rescuyd hym att onys. 2492

but was unhorsed  
 by the king,  
 and rescued by  
 Generydes,  
 [leaf 13, back]

Streyght to the kyng he rideth for certayn), 2493  
 And with his swerd he smote hym on the hede,  
 The helme to brast anon in pecys twayn),  
 And with that stroke he slewe his hors in dede, 2496  
 And so the stede fel vnder nethe hym dede,  
 hym self also ther with was astoinyd sore,  
 And blew his horne, to saye yow forthermore. 2499

who slew the  
 king's horse.

The king blew  
 his horn,

and a thousand  
 knyghts came up

Thanne came a thowsaund knyghtez of his ost, 2500  
 And vppe thei sette hym on a nother stede,  
 And glad they were, wenyng' they had hym lost,  
 And furth owt of the prese with hym they yede.<sup>1</sup> 2503  
 Thanne came ther in as fast as thei myght spede,  
 The buscommest folk, the men of higher ynd,  
 Of whom before the story makith mend. 2506

and carried him  
 off.  
 Then came in the  
 men of higher  
 India,  
 (see p. 69)

Whanne they come in they made rome Alabought,  
 Ther wepons were made owt of all mesur',  
 ffull ih shapyn with pekys in and owt,  
 Ther strokes myght no man endure ; 2510  
 The men of Perse were att discomfeture,  
 And whanne the Sowdon hard of that tiding',  
 he came anon and made no taryng' ; 2513

with weapons  
 out of all  
 measure.

The men of  
 Persia were  
 discomfited,

Conforting' them in full good maner, 2514  
 And for ther seruice thankyd them Also :  
 The prince of Cesare gave hym this answeare,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *yode*.

- ' Now truly, *ser*,' quod he, 'if it were so 2517  
 That they were men) with whom) we haue a do,  
 We wold not dowte to mete them) on) be on),  
 But suerly they be fendez euerychone. 2520
- Ther wepons be suche ther may no man) abide, 2521  
 Wherefore this is now myn) awise,' quod<sup>1</sup> he,  
 ' Vs to with drawe a litel) owt aside, and withdrew  
 That our enmys *perseyue* not that we fle.' 2524 towards  
 The Sowdon) saw it wold non) other be, the city,  
 Butt nedis he must geve his assent ther to, Mountenor.  
 And yet he was full) loth so for to do. 2527
- They drewe softly to the Citee Ward), 2523  
 The Sowdon) blow his horn) that thei myght here,  
 The lordes and the knyghtez of his garde,  
 Whanne thei it hard) anon) thei drew hym) nyere, 2531  
 As as they rode to geder aH in feer,  
 Ther enmys made on) them) a newe afraye,  
 That vnnethe myght the Sowdon) skape a waye. 2534 The Sultan  
 barely escaped,
- V. hunderyd of his men) he lost also, 2535 and lost 500 men  
 And of horsis a thowsand atte lest and 1000 horses.  
 Among) them) aH thei lost withoute moo,  
 And some lordes and knyghtez of the best ; 2538  
 The day passid, the sonne drewe to the rest,  
 And be that tyme his felisshepe and he  
 Were come to Mountoner the riche Citee. 2541
- And of aH this wist not Generides, 2542 Generydes and  
 Nor anasor), to say yow certeynly, Anasore wist not  
 ffor thei were aHway fightyng) still) opece of this, but  
 Ayenst Galad the kyng) of Asirye ; 2545 fought Galad,  
 the king of  
 Assyria,  
 And whanne they had knowlage vtterly,  
 Of the Sowdon) and of his distresse,  
 Thanne were they bothe in right grete hevynesse. 2548

<sup>1</sup> MS. *now q<sup>d</sup>*.

- Yer<sup>1</sup> fought thei stiĥ and reskew was *ther* non,      2549  
 Nor non comyng<sup>t</sup> as ferre as they myĥt see,  
 Ther men) almost distressid euerychone,  
 And many slayne, thenne of necessite      2552  
 They them) withdrewē, and towarde the Citee  
 They toke the way, and in conclusion  
 Thanne was the oste be twene them and y<sup>e</sup> town); 2555
- till their men  
 were distressed,  
 and they tried  
 to retire,  
 but found the  
 enemy between  
 them and the  
 city.
- That in no wise they wist not hough to pas,      2556  
 Ne hough to do they knowe noo *sertente*,  
 Thanne Anasor<sup>r</sup> remembred that ther was  
 A postrene yssuyng<sup>t</sup> owt of the Citee,      2559  
 And thederward they drewē to haue entree,  
 But or they myĥt in suerte come and goo  
 Be twix them) bothe they had I noughe to do.      2562
- Now to the Sowdon) lete us turne ageyn),      2563  
 ffor here peopiĥ what mone that he do make ;  
 Of euery man) he enqueryd the certente,  
 Whiche of his men) were ded and which were take ;  
 The Citee made grete sorow for ther sake,  
 And specially thei made grete hevynes  
 ffor Anasore and for Generides ;      2569
- And thought suerly it myĥt non) other be,      2570  
 Butte thei were bothe [putte] to discomfoure.  
 Thanne sayde Dareĥ, 'it were full grete pite  
 Suche ij knyĥtez to lese, I yow ensure ;'      2573  
 And furth he goth vpon) his aventure,  
 Beseching<sup>t</sup> god to counceĥ hym) and rede,  
 — ffor he wold fynd hym)<sup>2</sup> eyther quyk or dede.      2576
- There was a  
 rumour in the city  
 that Generydes  
 and Anasore  
 were slain.  
 Clarionas heard
- Thanne was a noyse the Citee aĥ along<sup>t</sup>      2577  
 That they were slayn), and woo thei were *therfore* ;  
 Clarionas herd how the tydingez sprong<sup>t</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Yey*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *hyn*.

- here chere was don), she wept passing sore : 2580 *it and wept sore,*  
 Myrabeñ sawe she wept more and more,  
 ‘Madame,’ quod she, ‘these tydengez that be now, but Mirabeñ did  
 A wager dare I ley they are not trew : 2583 *not believe the  
 news.*
- And if it please yow, for your’ disporte, 2584  
 To walk vppe to the towre<sup>1</sup> ther shaft ye see  
 Paraventur’ that may be your’ counfort.’  
 ‘I wiñ,’ she sayde, ‘do as as ye counceñ me : 2587  
 Comforte or no, or hough that euer it be.’ [leaf 14]  
 So furth she went vppe to the towre on) hye, 2590 *Clarionas went  
 to the top of  
 the tower,  
 but saw nothing  
 for weeping.*  
 Butt noughñ she sawe, she wept so wtterly.
- Thanne was Dareñ come to Generides, 2591 *Sir Darell made  
 his way to  
 Generydes.*  
 And glad thei were, bothe he and Anasor’,  
 ffor thei had long’ endured counfortles :  
 Whanne he was come amendid was ther cher’, 2594  
 And att that tyme owt of the prese thei were,  
 To rest them) self a season) to endure,  
 Ther eche to other told his aventur’. 2597
- Clarionas was on) the towre on) hye, 2598 *Clarionas on the  
 tower*  
 Of here wepyng’ she ded hir self refrayn),  
 And owt vppon) the feld she ganne aspye,  
 Where Anasore came rideng vppon) the playn); 2601 *saw Anasore,*  
 By his Armys she knewe hym) for certayn)  
 That it was he, and ther withañ anon)  
 A grete part of hir hevynesse was goon). 2604
- Generides was also in the feld, 2605 *but did not know  
 Generydes because  
 he had Sir  
 Amelok’s shield.*  
 Butt whiche was he she had noo knowlaching),  
 ffor he had on) ser Amelokkez sheld,  
 With his devise, in very tokenyng’ 2608  
 That he it wanne att ther encounteryng’,  
 And so they rode oyther withñ spere and sheld,  
 Toward town) clarionas them) beheld. 2611

<sup>1</sup> MS. *town*.

Auferius with 500 knyghts rode	And as thei rode anon thei were Aspied By on that was with Auferius the kyng, And in noo wise thanne wold he not abide, And told his lord withoute more taryeng; And he anon, leving AH other thing, Sent furth knyghtez v. C. in aray, hym self also to mete them on the waye.	2612      2618
	And ah was to withstonde ther passage, With these knyghtes he rode on still opece ;	2619
The foremost was Ismael the Savage,	The formest was Ismael the Savage, Kyng Auferius sonne withoute leese, And very brother onto Generides ;	2622
who encountered Generydes.	Be fore them ah he came hym self alone, Generides was ware therof anon.	2625
	He toke his spere And mette hym in the feld, They toke ther course and ranne to rownde : he stroke Generydes vppon the sheld, That hors and man Almost were att grownde, But vppe he rose anon both hoole and sounde, And with his swerd he smote hym so ageyn, That with that stroke he brake his sheld on twayn.	2626   2629
They fought till Generydes smote	So fought y <sup>e1</sup> still withoute eny drede, And neyther of them wold to other yeld ; Generydes hym sette so vppon the hede,	2633
off Ismael's helm,	That his helme flew quyte in to the feld, With that anon Generydes beheld	2636
and saw his features.	The fetures wele that was in his visage, Demyng that they were ah of on lenage.	2639
	And for to haue ther of very knowlaching, To Ismael he said, in very certente, ' Good ser,' quod he, ' for loue of hevyn kyng,	2640

- Tell me for trougth what maner a man ye be, 2643 He asked him  
 And whense ye came, and owt of what contre ?' who he was.
- 'What man I am,' quod Ismael ayeyn,  
 'And of what kynne I wiſt not layn. 2646
- Kyng' auferius trewly my fader is, 2647 'Auferius is  
 To say yow sothe, and for to bere noo blame, my father,'  
 And of the Reme of Trace is kyng I wis, quoth Ismael.
- Ther was I born and brought vppe in the same, 2650  
 And Ismael the Savage is myn name ;  
 Now I haue told yow all withoute leese.'
- 'Gramercy, frende,' thanne sayd Generydes, 2653 'Gramercy,  
 friend,' said  
 Generydes,  
 'For we haue fought to long I yow ensure.' 2654  
 With that he toke hym in his armys twoo,  
 'We are broderen,' quod he, 'of on nature, 2657  
 kyng' auferius my fader is also ;  
 I may nott tary now, for I must goo,  
 My felawes hath mervell to see me heer,  
 Butt here after I shall make yow better chere.' 2660
- Thanne ther was an hevvy departeng, 2661 There was a  
 hough iche of them made to other mone. heavy parting  
 between them.  
 Generydes sawe where was thanne comyng'  
 his faders men, wele horsid euerychone, 2664  
 And he full hevvy butt hym self alone,  
 And they to many as to his entente,  
 So furth on was he to his felawes went.<sup>1</sup> 2667 Generydes went  
 on to his fellows,
- Whanne he was come ther as his felawes were, 2668  
 They sawe comyng along in a valay  
 A grete peopill, wele dressed in ther geere,  
 To lette hym and his felawes on the waye, 2671 and in a valley  
 Thanne was ther on a knyght in good aray, saw a great people  
 coming to hinder  
 them with a  
 knight at their  
 head.  
 Be fore them all avaunsid hym to ride,  
 Generydes hym had right sone aspyed ; 2674

<sup>1</sup> MS. *was to his felawes he went.*



- Generydes rode  
at him, and slew  
him. And furth with all he mette on the playn), 2675  
In sight of all the pepitt that were ther,  
And Atte first he brast his sheld in twayn),  
That thorough owt the body ranne the spere ; 2678
- Clarionas saw  
this, and recog-  
nized her lover. Clarionas demyd that he was ther,  
And to hir mayde she sayde full sobyrly,  
'What knyght is that that doth so worthyly?' 2681
- [leaf 14, back] 'It is your loue,' quod she, 'withoute moo.' 2682  
'Now good Mirabeñ, what is your advise?'  
'Trewly,' quod she, 'I trow that it be soo,  
Me think it shuld ben he in eny wise ; 2685  
The rede penseñ I see att his devise,  
The whiche in sothe ye dede for hym ordeyn),  
Gwynot brought it hym your Cha[m]berleyn.' 2688
- 'O trouth,' quod she, 'Madame,<sup>1</sup> that is trew ; 2689  
Now am I wele remembryd ther vppon),  
Butt euermore my sorow doth renewe,  
Withoute reskewe to se hym so alone, 2692  
Thus shañ they be distressid euerychone,  
Namely my love, whiche is so good a knyght,  
ffor hym is all my mone I yow be hight. 2695
- For wele I wote, ther is noo knyght a lyve 2696  
That better doith here and in euery place,  
And this to say my reson doith me dryve,  
ffor I am his while I haue lyffe and space.' 2699  
And while she remembryd all this case  
Come Ismael rideng' with spere and sheld,  
And to Dareñ he ridith in to the feld. 2702
- Bothe to the grounde he bare hors and man), 2703  
furth with came the ost vppon the playn),  
And as *ser* Dareñ wold haue Res[k]eu thanne,

<sup>1</sup> ? *Mirabell.*

- Ther came a knyght and held hym down Ayeyn, 2706  
 And with his swerd wold haue Darell slayn,  
 Butt in the most and in the thikest prese  
 hym to reskew thanne came Generides. 2709
 and Darell would  
have been slayn,  
but was saved  
by Generydes,
- Streight as he cowde to that knyght he rode, 2710  
 he brake his helme and stroke hym on the heede,  
 That on his hors no lengger he a bode,  
 But downe he fell and fast beganne to blede ; 2713  
 Generydes with hym he toke his stede,  
 And furth fro them he rode a litiH aside,  
 And toke it Darell theron for to ride. 2716
 and they rode  
forth together.
- Clarionas beheld this euery dele ; 2717  
 Quod she ayeyn to MirabeH here mayde,  
 ' The same is he, the whiche I love so weH ;  
 ' Madame,' quod she, ' so haue I alway sayde, 2720  
 ye nede noo thyng for hym to be dismayde,  
 Nor let no mo suche thoughtez yow assayle,  
 ffor it is he withoute eny fayle.' 2723
- Now rideth Darell with Generides, 2724  
 As full of thought for his fortune that day,  
 And as they rode a litiH fro the prese,  
 kyng' Auferius came crossyng' them the way, 2727  
 full clene armyd in riche and good Aray.  
 Darell anon dressid hym full right,  
 And ranne to hym in all that euer he myght. 2730
 Auferius crossed  
their path,  
  
and Darell rode  
at him,
- And one the hede smote Auferius the kyng' ; 2731  
 The helme was sure, or ellys he had hym slayn,  
 kyng' auferius withoute more tarieng'  
 he gave ser Darell another for certayn) 2734  
 Vpon the helme, the fyre thanne sprang' owt ayeyn),  
 And ther withall, with a full soden brayde,  
 To ser Darell right in this wise he saide : 2737
 and smote him  
on the head,  
  
Auferius gave  
him a blow in  
return.

88 GENERYDES MAKES HIMSELF KNOWN TO HIS FATHER AUFERIUS.

<p>'Old men can smite,' quoth he.</p>	<p>'The<sup>1</sup> yong<sup>r</sup> knyghtez,' quod he, 'that ben<sup>r</sup> so prowde, Old men<sup>r</sup> canne smyte, wete wele it is trew.'</p>	
<p>Generydes heard his voice, and knew it was his father.</p>	<p>Generides hard hough he spake so lowde, And by the voyce his fader thanne he knewe, Toward them both anon he drewe ; Whanne he was come in full vmbles wise To his fader, he said right in this wise :</p>	<p>2741 2744</p>
<p>He parted them,</p>	<p>' I praye yow, ser, your<sup>r</sup> hand fro me refrayn, To the tyme ye knowe my purpose vterly, here am I come to departe yow twayn), ffor I must loue yow bothe and reason whye ; And namely yow alone most specially, As for this knyght whil<sup>r</sup> my life<sup>2</sup> maye endure, I sha<sup>r</sup>ll hym<sup>r</sup> neuer fayle I yow ensure.'</p>	<p>2745 2748 2751</p>
<p>told his name,</p>	<p>'What maner a man<sup>r</sup> be ye thanne,' saide the kyng, 'That putte your<sup>r</sup> self soo fer<sup>3</sup> furth in the prese ?' 'I sha<sup>r</sup>ll yow telle,' quod he, 'withoute feyneng<sup>r</sup> ; Of Surre am I born<sup>r</sup> withoute leese, As for my name I hight Generides.'</p>	<p>2755</p>
<p>and joined his fellows.</p>	<p>And ther with a<sup>r</sup>ll he tared not certayn), Butt to<sup>4</sup> his felawes furth he goth ayeyn).</p>	<p>2758</p>
<p>Auferius was dismayed.</p>	<p>Kyng<sup>r</sup> Auferius thanne was sumwhat dismayed, Be cause that he departid so ayeyn) ; ffor be the wordes whiche he to hym<sup>r</sup> saide, he was his sonne, he knew it for certayn) ; Yet of the sight of hym<sup>r</sup> he was full fayn), As nature wold, and in especia<sup>r</sup>ll That he was wexen<sup>r</sup> soo goodly a knyght with a<sup>r</sup>ll.</p>	<p>2759 2762 2765</p>
<p>Said Darell unto Generydes,</p>	<p>Now was the bate<sup>r</sup>ll dureng<sup>r</sup> sti<sup>r</sup>ll opece, The kynggez ost encresid more and more ; Thanne sayd Dare<sup>r</sup>ll on<sup>r</sup> to Generides,</p>	<p>2766</p>

<sup>1</sup> ? Ye.      <sup>2</sup> MS. list.      <sup>3</sup> MS. for.      <sup>4</sup> MS. he to.

- ‘ffor your’ pleasure we shaft repante it sore.’ 2769 ‘For your  
 ‘ffor hym’<sup>1</sup>, quod he, ‘now good tell me wherefore.’ pleasure we  
 ‘yes yes,’ quod he, ‘this is the case, shall repent  
 your’ Iee is euer stedfast in on) place.’ 2772 your eye is ever  
 it sore :  
 it sore :
- ‘What place is that?’ [quod he] ‘I prae yow saye ;  
 As for the kyng’, I see hym nott I wise.’  
 ‘I mene not that,’ quod Dareth, ‘be this daye,  
 It is another thing’, so haue I blis. 2776 [leaf 15]  
 On yender towre on) highe I see where is on yonder tower.’  
 That causith yow these mastereys for to shewe,  
 Now haue I told yow aH with wordes fewe.’ 2779
- ‘In sothe,’ quod he, ‘ye bere me wrong’ in hand, 2780 ‘In sooth,’ quoth  
 ffor certenly I saugh hir not to nowe ; Generides, ‘I saw  
 Sithe she is ther, as now I vnderstonde, her not till now.’  
 If I do wele she woff me more allowe. 2783  
 Now be not wroth, for by licence of yow  
 Yet onys I wiH assaye what I canne do.’  
 ‘I graunt,’ quod Dareth, ‘late vs goo thertoo.’ 2786
- Generides, and with hym) ser) Dareth, 2787  
 Bothe on) thei rode to knowe what was ther vre ; They rode on,  
 And with Generides was NataneH,  
 Beryng) a spere of tymber good and sure ; 2790  
 Generides ther mette att a venture and Generides  
 The kyng) Ruben, Redy with spere and sheld, met Ruben,  
 And ther they strake to geder in the feld. 2793
- Vppon) the sheld he strake Generides, 2794  
 And ther with brake his sheld in pecis twayn) :  
 A mighty man) he was, butt neuer the lesse  
 Atte same course he smote hym) so ayeyn), 2797 and smote him  
 That of his hors he felle vppon) the playn), from his horse,  
 With that Generides both) fair) and wele  
 his hors he delyuered on) to NataneH. 2800

<sup>1</sup> ? *myn.*

which he sent      ' I pray yow, *ser*,' he saide, ' haue here this stede, 2801  
 And take ye hym) on to my lady der' ;  
 Me recomaunding) on to hir' goodly hede,  
 And say to hir that I haue wonne hym) here.' 2804  
 ' Weh *ser*,' *quod* he, ' as towching' this mater,  
 late me alone now that I knowe *your* entente,  
 In all the hast I wuh) hym) to hir present.' 2807

to Clarionas by Natanel.      Furth with the steede he went owt of y<sup>e</sup> prese, 2808  
 And streyght he goth) on) to Clarionas ;  
 ' Madame,' *quod* he, ' my lord Generides  
 hym) recommaundith lowly to your' grace, 2811  
 And sent yow here a stede of his purchase  
 And where that he hadde it to tell yow very playn),  
 Of kyng) Ruben he wanne hym) for *certayn*).' 2814

She was right glad.      ' Ye be right welcome, Natanel,' *quod* she, 2815  
 ' Of this I am right gladde and wele content,  
 And moche gladder to knowe the certente  
 Of his weelfare that hath yow heder sent.' 2818  
 ' Madame,' *quod* he, ' right now encontynent  
 I wold that he hym) self were with yow here.'  
 ' With me,' *quod* she, ' so wold I that he were.' 2821

Natanel returned to Generydes,      Thanne Natanel) departid furth) with) all, 2822  
 And had a token) onto Generides ;  
 In to the feld he goth) among) them) all,  
 And founde hym) ther aside hand of the prese, 2825  
 and told him all.      And furth) with) all) told) hym) the<sup>1</sup> hoole processe,  
 In euery thing) that he hadde done and saide,  
 Tho was Generides full) wele apayed ; 2828

He took courage,      And ther) with) all) he toke anon) corage, 2829  
 And to the feld he dressid) hym) to ride ;  
 — Of yong) and old and euery man) of age

<sup>1</sup> MS. *all the*.

- Ther wer butt few his strokes wold abide. 2832 and few could  
 abide his stroke.  
 The kyngges ost drew to the Citez side,  
 Generides was thanne vpon the playn,  
 A while ther to rest hym *ther* in certayn. 2835
- The kyng<sup>o</sup> of kynggez thanne was in his tente, 2836 The king of  
 kings  
 And of all this he hard no maner thing<sup>o</sup> ;  
 he harde a noyse and wist not what it ment,  
 But furth he goth leving<sup>o</sup> All other thing<sup>o</sup>, 2839  
 And toke his hors withoute taryeng<sup>o</sup>,  
 he blew his horn that all his men myght here, blew his horn,  
 and his men  
 With that thei come a<sup>1</sup> bought hym All in feere. 2842 came about him.
- Whanne Darell sawe the kyng<sup>o</sup> of kyngges ost, 2843 Darell prayed  
 Generydes anon full fayre [he] prayed ;  
 ‘for love of god that is of myghtez most,  
 Goo we in to the Citee now,’ he sayde ; 2846  
 ‘Darell,’ *quod* he, ‘wher of be ye dismayd ?  
 I see noo cause, for we shall do right wele  
 And skape ther handes, doughite ye neuer a dele.’ 2849
- ‘I am contente,’ *quod* he, ‘that we do so ; 2850 ‘I am content,’  
 quoth he.  
 As for my part now late vs goo ther on.’  
 And with hym was ser Anosore Also ;  
 his horn thanne blew Generides anon), 2853  
 With that ther came A bowte hym euerychone,  
 his felasshepe and what that euer he ment,  
 Thei were redy atte his commaundment. 2856
- And furth they dressid hym in his gere, 2857 He, Darell, and  
 Anasore have  
 Generides, Darell, and Anasore,  
 Might neuer men doo better on a day ther,  
 Thanne they dede ther so fewe pepill as thei were :  
 Eche of them iij so wele quiete them ther,  
 They slew iij knyghtez eu[er]ychone for on),  
 The remenaunt were putte to flight euerychon). 2863

<sup>1</sup> MS. *an.*

92 GENERIDES IS PRAISED BY ALL, AND THANKED BY THE SULTAN.

- And while they fought to geder in the feld, 2864  
 The cite sent owt anon in contentent  
 iij skore knyghtez, Armyd with spere And sheld ;  
 Ther with Generides was wele content : 2867  
 ‘lo *serys* !’ quod hee, ‘Aftur your own entent,  
 The felissheppe is youre that yender ye see,  
 Now may I suerly entre the Citee.’ 2870
- They took the way to the city.  
 [leaf 15, back] And whanne they were aH to geder mett, 2871  
 To the Citee they toke the way full right,  
 And in they went withoute eny lette :
- Then was there joy. Thanne was ther Ioy, I yow be hight, 2874  
 In euery strete si[n]ggyn<sup>g</sup> and fyres bright ;  
 And euery creature, both more and lesse,  
 Gaue a gret lawde onto Generides. 2877
- The Sultan anon sent for him and thanked him. Anon withaH the Sowdon for hym sent, 2878  
 And gaue hym ther his thank in feythfulH wise ;  
 ffor he perseyuyd wele in his entent,  
 he hadde hym do right wurchipfulH seruice : 2881  
 And ther the Sowdon made hym full promys,  
 Seyng<sup>g</sup> his labour and his grete travett,  
 That in noo wise he wold hym neuer fayle. 2884
- The king of kings sent for men of craft to break the walls. The kyng<sup>g</sup> of kyngges erly vppe he rose, 2885  
 And sent for men of craft in aH the hast,  
 To make engenys after his purpose,  
 Whanne this was purveyd for thanne atte last, 2888  
 Whanne this was purveyd for thanne atte last,  
 Kyng<sup>g</sup> Ermones stode vppe before them AH,  
 Ermones said And to the kyng<sup>g</sup> he spake in especiaH : 2891  
 ‘ Me think, *ser*, as after myn<sup>n</sup> advise, 2892  
 It nedith not to make aH this arraye,  
 To distroye the Cite it is noo grete entrepri[se],

- It were better to saue it if ye may : 2895 it were better  
to save it.  
 ffor yow it were more wurchippe euery waye,  
 And in your' fame the lenger to endur',  
 To wynne it in the feld I yow ensure.' 2898
- ' How may that be ? ' thanne saide the kyng Ayeyn,  
 ' Your' counceit is right good; so mote I goo, 2900  
 Owt of the town) they wiit nott in certeyn),  
 What think ye best thanne,' quod he, ' y<sup>t</sup> we shall doo ?'  
 ' Ser, on) my life, ye shaft not fynde it soo,  
 And if ye wiit enbateit vs euerychone, ' They will come  
anon out of the  
city.'  
 Owt of the Citee thei wiit come anon; 2905
- I wote my self as wele as eny wight, 2906  
 ffor ther is on) that wiit be aft ther gide ;  
 In aft the world) is nott A better knyght  
 Thanne he is on), and better dare Abide.' 2909  
 ' Nay,' quod the kyng, ' Aft that shalbe denyed,  
 ffor in wurchippe and in knyghtoode sekerly  
 I knowe hym) nott that is so good as I. 2912
- Notwithstondeng' After your good advise, 2913  
 late vs anon) goo sett our' feld ayeyn), Let us go  
set our field  
again.'  
 And wheder they or we shaft bere the prise,  
 Ryght sone we shaft haue knowlage in certayn).' 2916  
 Anon) withaft thei gaderid on) the playn)  
 The kynges ost, and in conclusion)  
 They hym) enbatelid streyght as for the town). 2919
- Thanne sayde madan, that was the kyng' of Trase,  
 ' Me think ye do right wele to sette this feld,  
 ffor ye shaft see withynne a litit space,  
 They wiit come owt or ellys them) yeld.' 2923  
 And whanne thei of the Citee them) beheld,  
 hough sone they were enbatelyd euerychone,  
 They tared not, butt furth they come Alone,<sup>1</sup> 2926

<sup>1</sup> ? *anone.*



- A grete nowmber of men) in good arraye :                    2927  
 Thanne they withoute anon to them) thei hyed,  
 and made no      Right sone thei mette, And made no more delaye,  
 more delay.      ffuH fressh on) [them] thei sette on) euery side,    2930  
 Dareff anon) kyng<sup>t</sup> Sanyk had Aspyed,  
 Darell ran at      And with his spere he ranne and smote hym) soo,  
 King Sanyk,      That with that stroke he brake his arme on) twoo. 2933  
 and broke his  
 arm in two.
- Barachias, king      Thanne came rideng<sup>t</sup> the kyng<sup>t</sup> barachias,                    2934  
 of Europe,      Of Europe he was lord and Souereyn) ;  
 Whanne Anasore Aspyed where he was,  
 was smitten down      To hym) he ranne and smote hym) for certeyn),    2937  
 by Anasore.      That from) his hors he felle vppon) the playn),  
 And as he feH his legge was brokyn) soo,  
 That from) the grownde he myght noo ferther goo. 2940
- Madan, the king      Thanne the kyng<sup>t</sup> of Trace putt hym) self in prese,    2941  
 of Thrace,      Madan he hight so as I vnderstounde,  
 was slain by      To hym) anon) thanne ranne Generides,  
 Generydes.      Right wele armed, a good spere in his hande,    2944  
 Ther myght no maner harnessse hym) withstonde) ;  
 ffor thoroughowt he strake hym) quyte And clene,  
 That atte bak the rede penseH was sene ;                    2947
- The king      And with that stroke he feH and ther he dyed.    2948  
 of kings      The kyng<sup>t</sup> of kynggez harkenyd of that case,  
 he taryd not nor lenger wold<sup>t</sup> Abide,  
 Butt rideth<sup>n</sup> furth streyght in to the place                    2951  
 Ther as Madan the kynggez body was,  
 beheld it with      And it beheld with a fuH hevy chere,  
 a heavy cheer.      Complayneng<sup>t</sup> sore<sup>1</sup> A pitevous thing<sup>t</sup> to here.    2954
- He hadde hym) do right wurchipfuH seruice,                    2955  
 And harmones, the kyng<sup>t</sup> of higher ynde,  
 That what so euer he dede in eny wise

<sup>1</sup> MS. *sone*.

- Thoo ij princes wer' neuer owt of his mynde : 2958  
 And for be cause they wer' to hym) so kynd,  
 And sware his othe as he was rightwise kyng',  
 Ther detñ he wold' avenge for eny thing'. 2961
- And in this hast he rode in to the feld', 2962  
 Abeft that was of perse the Banere,  
 To hym) he Ranne and smote hym) thorough y<sup>e</sup> sheld',  
 ffor thorough owt y<sup>e</sup> harnes persid y<sup>e</sup> spere, 2965  
 And afterward he bougñt that stroke full dere,  
 And with his swerd he smote hym) ayeyn),  
 And slew hym) or he passid owt of the playn). 2968
- Grete hevynes made his felissheppe ah, 2969  
 Whanne thei perseyued suerly how it was,  
 And first and formest in especiaft,  
 The dede body they caryed from) the place 2972  
 To the Citee not half a myle of space,  
 And as the Costom was, after ther gise,  
 They beryed hym<sup>1</sup> in honorabiñt wise. 2975
- The bateft thanne enduryd passing sore, 2976  
 And many lordes slayn) on) euery side,  
 They of the town) had fought so long' afore,  
 That thei ne mygñt noo lenger ther abide, 2979  
 And to the Citeewarde furst ganne they ride ;  
 Yet or they were entered euerychone,  
 Of them ther were distressid manye on). 2982
- The Sowdon) was as woode as he myght be, 2983  
 To see his knyghtes stande in suche distresse,  
 Ah full of thought and counfortles was he ;  
 To hym) anon) thanne seid Generides, 2986  
 'Good ser,' quod he, 'take ye no maner of hevynesse,  
 Nowshynneth the sonne and [now] god sendiñ showrez,  
 This day was thereys, A nother<sup>2</sup> shalbe ourez. 2989

He rode to  
the field and  
slew Abell,  
the standard-  
bearer of  
Persia.

[leaf 16]

They of the  
town rode city-  
ward,

and many of  
them were  
distressed.

The Sultan  
was mad to  
see them.

Generides said,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *them*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *And A nother*

<p>' Let us rest a day or two,</p>	<p>And late vs rest as for a daye or twayne, That your' pepitt may haue refressingh,</p>	<p>2990</p>
<p>and give them battle again.'</p>	<p>Thanne we wolle geve them) bateh new ageyn), Withoute delaye and lenger taryeng', And with the grace of god and good gideng' ; And trust suerly, ye shaH wele vnderstonde, That we shaH haue of them) the ouer hande.'</p>	<p>2993 2996</p>
	<p>Now they haue refresshid them) trewly, And are redy ther enmys to Assayle,<sup>1</sup> A thowsand knyghtez in A companye, And furth they went to geve them) new bateh, With grete corage in knyghthode to prevayle ; And whanne the toder meny them) beheld, Anon) they came and mette them) in the feld.</p>	<p>2997 3000 3003</p>
<p>The battle then began anew.</p>	<p>And in a valy togederward they went, The bateh thanne beganne new ayeyn), No trewys was taken) ne noo poyntement, Butt strong' feightyng' and many knyghtez slayn) ; Generides, for to sey yow certeyn, Whom) that euer he mette vppon) the grene, ffrom) his sadih he wente quyte And clene.</p>	<p>3004 3007 3010</p>
	<p>Syr Anasore the knyght, And ser Dareh, And AH the toder knyghtez euerychone, Eche for his parte quyte hym) self full wele,</p>	<p>3011</p>
<p>The king's host fled.</p>	<p>And of the kynges ost slew many on) ; The remenaunte remevid bak anon), And as thei fled, the writeng' makith mynd,</p>	<p>3014</p>
<p>Ermones,</p>	<p>Come Ermones, the kyng' of higher ynd,</p>	<p>3017</p>
<p>with his mighty men and their foul weapons, (see p. 60, p. 80,)</p>	<p>With myghti men) of mervelous makyng', like as it is rehersed here before ; Ther wepons fowle and ih faryng',</p>	<p>3018</p>

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Assoyle*.

Wher with they layde on stroke[s] grete And sore.  
 Kyng<sup>1</sup> Ermones, to say yow ferthermore,  
 Ser Anosore right sone he had Aspied,  
 And furth with aft to hym he ganne ride : 3024 rode at Sir Anasore,

With his wepon long<sup>1</sup> and ih faryng<sup>1</sup>, 3025  
 he slew his hors and smote hym on the hede,  
 And in the feld he left hym liggeng<sup>1</sup>,  
 Demyng<sup>1</sup> non other butt that he was dede, 3028 slew his horse, and left him lying in the field for dead.

With Anosore ther was non other rede,  
 Butte vppe he rose as god wold<sup>2</sup> geve hym grace,  
 And to his felawes furth he goth a pase. 3031

Hym to a venge his thought was and his mend, 3032  
 And sone he was vppon another stede,  
 Streight he rideth to a knyght of ynde,  
 And with a swerd<sup>2</sup> he cleue a ij his hede, 3035 Anasore got another steed, and slew a knight of India.

That in the feld he felle ther and was dede :  
 Whanne Ermones wist of this Aventure,  
 A hevy man he was I<sup>1</sup> yow ensur, 3038 Ermones

And streight he rideth onto Generides : 3039 rode at Generides,  
 Butt<sup>2</sup> he anon was ware of his comyng<sup>1</sup>,  
 And with a naked swerd in to the prese  
 Ayenst hym full fast he come rideng<sup>1</sup> ; 3042

As sone as Ermones the kyng<sup>1</sup>  
 Sawe that he was withynne his wepons length,  
 Anon he smote Att hym with aft his strength. 3045 and smote at him,

His wepon light vppon Generides, 3046  
 And brast his sheld with aft in pecys twayn),  
 Also it ranne down quyte thorough the harnes,  
 A grace of god that he had not ben slayn ; 3049 breaking his shield.

Ther with Generydes smote hym ayeyn),  
 Thoroughowt the helme a hye vppon the crest,  
 And claue his hede streyte down to the brest. 3052 Generydes clave his head to the breast.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *h.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. *Be.*

- And with that stroke kyng' Ermones was ded ; 3053  
 for hym his knyghtez made grete ordenaunce,  
 They hym with drew, ther was non other rede,  
 And fast they hyed them owt of ther distaunce, 3056  
 Thinkyng' them self owt of good gouernaunce,  
 [leaf 16, back] And as they rode togeder complayneng',  
 and met King Belen, Vppon the way they mette Boleyn the kyng' ; 3059  
 who would have had them turne, And fayn he wold haue them turne ayeyn, 3060  
 Comfortid them in all that euer he myght,  
 Butt AH that euer he spak it was in vayn ;  
 With that anon ther answerd hym a knyght, 3063  
 And as the story seith Otran he hight,  
 'Of our' fortune in euery thyng', quod he,  
 'I shaH suerly telle yow the certente. 3066
- but they said,  
 'In yonder host  
 is a knight who  
 is a very fiend,  
 In yender ost,' quod he, 'ther is a knyght, 3067  
 he is noo very man, what euer he be,  
 Butt rather a fende, and that I yow be hight,  
 Ther is no man alyve that he wolle flee ; 3070  
 Oure kyng' is ded, whiche sore repentith me.  
 and hath slain our king,' And suche a prince we canne not gete ayeyn,  
 And he it is suerly that hath hym slayn.' 3073
- Belen seeks Generydes, Whanne kyng' Bolyñ had knowlage of y<sup>t</sup> case, 3074  
 A hevy man he was and comfoteles,  
 And furth with all he rideth on a pace,  
 AH in a rage seching' Generides, 3077  
 And ther they mette togeder in the prese,  
 Thanne was the bateH all togeder doon,  
 but they were parted. So att that tyme thei were departid sone. 3080
- The men of Persia won the day. The men of perce that day were fortinat, 3081  
 The toder fled as fast as euer thei might,  
 And in hym self they stode soo desolate ;

- Whanne kyng' Bolynd saw they were putte to flight,  
That in noo wise they wold no lenger fight,  
With hym ther was non other poyntement,  
Butt lost the feld and rideth to his tent. 3087
- Too the Citee rideth Generides, 3088  
With knyghtes and with Sqyers many on,  
ffor hym was made grete Ioy of more And lesse,  
And festis made among' them eu[er]ychon. 3091  
Thanne to the Sowdon furth he went anon,  
Of whom he hadde his thank right specially,  
And grete yeftys as he was wele worthy. 3094
- The kyng' of kynggez stift was in his tent, 3095  
And yndly wroth that no man cowde hym plese,  
And in hym self he cowde not be content,  
Till he had fought with Generides, 3098  
They twayn to geder owt of all the prese,  
And ther vpon he callid his counceit,  
That his entent the souner myght prevayle. 3101
- At his callyng' his lordes came anon, 3102  
And this he sayde, that every man myght here,  
' Now ye be here in present everychon,  
This is,' quod he, ' the effecte of my mater, 3105  
It is now a full quarter of a yere,  
Oure lyeng' her the Sowdon for to wynne,  
And att this day we are new to be gynne. 3108
- And yet I wote right wele it lithe in me, 3109  
The Sowdon to distroye and all his lande,  
Of all maner vitayle I haue plente ;  
Notwithstandyng, if he will take on hand 3112  
To fynde a knyght, that I may vnderstond  
Be right wele born and of high lenage,  
To fight with me for all this Eritage, 3115
- Generydes rides to the city,  
and is received with great joy.
- The King of kings was wroth,  
and would not be content till he fought with Generydes.
- He called his council.  
' We have been here now a quarter of a year,' said he,  
' and have to begin anew.
- Let the Sultan find a knight to fight with me,

- and make an  
end of this war.' And so to make an ende of all this werre 3116  
Betwix vs twayne ; and if he wold not so,  
I wilf distroye his land both nyghe and ferre,  
his land and hym self where euer hee goo, 3119  
And for the Accomplishment Also,  
Be cause I wold that it shuld be endid sone,  
Withynne iiij dayes I wold that it were done.' 3122
- King lamadon gave answe in this case, 3123  
And in his speche he was som what dismayed,  
—This cowardly his hert and his seruice  
Was to the Sowdon, what so euer he sayde ; 3126  
Yet not for thy his reasone furth he layde  
All opynly ; ' my lordes,' quod he,  
' The kyng hath seid right wele as semyth me.' 3129
- For this cause he gaue sone his assentt, 3130  
That in that space a trefy myght be hadde ;  
And as he seid all other were content,  
Thanne was the kyng of kynggez passing glad, 3133  
And vpon these iij lordes wise and sadde  
A poyntid were to goo on this message,  
Onto the Sowdon and his Baronage. 3136
- One of them iij of Corynth<sup>1</sup> was he born, 3137  
Callid Sampson, the story doth expresse ;  
The secunde, and his ancetors be form,  
In Damask born, the writeng doth witesse, 3140  
A man of wurchippe and of grete sadnesse ;  
The iij<sup>de</sup> was a man, to say yow right,  
Of Ethiope, and Ionathas he hight. 3143
- Anon these lordes went on ther message, 3144  
Eche man A brawnche of Olyve in his hande,  
In token of pece for ther viage,

each with a  
branch of olive.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Cornyth*.

- Too goo and come saff, as I vnderstonde, 3147  
 lyke as the custom was in euery lande ;  
 So fourth they went withoute more<sup>1</sup> delay,  
 To the Sowdon ther errand for to say. 3150 [leaf 17]
- And whanne that thei were come to his presence, 3151  
 Of ther message they kept noo thyng<sup>t</sup> in store,  
 Butt in a<sup>ll</sup> the hast they told<sup>t</sup> hym the sentence,  
 like as it is rehersed here before, 3154  
 In euery maner thing<sup>t</sup> and summe<sup>2</sup> what more,  
 So as the kyng<sup>t</sup> gave them in commaundment,  
 Accordeng<sup>t</sup> sum what onto his entent ; 3157
- The whiche was this, to say yow in substaunce, 3158  
 That he shuld send his doughter to the kyng<sup>t</sup>,  
 And by that meane the striff and variaunce  
 Be twix them bothe myght the souner haue endyng.<sup>3</sup>  
 ffor an answer in ther ayeyn<sup>d</sup> goyng<sup>t</sup>,  
 Of ther massag<sup>t</sup> they praed them to say  
 In a<sup>ll</sup> this mater playnly ye or nay. 3164
- Whanne ther massag<sup>t</sup> was a<sup>ll</sup> to geder sayde, 3165  
 Ther was noo lord nee knyght that gave answer<sup>t</sup>,  
 Wher with trewly the Sowdon was dismayde ;  
 Generides sawe that, and drew hym nere : 3168  
 ‘ Ser, if it like your goodnes for to here,  
 I sha<sup>ll</sup> for yow,’ quod he, ‘ be in this place,  
 Be your licence geve answer in this case.’ 3171
- And thus he sayde be fore them eu[er]ychon : 3172  
 ‘ Thez massangers they sha<sup>ll</sup> wele vnderstonde,  
 Among<sup>t</sup> your knyghtez a<sup>ll</sup> that ther is on  
 Sha<sup>ll</sup> vnder take to Answer<sup>t</sup> for this lande ; 3175  
 ffor I my self wi<sup>ll</sup> take it att ther hand,  
 And here is my glove, this mater to defende,  
 Withynne iiij dayes therof to make an ende. 3178

They came to  
 the Sultan  
 and told him  
 the message,

and that he  
 should send  
 his daughter to  
 the King.

The lords were  
 silent and the  
 Sultan dismayed.

Generydes  
 undertook to  
 answer for the  
 land.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *wordes more.*    <sup>2</sup> MS. *sunne.*    <sup>3</sup> MS. *an end.*



102 GENERYDES UNDERTAKES TO FIGHT THE KING OF EGYPT.

- Generydes  
guaranteed that  
no dishonour  
should befall  
Clarionas.**
- And your' doughter also, Clarionas, 3179  
 he shaH do hir no maner of villanye,  
 Nother dishonour, whiH I haue liff and space,  
 And ferthermore I vnderstonde trewly, 3182  
 By ther massage declaryd opynly,  
 Ther shaH non) take of hym) this enterprise,  
 Butt he be wele born) in eny wise. 3185
- And to that ye shaH wele knowe my counceH, 3186  
 Was neuer man) herd so moche of me ;  
 A kyngges sonne I am withoute fayle,  
 And my moder is a quene in certayn[te] : 3189  
 here afterward ye shaH wele know and see,  
 All though he be a prince of nobyH fame,  
 To fight with me to hym) shalbe noo shame.' 3192
- The Sultan was  
glad.**
- Whanne the Sowdon) perseivid his entent, 3193  
 And herd hym) wele in all that euer he sayde,  
 Thanne was he gladd and verily weH content,  
 That he was of so good a knyght purveyd ; 3196  
 Yet with hym) self he was nott wele apayde,  
 And in his mende repentid hym) full sore,  
 That he so meche had wrongid hym) before. 3199
- One of the lords  
said Generydes  
should take  
advice before  
meddling with  
a prince that  
was peerless.**
- Whanne these lordes had answeere in this wise, 3200  
 One of them) sayde on to Generides ;  
 ' It is weH don) that ye take a good avise,  
 Or that ye putt your' self so ferre in prese, 3203  
 To medyH with a prince that is perles ;  
 ffor he is knowen) in contres ferre and nere.'  
 Generides anon) gave hym) answeere, 3206
- Generydes said,  
' Your king is  
a noble knight,**
- And this he sayde, in presence of them) all ; 3207  
 ' As for your' kyng', he is a nobiH knyght  
 I canne wele think, and so men) do hym) calle ;

- Butt my quareff is growndid vppon right, 3210  
 Whiche geveith me corage for to fight,  
 And here my trowth I wolle not fayle my day, but I will not  
 My self alone, and so I prae yow saye.' 3213 fall my day.'
- They toke his glove, And to that prince thei went 3214  
 With ther answeire in euery maner thing':  
 And of Generides and his entent  
 ffuH playnly thei told onto the kyng': 3217  
 And whanne that he ther of had knowlaching,  
 The kyng' hym self, withoute eny more, The king  
 Ayenst that day he purveyd hym therfore. 3220
- Too aH his ost he gave A speciatt charge, 3221 gave his host  
 Ayenst that day that he shuld fight alone, charge to remove  
 They shuld remeve that place ij myle large, two miles away,  
 And ther to geder abide euerychon 3224  
 What euer faH, for reskewe wold he non; for rescue would  
 And ther vppon, to folow his entent, he none.  
 To them he gave a streight commaundment. 3227
- The Citesens thanne was not wele apayde, 3228 The citizens were  
 Be cause Generides to[ke] this in hand: not pleased,  
 They love[d] hym so wele, and this they said,  
 'A better knyght ther is in noo land.' 3231  
 And whanne Clarionas ded vnderstonde  
 That he shuld take vppon hym this bateH,  
 Thanne was she fuH of thought and noo merveh. 3234  
 and Clarionas  
 was full of  
 thought,
- 'Now, good MirabeH, what is best?' quod she, 3235  
 'What shaft I doo? saye me your' good advise.'  
 And said, 'wold god he wold do Aftur me,  
 Thanne shuld he not take this interprise.' 3238  
 'Nay, late be that in eny maner wise,  
 Madame,' quod she, 'for sothe he hath it take,  
 ffor his wurchippe he may it not for sake. 3241

- Nether he wiþ, Madame, I telle yow playn) 3242  
 'Now thanne,' *quod* she, 'me think this is to doon);  
 I wiþ send hym Gwynot my chaumberleyñ,  
 This rede penseñ I wiþ send hym anon); 3245
- [leaf 17, back]—And or that he on) the batteñ goon,  
 ffor esing' of my hert I wiþ hym) praye,  
 To speke with me to morow or to day.' 3248
- 'That is wele doo,' *quod* she, 'withoute lese.' 3249  
 and sent for  
 Generides  
 Thanne chargyd she hir chaumberleyñ to goo :  
 'hye yow,' *quod* she, 'onto Generides ;  
 This rede penseñ ye shañ bere hym) also, 3252  
 Whiche I myself enbrowdred and no moo :  
 Pray hym) also or he passe the Citee,  
 In eny wise that he wiþ speke with me.' 3255
- to come and  
 speak with her.  
 On this message now goth hir chaunberleyñ), 3256  
 And to Generides he takith the waye,  
 With hir tokyn) and aþ hir errand playn),  
 In aþ the hast possible that he may ; 3259  
 And he also for gate nott for to say,  
 On hir behalf afore his departeng',  
 hir for to see leving' aþ other thing'. 3262
- Generides was  
 glad of this,  
 Off that message Generides was fayn), 3263  
 And furth with aþ rewardid hym) right weþ ;  
 he sent a token) on) to hir ayeyñ),  
 Bee cause that she shuld vnderstonde and fele, 3266  
 That he had don) his message euery dele,  
 And ferthermore he chargid hym) to say,  
 and promised to  
 see her soon.  
 he wold see hir in aþ the hast he may. 3269
- Now goth Gwynot<sup>1</sup> vnto Clarionas, 3270  
 And told hir what he had don) that day.  
 Generides, whanne he had tyme and space,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Gwynan*.

- To hir chaunber he toke the redy waye ; 3273 He came to her  
 And att a wyndow, sothely for to say, chamber window.  
 he spake to hir, right as he wold devise,  
 Att good leysere in honorabiſt wise. 3276
- Whanne he departid ther was grete hevynes, 3277  
 And as he toke his leve in his goyng'  
 Thanne eche to other made to geder full promyse,  
 To kepe hym trew aboue aſt other thing, 3280 Each to other  
 Now late vs thanne speke of Belen the kyng, made promise  
 Whiche att his day thinkyſt with spere and sheld to be true.  
 hym self alone to come into the feld. 3283
- The iij<sup>de</sup> morow, as sone as it was day, 3284 On the third  
 kyng' Belyn rose and made hym aſt redy, day King Belen  
 his stede moreſt trappyd in good arraye,  
 With his harnes enbrowderyd by and by, 3287  
 hym self armyd full wele and full ſure[ly], armed himſelf,  
 his helme was wele ordeynyd for the nonys,  
 Right wele garnysshed with perle & precious stonys.
- Kyng' Belyn rideth in to the feld alone, 3291 and rode to  
 As it appoynted was betwix them twayn) ; the field.  
 his pepiſt were avoydid euerychone,  
 And ther he taryed stiſt vpon the playn, 3294  
 Supposing' weſt ther was no man certeyn,  
 Consideryng' his manhod and his myght,  
 Wold be so bold ayenst hym to fight. 3297
- The tidynggez thorough owt the Cite sprong', 3298  
 hough kyng' Belyn was armed in the mede,  
 Generides thought he was passing' long',  
 And furth anon was broughtt Grisseſt his stede, 3301 Generydes  
 A myghti hors and very ſure atte nede , mounted his  
 The Sowdon gave it hym in certente, horse Grisseſt,  
 Whiche no man shuld haue saue only he. 3304

- Hys trappour was made in the fressest wise, 3305  
 Wrought with peerlys of mervelus makyng,  
 hym self armyd atte poynte devise,  
 his helme with stonys had his garnysshyng; 3308  
 The rede penseñ vppon his spere hangyng,  
 hym to behold and luge withoute dought,  
 A knyght hym semyd for to be right stough. 3311
- and all the  
 people prayed  
 Añ the pepyñ that in the Citee were, 3312  
 Men and women to prayer they them gave,  
 Besechyng god, with devout maner,  
 God to speed  
 him.  
 To spede hym weñ ther contre for to save : 3315  
 Clarionas, good tidengez for to haue,  
 late nee erly she wold nott seese,  
 Butt nyght And day prayed for Generides. 3318
- The Sultan  
 brought him  
 to the gate,  
 The Sowdon brought hym streight on) to y<sup>e</sup> gate, 3319  
 And in like wise the Citezens euerychon,  
 And whanne that they had brought hym Añ yer at,  
 and he rode  
 forth alone,  
 he toke his leve and furth he rode alone 3322  
 In to the mede, and ther he founde anon)  
 and found the  
 King of kings.  
 The kyng of kynggez vppe and down) rideng,  
 And he anon) to hym com) waloping. 3325
- Whanne kyng Bellyn saw he was comyng, 3326  
 To hym he rode, and mette hym on) the waye,  
 ' Say me sooth,'  
 quoth Belen,  
 ' whether thou  
 art a messanger  
 or nay.'  
 ' I am,' said  
 Generydes,  
 ' and this is my  
 message :'  
 ' Now say me soth,' quod he, ' withoute feyning,  
 Wheder art thou a massanger or nay ?' 3329  
 ' I am,' quod he, ' a massanger I saye ;  
 This way I take for my right viage  
 ffro the Sowdon, and this is my message. 3332
- To warre vppon) my lord thou dost hym wrong, 3333  
 he sent the word now, whanne I cam) hym fro,  
 Void my lord's  
 ground,  
 To voyde his grownde and tary not to long,

- Vnto thy contre wher thou hast to do : 3336  
 This thinkith me best, and if thou wilt do so,  
 Ayeyn I wilh goo as a massanger,  
 And fufftrewly declare hym thynne answer. 3339
- And if thou wilh not follow myn avise, 3340 [leaf 18]  
 Thou shaftt wele knowe that I am not come on message,  
 Peraventur' thou may<sup>1</sup> repent it twyes, if not thou  
 That thou hast askid of this lande trevage ; 3343 mayst repent it.'
- To kepe it fre and owt of all seruage  
 I shaft my self, as for this landis right,  
 With goddes grace defende it as a knyght.' 3346
- And kyng' Bellyn whanne his purpose hard, 3347 King Belen  
 And wherefore that he came in to the feld,  
 Thanne wex he pale and chaungyd clene his mode, waxed pale ;  
 hym self anon he closed in his sheld ; 3350  
 Generides his countenance behelde,  
 he tared not butt dressid hym in his gere,  
 And in his hande anon he toke his spere. 3353
- Thanne was no more a do butt on they sett, 3354  
 Anon they Ranne to geder in the feld, they ran together,  
 The kyng' and he fresshly ther they mette,  
 And eche of them smote other on the sheld, 3357 and smote each  
 With strokez grete, and bothe ther sperys helde, other with great  
 So ther vppon they tared not certayn, strokes.  
 Butte furth with all they toke ther course ayeyn. 3360
- Ther stedys were both Inly good and weight ; 3361  
 Generides came rounde vppon the grownde,  
 And brake the kynggez helme before his sight, In another  
 The spere went to the vesage quyte and rounde, 3364 course Generides  
 Duryng' his liff it myght be know that wound. brake the King's  
 The kyng' ayenward strake Generides helm,  
 Vppon the side, and perished the harness 3367 and the King  
 pierced his  
 harness

<sup>1</sup> MS. *may it*.

- so that the blood  
ran down. Vnto the skynne ; the blode ranne down) therby, 3368  
Butt, as god wold, he felt no harme in dede.
- He said in  
mockery, Thanne saide the kyng sum what in mokyery,  
'Maister,' quod he, 'thy side begynne for to blede,  
Wherefore this is my counceff and my rede,  
ffor this mater noo lenger for to stryff,
- 'Go home again,  
and escape alive.' Go home ageyn) and thu shalt skape alyve.' 3374
- 'The bleeding,'  
said Generydes,  
'is but a jape ;  
think of the  
wound on your  
face.' 'I know,' quod he, 'that on) lyve I may skape, 3375  
And so I shaft wheder thu wilt or noo,  
The bledingge of my side is butt a Iape,  
It increasith my corage to and too ; 3378  
In thi vesage think on) thy wounde also,  
The whiche shaft neuer a way I the ensure,  
Whiff that y<sup>n</sup> art a lyvez creature.' 3381
- The King was  
wrother,  
and they ran  
another course ; Thanne was the kyng' wrother, I yow behight ; 3382  
They toke ther course and ranne to geder new,  
And ther the stedis mette with suche a myght  
Ther hors foundred, and, for to say yow trew, 3385  
Bothe hors and man) and aft yer ouer threw ;  
They of the Citee sawe that encownteryng',  
And hough it was befaff euery thing. 3388
- horses and men  
went down. And ferd they were as for Generides, 3389  
ffuH hev y was Clarionas thanne also,  
And euer more in prayours stiff opese,  
Vnto the tyme she knew it shuld goo. 3392  
of that fortune kyng Bellyn) was fuH woo,  
So was Generides a bashed<sup>1</sup> also thore,  
They rose up, Butte vppe they rose, to say yow ferthermore, 3395
- and without  
knowing it  
changed horses,  
and went at  
each other with  
their swords, And chaungyd horses onto them) bothe vnknowyng,<sup>2</sup>  
Wherefore they were fuH wroth, I yow ensure ;  
To geder thanne they went with swordes drawe,

<sup>1</sup> MS. and bashed.<sup>2</sup> So MS. ? vnknoye.

- And leyde on strokes owt of aft mesure, 3399  
 Generides sward was passing sure,  
 And, as the story wele remember canne, —  
 It was a princes callid Iulyan, 3402
- Generydes'  
 sword had  
 belonged to the  
 Emperour Ju. an.
- Wniche was sumtyme of Rome the Emperour; 3403  
 The Sowdon had it after his deceasse,  
 And as a tresour euery day and owre  
 he kept that sward in grete tendernesse, 3406  
 And after gaue it on to generides;  
 So ferthermore, as I this mater feele,  
 Whanne eche of them had beten other wele, 3409
- The kyng of kynggez seid to hym ayeyn, 3410  
 'What aylith the to fight for this mater?  
 A grete folly for the take the payne,  
 To the it towchith not in no maner; 3413  
 I counceff ther for, while thow art here,  
 Be come my man, and thu wilt do so  
 The pese shaft sone be twix vs twoo. 3416
- The King of  
 kings said to him.  
 'Why dost thou  
 fight thus? it  
 toucheth thee  
 not.  
  
 Become my man,
- I shaft also in wurchippe the avauunce, 3417  
 And largely departe with the also;  
 ffor meche better it lith in my puessence,  
 Thanne in the Sowdon powre so to do: 3420  
 And for Clarionas I say also,  
 Whanne she is myn, here what I say to the,  
 Att thy pleasure hir shalt thu haue of me. 3423
- and when  
 Clarionas is  
 mine thou shalt  
 haue her.
- And thu wilt not do as I the saye, 3424  
 I late the now haue knowlage vterly,  
 That of my hand here shalt thu dye to daye;  
 Troste noo lenger to my curtessy, 3427  
 I haue entreyd the full lently,  
 And how thu wilt be rewlid in this case,  
 Say ye or nay, or ye go owt of this place.' 3430
- If not thou shalt  
 die to-day.'



Generydes answers,	Thanne furth with aſt Answered Generides, 'To thy <i>seruice</i> ,' quod he, 'if I me bynde, I se right wele I may sone haue my pece ;	3431
[leaf 15, back]	But that was neuer enprentid in my mende,	3434
'I cannot be untrew to my promise ;	To be vntrew it come me neuer of kynde ; That I haue said and take of my promys, O trowth I wiſt not breke it in noo wiſe.	3437
and as for Clarionas, I will never haue her of thee.'	And forthermore, as for Clarionas, I vnderstonde thu proferest hir to me, Whiche is not thyne truly ne neuer was, And suche a yeft is litiſt worth parde ; ffor one thing' ſhaſt I ſay in certente, If I hir ſhaſt reioyſe, ſo god me ſaue, Of the playnly hir wiſt I neuer haue.'	3438 3441 3444
The king was more wroth than ever, and they went together again.	Thanne was the kyng' mech' wrother than) before, And on) they went to geder now ayen) ; Thanne eyther other layde wonder ſore, Wherof the ſownd rebowndid on) the playn),	3445 3448
The king's ſteed which Generydes rode began to fall,	The ſtede that was the kynggez for certayn) Vnder Generides beganne to fayle, Whiche hym) abashed ſore and noo mervell.	3451
	The kynggez ſtede was alwey good and ſure . ffor aſt his labour', yet onneſe he ſwett ; he ſaw right wele y <sup>e</sup> toder myght not dure, Wherefore on) hym) right freſſly <sup>1</sup> he ſett,	3452 3455
and went to the ground.	The ſhulders of ther horſez to geder mett ; Generides vppon) the feyntid ſtede, Streygħt to the grownde hors a[nd] man) yede.	3458
His ſword fell from his hand, but he caught it again,	His ſword ther with ou[t] of his hand it feħ, Butt as god wold he had it ſome ayeyn), he lay not long' but riſeħ fayre and ſtiħ,	3459

<sup>1</sup> ? *ferſly*.

- And furth he goth, to sey yow for certayn, 3462  
 To kyng' Bellyng, And toke hym be the reyne. and seized the king's bridle.  
 he sporyd his hors and from hym wold haue goo; <sup>1</sup>  
 'A bide,' quod he, 'thu shalt not skape me soo. 3465
- This stede,' he seith, 'hath seruyd the fuH wele, 3466  
 The whiche trewly repentith me fuH soore,  
 Ayenst my will thu hast hym euerydele,  
 Butt now o trowth thu shalt haue hym no more, 3469  
 This stede is myn, thu wist it wele [be]fore; 'This steed is mine, alight anon.'  
 A light anon withoute wordes moo,  
 Or suerly I shaH make the or I goo.' 3472
- The kyng' presid fast away certayn, 3473 The king pressed away, but Generides held the rein, and between them the horse  
 Generides helde stih the reane alway; fell backward.  
 And so be twix the striving' of them) twayn), 3476  
 The horse reversid bak, and ther he lay.  
 Generides anon) to hym) ganne say,  
 'Not long agoo thu haddist me in this plight,  
 And now I trost to god I shaH the quyte.' 3479
- Generides his swarde toke in his hande, 3480 Generides took his sword Claryet  
 Claryet it hight, the store tellith me so,  
 A better swerd ther was neuer in noo land.  
 The kyng' arose and wold a gon) hym froo, 3483  
 ffor of his fayling' ther he was fuH woo;  
 Generides was noo thyng' eviH apayde,  
 And with his swerd fuH fast on) hym) he layde. 3486 and laid on the King full fast,
- The kynges sheld he made a quarter lesse, 3487 cutting a piece off his shield, and breaking the harness on his knee.  
 The swerd is glansid down) on) his kne,  
 And ther is <sup>2</sup> brake asonder the harnes,  
 That att) to geder bare a man) myght see: 3490  
 The kyng' Bellyn) was wrothe as he myght be,  
 he strake att) hym) with a fuH eger wiH,  
 And in the tethe he woundid hym) fuH ih. 3493 The King wounded him in the teeth.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *goon*.

<sup>2</sup> ? *it*.

112 GENERYDES CUTS KING BELEN'S EAR OFF. THEY FIGHT ON.

'Now,' said he, 'I have quit you.'	Thanne seyde the kyng', 'now att aȝt aventur' I haue the quyte, and ther of am I fayn, The nexst that I the geve I the ensure, I wiȝt thu vndersto[n]de it for sertayn : Ne shaȝt thu quyte it me ayeyn. <sup>1</sup> With thoo wordes wrothe was Generides, And to the kyng' presid stiȝt opese.	3494       3497    3500
Generydes gave him such a stroke that he cut his ear off.	And thanne suche a stroke he gave hym <i>yer</i> Vppon the helme, the bare visage was sene ; The swerȝ was sharpe and ranne down be his ere, That from the hede he smote it quyte and clene, And from his swerȝ it felle vppon the grene : Thanne <sup>1</sup> was kyng Bellyn astownyd sore, And in hym self abasshed more and more.	3501       3504    3507
The King was abashed.	They were full wery bothe, I yow be hight, Notwithstondeng' ther hartys were full strong', On them ther was no pece of harnys right, Of plate ne mayle, but aȝt to geder wrong' ; And no wonder, for they foughten long',	3508     3511
Both were weary, but their hearts were strong.	Yet in his hert for anger and for payn, The kyng' stroke to Generides ayeyn,	3514
The King struck again at Generydes,	And with his swerȝ he smote [him] on the hede, That wher he was he wist not vterly ; ' If thu,' <i>quod</i> he, ' had done after my rede, Thu shuldest not now haue ben in this parte.' Generides hym Answeryd trewelly, ' If I noo thyng' dede after thynne entent, Trust me right wele yet did I not repent.'	3515       3518    3521
and smote him on the head.	And with that worde he smote hym so ayeyn, And cleue his hede down and hurt hym <sup>2</sup> sore, And by fortune it happid so certeyn,	3522
Generydes in return smote him on the same side where he was hurt before,		

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Thāme*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *lyn*.

- Vppon that side that he was hurt before : 3525  
 he bled so meche he myght stond no more,  
 Butt to the grownde anon<sup>d</sup> yer he felle down),  
 And sore for blode he lay stift in swoune. 3528
- and he lay in  
a swoon.  
[leaf 19]
- Generides stode stift and hym be<sup>1</sup> held, 3529  
 And of the kyng<sup>t</sup> thanne had he grete pite,  
 he toke hym vppe and layde hym on his sheld ;  
 Thanne seid the kyng, softly as it wold be, 3532  
 ‘haue here my sword, I yeld it vppe to the,  
 As to a knyght the wordes,’<sup>2</sup> he saide,  
 ‘In all my lyffe that euer I assayde. 3535
- Off all this land I geve vppe my quarell, 3536  
 And so I do Clarionas also,  
 ffor certayn butt if she loue yow wele  
 She do no thyng<sup>t</sup> hir part as she shuld do, 3539  
 And this I wold require yow or ye goo,  
 That I myght goo ther as my pepill be,  
 And so to passe furth in to my contre.’ 3542
- and will pass  
forth to my  
country.’
- To hym thanne sayde Generides ayeyn, 3543  
 ‘All this request I graunt it verely ;’  
 And vppe he toke hym in his armys twayn),  
 And sett hym on his stede<sup>3</sup> full lently. 3546  
 So furth he ridith fayre and soberly ;  
 Whanne his pepill sawe hym in that maner,  
 They mett hym all with a hevy chere. 3549
- His people met  
him with a  
heavy cheer.
- Vppon the playn restid Generides, 3550  
 Wery and feynte, it was noo synne to saye ;  
 And whanne he was sum what more att his ease  
 Toward the Citee streyght he toke the waye. 3553  
 They of the town knewe wele be his araye  
 That it was he, and glad thei were eche on),  
 So furth he came rideng<sup>t</sup> hym self alone, 3556
- and then went  
back to the city

<sup>1</sup> MS. *he.*    <sup>2</sup> So MS. ? *worthiest.*    <sup>3</sup> MS. *stete.*

<p>with his two swords. The lords all met him, and all the people</p>	<p>Towarde the Citee girde with his swerdez twayn) : 3557 The lordes all mett hym) withoute the town), And all the Citezens vppon) the playn), With mynstrellys of many A dyuerse sownd), 3560</p>
<p>with royal procession.</p>	<p>Preletys, prestys, with riall precession), And Childryn) syngeng' in the fressest wise, With merthis moo thanne I canne now device. 3563</p>
<p>Clarionas was nothing behind.</p>	<p>Clarionas she was noo thyng' behynd), 3564 All hir counfort was by hir self alone ; In hir hart she was and in hir mende As well content as all they euerychone. 3567</p>
<p>They brought him to the Sultan, who gave him great gifts and thanked him.</p>	<p>To the Sowdon) thanne was he brought anon) Whiche gave hym) yeftez gæte for his seruice, And thankid hym) in full specially wise. 3570</p>
<p>The best surgeons that could be found came to attend him.</p>	<p>Anon) with all were brought fro dyuerse place), 3571 Good sorgeons, the best that cowde be fownde), And they full sone withynne a litill space), hym) vndertoke to make hym) hoode and sounde), 3574 Of euery hurt and eke of euery wounde), Whiche that he had and so to hym) thei saide), Where with the Sowdon) was full wele apayde). 3577</p>
<p>Belen told his lords he had given up his claim to Persia and Clarionas,</p>	<p>Now kyng Belyn) lithe in full hevy case), 3578 And told his lordis stondyng' hym) before), Of perce lande and of Clarionas he hath) geve vppe his clayme for euermore : 3581 And ther with all his woundes blede so sore), his liff cowde no man) vnder take certayn),</p>
<p>and died of his wounds in a day or two.</p>	<p>And so he dyed withynne a day or twayn). 3584</p>
	<p>For hym) his pepill made grete hevynes), 3585 Among) them) self with) peteuose complayneng), And in all goodly hast thei ganne hym) dresse),</p>

- In to Egipte his body for to bryng', 3588 His people took  
 With grete estate and honour like a kyng' ; his body to  
 Whanne that was don) with grete solempnite, Egypt, and  
 The lordes aH went home in to ther contre. 3591 the lords went  
 home to their  
 countries.
- Now late vs leue them) in ther contres aH, 3592
- In to the tyme thei were sent for ayeyn,  
 Whiche was not longe, and in especiaH  
 To make Gwynan<sup>1</sup> ther kyng and souereyn, 3595 Gwynan, the  
 King's son,  
 Whiche was the kyng' of kyngges sone certayn, succeeded him,  
 And so thei were agreed on) hym) alone, 3598  
 he for to Reigne vppon) them) euerychone.
- And to sey yow in short conclusion), 3599
- Be aH the hoole agrement of the lande,  
 Of Egipte he was kyngt and bare the crown),  
 Thanne to them) aH seid he, as I wnderstonde, 3602 and told his  
 people that he  
 did not give  
 up his claim  
 to Persia  
 and Clarionas.
- ' Suche maters as my fader toke in hande,  
 Towchyng' the Sowdon) and Clarionas,  
 Ye shaH sone wete my plesure in this case. 3605
- As for the land of Perce aH maner wayis, 3606
- I wiH pleynty declare yow myn) entent,  
 My lord and fader quyte it in his dayes  
 Yet for aH that I was not of assentt, 3609  
 Nor noo wise I canne not be content ;
- And in like wise as for clarionas,  
 I wiH not be agreyd, nor neuer was.' 3612
- Thanne was ther a man) of grete powre, 3613 There was a  
 subtl knight,
- A knyght that was wele cherished with y° kyng',  
 he was right weel betrost both ferr' and neere,  
 What euer he saide or dede in eny thyng', 3616
- A witty man), And subtitf in werkyng',  
 Ser Yuell the Barn), the story seith he hight,  
 This was his name to say the very right. 3619 Sir Yuell the  
 Barn,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Gwynan*.

- [leaf 19, back] In secrete wise the kyng' saide to the knyght, 3620  
 to whom the King in secret  
 told his love for Clarionas.  
 ' I shaſt yow telle my fortune as it was :  
 It happyd me,' quod he, ' I had a sight  
 Vppon the towre of faire Clarionas, 3623  
 And here I loue ; play[n]ly this is the case :  
 here to reioyse I wold haue sought the wayes,  
 Butt I for bare it in my faders dayes. 3626
- ' How can I best obtain her ? ' And now I *prae* yow telle me your' avise, 3627  
 The knight said, hough I myght best to my purpose Attayne.'  
 The knyght anon gave answe're in this wise :  
 ' To folow your' entent, I wold be fayn) 3630  
 To putt ther to my diligence and payn),  
 And in this case I hope to do so wele,  
 That ye shaſt haue your' pleasure euery dele. 3633
- ' I must have a swift ship prepared for seven years, Butt I must haue A shippe bothe good and wight, 3634  
 And that it be right swift vnder a saile ;  
 ffor vij yere it must be redy dight,  
 With men) I now and plente of vitalle, 3637
- and in that time I shall convey her to this country.' And in that tyme withoute eny fayle,  
 I shaſt conveeye hir in to this contree,  
 And *peraventur'* souner so may it be.' 3640
- With his promys the kyng' was wele content, 3641  
 And thankyd hym) right hertely therfore :  
 A Shippe was purveyd after his entent,  
 With all that is rehersed here before, 3644  
 And as fortune kepith here thanke in store,  
 And Shewith favour' to suche as ben) full ill,  
 Come was the wynde full redy att his witt. 3647
- and the wind was ready.  
 He sailed to the land of Persia, and found a haven  
 So long' he sayleth as I vnderstonde, 3648  
 That of the lande of Perse he hadde a sight ;  
 Whanne he came nere a havyn) ther he fownde,

- And thederward he toke the way full right : 3651  
 Whanne thei were in, as fast as euer thei myght,  
 Ther ancens owt thei cast on euery side, where he cast  
 ffor ther awhile they cast them to Abide. 3654 anchor,
- Vppon that havyn ther was a faire Citee, 3655  
 Whiche stode full fayre vppon the Ryvers side ;  
 This knyght anon owt of the shippe goth he,  
 Butt twayn with hym and on to be his gide, 3658 and landed with  
 The remenaunt shuld in the shippe a bide two others,  
 A day or twayne, and thanne, in craft<sup>[y]</sup> wise, and a guide.  
 Go to the town be waye of merchaundise, 3661 The rest he  
 ordered
- To bye and sell as thei see other doo, 3662 to buy and sell  
 Vnto the tyme they hard of hym ayeyn. till they heard of  
 So gothe he furth withoute wordes moo, him again.
- And as he went, he mette vppon the playn 3665 As he went he  
 A man that was right ferr' in age certayn, met an old man,  
 And all for growe, a pilgrim as he were, a palmer,  
 Thanne to hym saide the knyght in this maner : 3668
- 'Fader,' quod he, 'what tyme is of the day ?' 3669 of whom he  
 'ffor certayn, ser,' he saide, 'ij after none.' asked the time  
 Thanne seid the knyght, 'I purpose, if I maye, of day,  
 This town to se, and whanne I haue don 3672  
 In to the shippe to come ayeyn right sone.'  
 Ayen thanne seid the palmer to the knyght,  
 'That may ye do long er<sup>1</sup> it be nyght.' 3675
- 'What do yow calle this town ?' quod he ayeyn. 3676 the name of  
 'Ser,' quod the palmer, 'Clarionat it hight.' Clarionat,  
 'Now, good fader, yet wold I wete full fayn,  
 Wher is the Sowdon, tell me very right : 3679 and where the  
 Of his estate fayne wold I haue a sight.' Sultan lay.  
 'The Sowdon,' he saide, 'ser, belevith me,  
 he lith att Moun-toner the riche Citee. 3682 'At Moun-toner,'  
 said the palmer

<sup>1</sup> MS. *longer*.



- 'I was there  
but lately,  
and he made a  
feast for a  
knight Generides,  
who fought  
King Bellyn,  
and kept this  
land from  
danger.
- Therin I was but late withoute lese, 3683  
And thanne he made a fest I vnderstonde ;  
Ther is a knyght callid Generides,  
he hath made hym<sup>e</sup> Stiward<sup>e</sup> of a<sup>ll</sup> his land ; 3686  
With kyng<sup>e</sup> Bellyn<sup>e</sup> he fought hand to hand,  
And wanne hym<sup>e</sup> in the feld as ye sha<sup>ll</sup> here,  
And kept this lande from<sup>e</sup> thraldom<sup>e</sup><sup>1</sup> and dangere.
- He loves also  
Clarionas,  
the Sultān's  
daughter,  
and she loves  
him again.'
- That knyght also lovith Clarionas, 3690  
The Sowdon<sup>e</sup> is hir fader in certayn,  
And suche he dede first *servi*ce in the place,  
The love hath lastid still betwix them<sup>e</sup> twayn<sup>e</sup>, 3693  
ffor in like wise she lovith [hym] ayeyn<sup>e</sup> :  
And sekerly this is the comon<sup>e</sup> voyse,  
In a<sup>ll</sup> the courte that he shall hir reioyse.' 3696
- Then said the  
knight,  
'Set me in the  
way to this city.'
- Thanne saide the knyght, 'now, fader, I yow *prae*,  
Be cause ye knowe so witt this contre,  
To do so moche as sette me in the way  
Whiche were most redyest to the Citee : 3700  
And dowte ye not ye sha<sup>ll</sup> rewardid be.'  
'Wele, *ser*,' he saide, 'I sha<sup>ll</sup> yow telt soo wele,  
That of your<sup>e</sup> waye ye sha<sup>ll</sup> fayle neuer a dele. 3703
- Said the pafner,  
'Go by yonder  
forest, the  
way will bring  
you to a plain,  
over which you  
must travel  
four days,  
and then come  
to the city '
- Take hede of yender forest, I yow saye, 3704  
ffor ther by must ye goo for eny thing<sup>e</sup> ;  
Withouten<sup>e</sup> fayle ther lithe the redy way.  
Vnto a goodly playn<sup>e</sup> it<sup>2</sup> witt yow bryng, 3707  
Whiche sha<sup>ll</sup> endure yow iiij dayes traveling<sup>e</sup>,  
And thanne anon<sup>e</sup>, withoute eny more,  
The fayre Citee ye sha<sup>ll</sup> see yow before.' 3710
- [leaf 20]  
The knight  
came to the end  
of his journey
- This knyght furth<sup>e</sup> witt rewardid hym<sup>e</sup> right wele, 3711  
And furth<sup>e</sup> he gothe [full] streight vppon<sup>e</sup> y<sup>e</sup> way  
As he was taught, and faylid neuer a dele,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *thraldon*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *in*.

- Tiff he come to the ende of his Iurnay, 3714  
 Whiche was atte after none the iij<sup>th</sup> day : on the fourth  
 And as it was about the cure of three, day,  
 Ser Iueh the knyght came in to the Citee. 3717
- To the Sowdon full Streight he toke the way ; 3718 and went straight  
 Whanne he hym sawe he spake att his device, to the Sultan,  
 'Ser, please it yow,' quod he, 'that I may saye whom he told  
 Wherefore that I am come and [in] what wise ; 3721 his story,  
 The trougth is this to offre my service ;  
 Gwynan the kyng hath bannysshed me his lande, how that Gwynan  
 And for what cause ye shaft wele vnderstonde. 3724 had banished him
- His fader made a clayme to y<sup>e</sup> contre, 3725 for opposing his  
 And I was euer ayenst hym in that case, father's claims  
 Wherefore the kyng his sonne now ha[t]t<sup>h</sup> me, to Persia.  
 And vtterly hathe putte me from his grace. 3728  
 here in this lande his fader slayn was,  
 Thanne was I trobolid sore on euery side,  
 In Egipte durst I not lenger abide.' 3731
- Ther with the Sowdon answeryd hym ayeyn : 3732 The Sultan  
 'To my presence ye are wiht come,' quod he ; answered,  
 'I must of reasone tender yow certayn),  
 Sithe ye haue be thus wrongyd for love of me, 3735 'Since you have  
 In my service now dayly shaft ye be ; been wronged  
 And if ye haue be trobelyd her before, for my sake  
 Of your pleasure now shaft ye haue the more.' 3738 you shall be in  
 my service.'
- So stih opece he was ther abideng, 3739 He abode in his  
 In his service purposyng to endure, service,  
 Passyng lentiht he was in euery thing,  
 And full pleasaunt to euery creature ; 3742 and was gentle  
 And all that was don vnder a coverture, and pleasant to  
 That what he thought ther shuld no man vnderstonde, every one, to  
 Of his tresone that he had take in hand. 3745 cover his treason.

120 THE ARTFUL SIR YVELL ACCUSES GENERYDES TO THE SULTAN.

<p>One day the Sultan was alone in his garden. Sir Yvell was aware,</p>	<p>Vppon) a tyme the Sowdon) was alone, In a garden) was walkyng' to and fro, Ser IueH Was ware therof anon, To hym) he goth withoute wordes moo.</p>	<p>3746</p>
<p>and told him that Generydes</p>	<p>'I must say yow,' quod he, 'a word or twoo ; Beseching' yow to kepe my counceH, Whiche shalbe to your' honour and [a]vayle.</p>	<p>3749</p> <p>3752</p>
<p>plotted to carry off Clarionas.</p>	<p>There is a knyght callid Generides, here in your' howse, and thus standith y<sup>e</sup> case ; Bothe day and nyght he laboryth stiH opece, ffrom) hense to haue away Clarionas, he restith not, butt wayteth tyme and space To bryng' abought his purpose if he maye, This is the very trougth that I yow saye.'</p>	<p>3753</p> <p>3756</p> <p>3759</p>
<p>The Sultan asked his advice.</p>	<p>The Sowdon) trostid aH that euer he spake : 'TeH me,' he said, ' what is your' best advise ?' 'Yes, ser,' quod he, ' this wolle I vndertake, he shaH not haue his purpose in noo wise, If ye wiH do as I shaH yow device ; Go to morow on) huntyng' for the dere, Thanne shaH ye know the trowth of this mater.</p>	<p>3760</p> <p>3763</p> <p>3766</p>
<p>' Go hunting to-morrow,' said he,</p>	<p>But yow must take with yow Generides, Not withstondeng' he wiH be loth ther too ; Whanne he is ther homeward) he wiH hym) dresse, Thanne shaH ye se anon) what he wiH do. Be myn) avise me semyth best also, That I abide atte home and kepe me close, Thanne shaH he not a tayne to his purpose.'</p>	<p>3767</p> <p>3770</p> <p>3773</p>
<p>and take Generydes with you. He will make an excuse to come home, but I will stay and defeat his purpose.'</p>	<p>The Sowdon) gave his assent therto, And furth he goth on huntyng' to the woode, With hym) he toke Generides also,</p>	<p>3774</p>

- And suche moo knyghtez as it semyd good ; 3777  
 And all sone as *ser* yuett vnderstode  
 The Sowdon was wele on wards on his way,  
 → Vn to his shippe Iueff he sent withoute delay 3780  
 ↘ One of his men) As fast as he cowde, 3781  
 Comaundyng' them) be redy euerychone ;  
 his ij. squyers he toke them) owt Aside,  
 'helpe that I were Armyd anon, 3784  
 And in like wise cast your' harnes vppon),  
 Secrely, that no man) yow Aspye,  
 And that ye be on) hors bak all redy. 3787
- Withoute the Cite ther shafl ye abide, 3788  
 And tary still as for a litill space.'  
 his hors was ther all redy for to ride,  
 And furth he went toward Clarionas, 3791  
 To hir chaunber ther as hir logging' was :  
 'Madame,' he seyde, 'my lord, your' fader dere,  
 To yow hath sent me on) a massage her.' 3794  
 'What wold my fader? I *prae* yow saye,' *quod* she.  
 'Madame,' *quod* he, 'he hath right happy game,  
 Wherefore in eny wise he wold that ye  
 Wer<sup>1</sup> ther with hym, that ye myght haue y<sup>e</sup> same.'  
 'Now may I goo,' *quod* she, 'withoute blame :'  
 And furth with all sche answeyrd hym) agayn),  
 'Att his pleasure to come I am right fayne.' 3801
- Two palfreyes anone were brought owt of y<sup>e</sup> stable,  
 In all the goodly hast that myght be do,  
 One for hir, another for Mirabill,  
 Bothe were sadellyd redy for to goo, 3805  
 And furth they rode withoute wordes moo ;  
 And as ther couenaunde was in especiafl,  
 his ij squyers mette hym) withoute the walf. 3808

As soon as he  
was gone hunting

Sir Yvell sent  
one of his men  
to his ship to

order it to be  
redy,

and told his  
two squires to  
be armed

and wait  
without the city.

He then went  
and told Clarionas

that her father  
had sent for her

to join the  
hunting.  
[leaf 20, back]

She and Mirabell  
mounted their  
palfreys and rode

forth on their  
way.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Wher*.

- Thanne on) hir way rideth Clarionas, 3809  
 fu) Innocente was she of) y) in hir thought ;  
 When they were two miles from the town, Mira-  
 bell suspected something, Whanne thei were fro the town) ij myle of) space,  
 Mirabe) demyd sone that it was nought : 3812  
 fro the forest a wayward he them) brought,  
 Thanne Myrabe), prevely as sche myght,  
 and made her lady alight. Made hir lady from) hir palferay a light. 3815
- Sir Yvell was wroth. Where with ser yue) passing) wroth) he was, 3816  
 vn perseuyd be countenance or sight :  
 Thanne said Mirabe) onto Clarionas,  
 'Madam,' said Mirabell, 'we are betrayed.' 'Madame,' quod she, 'this gothe not a) aright, 3819  
 I wote my self) as wele as eny wight ;  
 We are be trayde,' quod she, 'I dare we) saye,  
 God wote,' quod she, 'this is noo thyng) the way.'
- As they sat, Natanell came up, chasing a hart. And as thei sate to geder complayneng), 3823  
 Came Natanell as fast as he myght ride,  
 Chasyng) an hart as he come Reynyng) ;  
 A none with a) Mirabe) had hym) aspided, 3826  
 With hir kerche she bekenyd hym) aside,  
 Mirabell beckoned to him, And he fu) curtesly left a) the chase,  
 And streight to hir he come ther as she was. 3829
- and told him that Sir Yvell had betrayed them. 'Natanell, for goddis loue, helpe,' quod she, 3830  
 'As for my lady here, Clarionas,  
 Ser yue) hath betrayed bothe hir and me ;  
 Sayng) suerly that he commaundyd was 3833  
 Be hir fader to bryng) hir to the chase,  
 Whiche hym) thought shuld be hir grete counfort,  
 To see his huntyng) And his disporte. 3836
- 'Go to your master and tell him this.' But now I wote right) wele it goth) a mys ; 3837  
 Wherefore,' quod she, 'I prae you hertyly,  
 Go to your) Maister now and tel) hym) this,

- for thanne he wiþ nott tary sekerly, 3840  
 And that he come as fast as he may hye ;  
 Now, good Nataneth, think wele her vppon.'  
 'It shaþ be do,' quod he, 'and that anone.' 3843
- To the Cite streight he toke the waye, 3844  
 And brought his maister harnes ther he was,  
 And told hym ther, withoute more delaye,  
 Of ser yueþ and of fayre Clarionas, 3847  
 Of her messaventur' and how it was,  
 And whanne Generides had hard hym wele,  
 A none he lefte his huntyng' euery dele. 3850
- In this seasoone was fayre Clarionas<sup>1</sup> 3851  
 full of sorow, god wote a wofull weight ;  
 Ser yueþ sawe in what plight that she was,  
 And her comfort in all that he myght : 3854  
 'Madame,' quod he, 'this wiþ I yow be hight,  
 Ye shaþ suerly be weddid to A kyng',  
 Vnder hevyn the migtiest lyvyng'. 3857
- Wherefore, madame, be ye noo thyng' dismayde, 3858  
 All these thoughtez late them ouer slide !'  
 With that anon, as he these wordes sayde,  
 Generides come fro the forest side, 3861  
 All clene armyd as fast as he cowde ride,  
 To ser Yueþ streight vppon the felde,  
 his swerd all nakyd in his hand he held. 3864
- And whanne ser Iueþ saw hym come rideng', 3865  
 he made good countenaunce, but neuer the lesse  
 he was full sore adrede of his comyng',  
 Purposing' fully for to make his pece, 3868  
 And thus he seide on to Generides :  
 'Good ser,' quod he, 'be ye no thyng' displesid,  
 ffor in this case your harte shaþ sone be easid. 3871

Natanell went  
 straight to the  
 city, and fetchod  
 his master's  
 armour, and  
 told him all  
 about Clarionas.

Generydes left  
 his hunting.

Sir Yvell tried  
 to comfort  
 Clarionas by  
 telling her she  
 should be  
 married to the  
 mightiest king  
 under heaven.

Just then  
 Generydes  
 came out of  
 the forest with  
 his sword drawn.

When Sir Yvell  
 saw him he  
 made good  
 countenance,

and said,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Clarianos*.

- This is trewly the mater in substance ; 3872
- The kyng<sup>t</sup> of E[g]lipte, born<sup>d</sup> of highe lenage,  
Wold haue this lady here in gouernaunce,  
Desiryng<sup>t</sup> hir be way of mariage ; 3875
- and this is the  
cause of my  
journey, and  
not to displese  
the Sultan  
or you.
- And for this cause now I take this viage :  
This is the trougth like now,<sup>1</sup> I yow devise,  
Not to displese the Sowdon<sup>d</sup> in noo wise, 3878
- Nor yow, and that ye shaH vnderstonde, 3879  
ffor that came neuer in my thought certayn<sup>d</sup> ;
- Take the lady,  
and I will return  
to the city.<sup>t</sup>
- This lady here ye shaH in your<sup>t</sup> hande,  
And to the Citee wiH I turne ayeyn<sup>d</sup>, 3882  
Be cause no man<sup>d</sup> shaH haue me in disdayn<sup>d</sup> ;  
And forthermore, of that that I haue sayde  
I yow beseche that I be not be wrayed. 3885
- It is fuH late for yow and here also 3886  
As for this day to travell more And lesse,  
Att youre pleasure to morow may ye goo.<sup>t</sup>
- [leaf 21]
- ' I am content,<sup>t</sup>  
said Generydes,
- ' I am content,<sup>t</sup> thanne seid Generides, 3889  
ffuH Innocente<sup>2</sup> of aH his dobilnesse,  
The whiche ser yueH thought in his entente,  
ffor to the Sowdon<sup>d</sup> hastely he went. 3892
- Sir Yvell went  
in haaste to  
the Sultan.
- Generides, withoute wordes moo, 3893  
Made a logge as sone as euer he mygHt :  
he made another for hym<sup>d</sup> self<sup>t</sup> also,  
Thinkyng<sup>t</sup> noo harme ne malys to no weight ; 3896  
And ther they restid stih as for that nygHt.  
Thanne was ser yueH fuH bold in his maner  
With the Sowdon, and saide as ye shaH here : 3899
- and there  
they rested.
- Sir Yvell told  
the Sultan,
- ' Off your<sup>t</sup> daughter And of Generides, 3900  
ffuH trewly shaH ye fynde it as I say ;  
ffor as this nygHt thei are, withoute lesse,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *now a.*<sup>2</sup> MS. *Innocence.*

- Out of the town wele onward on yer waye : 3903  
 And if ye wiþ goo ther anon, ye may  
 Se where they be and I shaft be your' gide.' I will be your  
 guide.'  
 ' Yes, ' quod the Sowdon, ' theder I wiþ ride, 3906
- And that anon as fast as euer we<sup>1</sup> may, 3907  
 In secrete wise, no mo but ye and I.'  
 Now goth forward the Sowdon on his way,  
 And ser yueþ with hym fuþ secretly, 3910  
 he first be sought the Sowdon feithfully,  
 As for the cheve guerdon of his seruice,  
 ffor to sle Generides in eny wise. 3913  
He besought  
 him to slay  
 Generides.
- The Sowdon grauntyd hym for so<sup>2</sup> to do ; 3914  
 And as he came owt of the forest side,  
 he sawe a logge, and in he went ther to ;  
 Ser yueþ stode withouten hym to abide, 3917  
 And furth with all the Sowdon had aspyed  
 Withynne the logge wher lay Generides,  
 In his harnes slepyng' stiþ opece. 3920  
They came to  
 a lodge, and  
 the Sultan  
 went in and  
 saw Generides  
 sleeping
- Hys sward was drawyn, on<sup>3</sup> the grownd it lay, 3921  
 To sle hym the Sowdon had grete pite,  
 Remembryng' the seruice day by day,  
 Whiche he had don in his necessite, 3924  
 And suche as no man ded saue only he :  
 Wherefore he thought, be good and sad advise,  
 he wold not sle hym in noo hasty wise. 3927  
The Sultan  
 thought he  
 would not slay  
 him hastily,
- He toke Away the sward vppe from y<sup>e</sup> ground, 3928  
 And leyde his owen ther as the toder was ;  
 Butt litiþ thense another logge he founde,  
 Ther lay myrabeþ and fayre Clarionas, 3931  
 fuþ stedefastly he lokid on hir face,  
 To knowe his doughter clerly be sight,  
 ffor bothe thei sleppe as fast as euer thei myght. 3934  
In the other  
 lodge he found  
 Clarionas and  
 Mirabell,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *he*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *to so*.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *on on*.



and took up his daughter fast asleep as she was, and	He toke his doughter vppe as she laye, And furth he bare hir in his armys twaynd Owt of the logge, she sleppe stih alway,	3935
delivered her to Sir Yvell	And to <i>ser</i> yueff delyueryd hir ayeyn, And told hym that Generides was slaynd. Whanne <i>ser</i> Iueff herd of that aventure, Wote ye wele he was a ioyfull creature.	3938 3941
to conduct her to the city.	The Sowdon went ayeyn to his disporte ; Ser Iueff hym promysed for to goo, With his doughter ayenward to resorte Vn to the Citee, ther as she came froo,	3942 3945
But he meant nothing of the kind.	Butt sekerly his thought was noo thynge soo : The Sowdon wende she had gon ther she was, Butt alway he led fayre Clarionas.	3948
Clarionas awoke and saw how it was ;  she took on sore and swooned twice.	Anone with all Clarionas awoke, And whanne that she perseivid how it was, fuff of sorow she was and sore on toke, That twyes she swoundyd in a litih space ; God wote she stode in fuff petevous case, More sorow had noo creature levyng', for she had leuer a dved than <sup>1</sup> eny thynge'.	3949 3952 3955
He set her on a palfrey and led her to the ship.	On a palfrey he sette Clarionas, And to the shippe he gideth hir fuff right ; Generides, withynne a litih space, he woke anon thanne was it dayle light :	3956 3959
When Generydes awoke, he asked Mirabell for Clarionas.	Of Mirabeff sone he had a sight, And first of all he sayde in this maner, ' Where is Clarionas, my lady dere ?'	3962
'Alas said she, 'my lady is gone by false treason.	With thoo wordes Mirabeff woke anon ; ' Alas,' quod she, ' what aventur' is this ? By false tresone now is my lady goon,	3963

<sup>1</sup> MS. *thang*.

- And *ser* Iueff I wote it is : 3966 It is Sir Yvell,  
 Of hym I dremyd all this nyght I wis,  
 I *prae* god geve hym sorow now,' she saide,  
 'ffor this is twyes that he hath vs betrayde.' 3969 he hath betrayed  
 us twice.'
- 'Butt is she goon?' thanne saide Generides. 3970  
 'Yee,' *quod* Mirabell, 'and that me rewitth sore.'  
 'ffare weff,' *quod* he, 'my comfort and gladnes,  
 ffare weff my ioye for now and euermore ; 3973 'Farewell,'  
 quoth he,  
 'my comfort  
 and joy for  
 evermore.  
 What think ye best that I shall doo yerfore?'  
 'This is the best,' *quod* she, 'that I canne saye,  
 Go after them as fast as euer ye may, 3976 'Go after them,'  
 said she,
- And if it fortune that he may be take, 3977  
 ffor erthely good or eny fayre *promes*, [leaf 21, back]  
 Do make hym sure what couenaunte that he make.'  
 'Yes,' hardly thanne seid Generides. 3980  
 'To the Sowdon,' *quod* sche, 'I witt me dresse, 'and I will go  
 to the Sultan,  
 And tell hym trewly, as sone as euer I may,  
 ffor he witt trost the wordes that I saye.' 3983 for he witt trust  
 my words.'
- Generides thanne armyd hym anon, 3984 Generides then  
 armed himself,  
 Aftur *ser* Iueff to folow on the chase ;  
 he sougth after his swerd and it was goon,  
 he founde another lying in the place, 3987 and found the  
 Sultan's sword,  
 The Sowdons swerd he wist wele that it was :  
 To myrabell he seide in this maner,  
 'My lord the Sowdon suerly hath ben here : 3990
- Where witt I am comfortid verely, 3991 which comforted  
 him.  
 ffor of my parte [he] demyd not amys,  
 And if he had, I say yow sekerly,  
 he wold haue slayn me here, I wote wele this.' 3994  
 'Right as ye say,' *quod* she, 'me think it is :  
 I witt telle hym [the] trougth whanne I hym see,  
 ffor I witt seche hym wher euer that he be.' 3997

- Then quoth he, 'Thanne,' quod he, 'Mirabeñ, I yow prae, 3998  
'Tell Nataneñ to  
come after me.'  
Byd Nataneñ anon for eny thing'  
Come after me as fast as euer he may.'  
'It shaft be do,' quod she, 'withoute fey[n]ing': 4001  
he be your' spede that is our hevyn' kyng',  
Whanne ye are goo I wiñ not long' abide,  
ffor to my lord the Sowdon I wiñ ryde.' 4004
- Generides is in his way rideng' 4005  
After Iueñ, to take hym) if he may.  
Mirabeñ thanne made noo taryeng',  
Butt to the Sowdon) she toke the waye, 4008  
To telf hym) añ the trougth of here affraye,  
But or she came the Sowdon) knewe it wele,  
ffor ther came on) and told) hym euery dele, 4011
- Whiche mette *ser* yueñ and Clarionas : 4012  
Where with the Sowdon) was astownyd sore,  
And furth with añ he rideth in to the place,  
Ther as he founde Generides before, 4015  
Of that fortune to harkyn) forthermore ;  
This musyng' in his thought more and lesse,  
he mette Mirabeñ in grete hevynes. 4018
- Be hir semlante he thought it shuld be she, 4019  
And this to hir fuñ soberly he sayde ;  
'Telle me, where is my doughter now?' seith he ;  
And ther withañ she was gretly dismayde, 4022  
'ffor certeyn), *ser*,' quod she, 'she is betrayed ;  
Ser yueñ seid that ye had for hir sent,  
And brought fro yow a streyt comaundment. 4025
- And in this wise away with hir he rode, 4026  
ffuñ vntrewly, and be a subtiñ trayne ;  
Vppon) the way we hovyd and a boode.

Then quoth he,  
'Tell Nataneñ to  
come after me.'

Generides  
follows Yvell,

and Mirabell  
goes to the  
Sultan,

but the Sultan  
knew all before,

and was sore  
astounded.  
He rides to the  
place where he  
found Generides,

and met Mirabell  
on the way,

who told him  
how Clarionas  
was betrayed  
at first,

- Generides thanne reskewid hir ayeyn, 4029 and how  
 Thanne was the day passid in certayn, Generydes  
 And nere nyght, wherefore he thought it best rescued her,  
 Ther to abide as for oñ nyghtez rest. 4032
- 'As for Generides this dare I now saye, 4033  
 he was neuer that man, I yow ensure,  
 To dishonour your doughter be eny way,  
 Nor neuer while his liff may endure; 4036  
 But whels he sleppe this cursyd creature  
 fuH trayturly with hir is goo;  
 fuH wele I woote it is he and no moo.' 4039 and how,  
 while he slept,  
 Sir Yvell had  
 carried her off.
- To here answerd the Sowdon in this wise; 4040 The Sultan  
 'Ye say fuH trew, it may non other be, answered,  
 With his fayre wordes, fuH of flatrise, 'It is full true  
 he hath deseyuyd now bothe yow and me, 4043 he hath deceived  
 Butt where is now Generides?' quod he; us both.  
 'Trewly,' quod she, 'ser, he hath take the waye But where is  
 Aftur this knyght, and thus he bad me say.' 4046 Generydes?'  
 'Truly,' said she,  
 'he is gone  
 after this knight.'
- 'What think ye best,' quod he, 'that I shaft doo?'  
 'ffor sothe,' quod she, 'this is now myn advise;  
 Aftur ser yueH Generides is goo,  
 To take hym if he canne in eny wise; 4050  
 And as for yow to take the enterprise,  
 It shaft nede if his liff may endure,  
 he wiH do moche ther to I yow ensure.' 4053
- And as thei spake to geder he and she, 4054 As they spake  
 Came Natanell as fast as he cowde ride; together  
 MyrabeH sone perseyuyd it was he, Natanell  
 fuH ertely she prayde hym to abide: 4057 rode up.  
 Anon withaH he reynyd his hors aside,  
 Thanne seid he this to MirabeH, 'I yow prae,  
 What is your' wiH now pleasit yow to say.' 4060

- [leaf 22]  
Mirabell gave  
him Generides'  
message.
- '[M]ynne owyn lady,' quod she, 'Clarionas, 4061  
Ser yueh now ageyn with here is gone,  
Whils we were bothe on sleppe this is y<sup>e</sup> case,  
Generides is after all alone, 4064  
And wold that ye shuld follow hym anone.'  
'Maystres,' quod he, 'now trost me verily,  
To hym I will as fast as I canne highē.' 4067
- Natanell rides  
after his master ;
- the Sutan and  
Mirabell return  
to the city,
- and Clarionas  
by this time is  
going on board  
with Sir Yvell.
- When they were  
under sail  
Generides  
came up.
- 'It is too late,'  
said Yvell.
- 'Thou hast  
lost her.'
- Generides was  
sore grieved,
- Now Natanell, in all the hast he may, 4068  
Is rideng' after now Generides ;  
Myrabelh with the Sowdon take the way,  
And to the Citee ward the Sowdon ganne hym dresse,  
Complayneng' sore in right grete hevynes ;  
And by that tyme ser yueh redy was,  
Takyng' the shippe with fayre Clarionas. 4074
- It was not long' or thei were vnder sayle, 4075  
And by that tyme come was Generides ;  
Ser yueh knewe hym wele withoute fayle,  
By his stature and by his likenesse, 4078  
And these wordes he sayde to hym expresse ;  
'Generides,' quod he, 'I telle the playn,  
Thou comyst to late to haue hir now ageyn. 4081
- Thow slepist to long', and I woke the while 4082  
To spede this mater after my device,  
My purpose was the fully to be gile,  
With the Sowdon whanne I was in service ; 4085  
I sette not be the thretynng' in noo wise,  
And vterly this wolle I saye the more,  
ffro this day furth thou hast lost her yerfore.' 4088
- Generides thanne was agrevid sore, 4089  
ffor thoo wordes were saide in mokyery,  
And in hym self abashed more and more,

- Butt att that tyme ther was noo remedy : 4092 but there was  
 Clarionas be held hym verily, no remedy.  
 his countenance was all togeder doon, Clarionas  
 Anone with all ther she fylle down in swoune. 4095 saw him,  
 and fell down  
 in a swoon.
- Syr yueff sawe she made suche hevynes, 4096  
 And with hir self she was not all aright ;  
 ffor as the story doth wittenesse,  
 xv tymes she swounyd in his sight : 4099  
 he hir comfortid in all that euer he myght ;  
 To turne hir hart he dede his besy payne, Sir Yvell tried  
 And all for nought his labour was in vayne. 4102 to oomfort her,  
 but to no  
 purpose.
- Generides the porte goth all a long, 4103 Generides  
 To seke a shippe streight be the havyns side ; went all along  
 Att last he saw a galy fayre and strong, the port to  
 lay atte rode, which was both large and wide, 4106 seek a ship,  
 And men I nowe therin for to gide ;  
 The maister of all was ther present, and found a  
 Generides anon to hym he went. 4109 galley with  
 master and men.
- 'Owt of what cost come ye, I prae yow say, 4110 He asked  
 Or what contre,' quod he, 'telle me the right.' them of what  
 The maister thought anon be his array, coast they came.  
 Be cause he was armyd and like a knyght, 4113  
 he was a man of powre and of myght,  
 Wherefore in sothe he was sumwhat dismayde,  
 And to Generides right thus he saide. 4116 The master  
 was afraid,
- 'Sir, be not ye displeasid now,' quod he, 4117  
 'Be cause I haue of yow noo knowlachyng,  
 Owt of danger I wold be and in surete.'  
 'Surete,' quod he, 'drede yow no maner thyng ; 4120 but Generides  
 On your part ther is non other desireng, reassured him,  
 Butt I haue a mater now to begynne,  
 And I wold fayn haue your counceff therin.' 4123 and asked  
 his advice.

‘ My counsell, sir, is but simple, he said.	‘ My counceſſ is but symple, <i>ser,</i> ’ he seide ; ‘ Butt as I canne I shaſſ say myn) avice :	4124
	In this havyn) this galy now is layde, I shaſſ yow tell wherefore and in wha[t] wise ;	4127
‘ I come from Syria, where King Auferius lieth.	I come fro Surre and fro those partis, Kyng’ Auferius hath it in mariage, And ther he lith with aſſ his Baronage.	4130
I was with 100 ships on the way to India to win	A hunderyd shippes I lift ther Also, With them) I was in company certayn), And toward) ynd they purpose them) to goo,	4131
Auferius his right again.	To wyne kyng’ auferius right ageyn), And of his sonnys, to say yow trew and playn),	4134
To one of his sons, Ismaell the Savage,	A likely knyght on) And of mannys age, The whiche is callid Ismaeſſ the Savage.	4137
the king has given Thraee ;	The kyng’ his fader hym) hath gevyn) fre The Reme of Trace, to rule it in his hand ; And ferthermore, in very certente,	4138
the other, Generydes, a good knight,	He hath a broder as I vnderstonde, As good a knyght as is in eny lande, And as it is seide I telle yow very right, And for certayn) Generides he hight.	4141 4144
shall have Syria and India ;	After deceasse of auferius the kyng’, He shaſſ haue Surre in his owne demeyn), <sup>1</sup> And aſſ the Reme of ynd withoute feyning), If fortune wiſſ that he it gete ayeyn) ;	4145 4148
and my errand is to seek him.	In to this contre was myn) erande playn) hym) for to seche, and as I vnderstonde Withynne few dayes he was here in this land.	4151
Let me know where I may find him. [leaf 22, back]	And if ye knowe wher that I may hym) fynde, Now lete me wete, I <i>prae</i> yow hartely.’ Generides remembryd in his mynd	4152

<sup>1</sup> MS. *demenyng*.

- he was not wonte hym self to be wreye ; 4155  
 Yet this to hym he seid fuþ soberly,  
 ' My frend,' quod he, ' ye shaft knowe my counceþ,  
 I am the same withoute eny fayle. 4158 Generides said,  
' I am the same.
- Generides I hight, this is noo nay, 4159 my name is  
Generides,  
 kyng auferius my fader is certayn ;  
 Butt I am a carefuþ man this day, but I am full of  
care to-day, for  
 By fortune suche before was neuer sene, 4162  
 By a subtitþ and false compassing trayn,  
 Clarionas, my lordis doughter dere,  
 Vntrewly is betrayed as ye shaft here. 4165 my lord's  
daughter  
Clarionas is  
untruely  
betrayed.
- It is but late sithe she was vnder sayle, 4166  
 A knyght of Egipte, callid *ser yueþ*,  
 With here is gone away withoute fayle.  
 Thanne the maister seid, ' woth ye do weþ ? 4169  
 This galy lith not here to by ne selle ;  
 Do now be myn avice, and hardely  
 With goddes grace ye shaft fynde remedy. 4172 The master said,  
' Do now by my  
advice ;
- This galy shalbe redy for to goo, 4173 this galley shall  
be ready to go,  
and we will  
overtake him.'  
 If ye wiþ come ye shaft hym ouer take.'  
 ' Now,' quod Generides, ' late it be soo,  
 I prae yow hartly for cristis sake.' 4176 ' Now,' quoth  
Generides,  
' let it be so.'
- And furth with aþ he did it redy make,  
 In aþ the hast possible that<sup>1</sup> he may,  
 To shippe he goþ withoute more delay. 4179
- And whanne they were aþ redy for to goo, 4180 When they were  
ready to go,  
Natanell came  
with his master's  
 Came Natanell onto the havyns side,  
 his Maisters hors he brought with hym Also ;  
 And whanne Generides hym had aspyed, 4183  
 he prayde the maister sumwhat to Abide,  
 fuþ wele content he was of his comang,  
 Anone thei putt ther horses to shippyngt. 4186 horse, and was  
taken on board.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *that that*.



- The master and Generydes sailed on, Now is the Maister and Generides 4187  
 Vppon the see, and sayle beganne to make,  
 And in here viage sailed stiH opece,  
 and if the wind had not begun to slacken, Sir Yvell would have been taken, but he landed with Clarionas, TiH atte last the wynde beganne to slake, 4190  
 And ellis in very trougth they had be take ;  
 Butt afterward, withynne a litiH space,  
 Syr yueH lonyd with Clarionas. 4193
- And thanne anon, as fast as euer he myght, 4194  
 Thei hastid them forward of ther Iurnay ;  
 Ser yueH gidyd hir the way fuH right,  
 and hasted on to King Gwynan ffor he had knowen the contre many A day ; 4197  
 To kyng' Guynan he toke the redy way,  
 To his palyz ther as his abideng' was,  
 to a city called Egidias. In a Cite callid Egidias. 4200
- Four hours after, Generydes landed with the others Not long' after<sup>1</sup> the space of ourez fewe, 4201  
 The galy landyd with Generides ;  
 in the guise of merchants. In gise of mercaundez thei dede them shewe, 4204  
 fuH craftely in AH ther besynes,  
 Not like no men of warre, but all of pece,  
 So to gide them thei wer' weH apayde,  
 To harkyn tidynges what these pepiH saide. 4207
- The king was glad when he heard of Clarionas, And whanne the tidynges came onto the kyng' 4208  
 Of ser yueH and fayre Clarionas,  
 A gladder man was ther non leving,  
 Nor might not be more ioyfuH thanne he was : 4211  
 The Citee made grete festis in euery place,  
 and his knights went to meet her, himself following. his knyghtes went to mete here on the way,  
 hym self come after in fuH good Arraye. 4214
- He sent for his lords to come to his marriage, And for his lordes furth with all he sent, 4215  
 They for to come onto the mariage,  
 And to folowe the effecte of his entente,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *after after*.

To the Citee came AH his Baronage :	4218	
And as it is the custom and vsage AH way for princes shortly to device, The ffest was made in right solempne wise,	4221	and the feast was made,
And lastid long, my Auctour seith expresse ; Another custome was in that contre Of old vsage, the writeng' doth wittenesse, What tyme that eny kyng' weddid shuld be, Duryng' the tyme of that solempnite, The kyng' and she shuld neuer togeder mete, To tyme the fest were done And full complete.	4222   4225  4228	and lasted long.  It was the custom during the feast that  the king and his bride should not meet.
Thanne seid the Maister onto Generides, ' Now it is wisdom to do be good avise, ffor by manhood <sup>1</sup> suerly or by prow[e]se Yow shaft spede your' mater in noo wise ; ffor your' entente I shaft a craft devise With goddes grace, and if it fortune wele, That ye shaft haue your' purpose euery dele.	4229  4232  4235	The master said to Generydes,   'I shall devise a craft that you may gain your end.
I haue A thing' shaft lye vpon your' face, That ye shaft seme a mesett [in] certayn, Butt doubt ye not withynne a litiH space, Whanne euer ye list it shaft a voyde ayeyn, And your' visage to be as fayre And playn, As wele coloured and ther with also clene, With onys wasshyng' as it had neuer ben.	4236  4239  4242	You shall put something on your face which shall make you seem a leper,   
And forthermore ye must change your Array With sum pore man, and take ye his clothing, And bere with yow sum tokyn that she may Of your' persone haue redy knowlaching ; And from here pales as she is comyng, Bothe to and froo ther must ye haue A place, Now do as wele as god will geve you grace ;	4243  4246  4249	and you must change your clothes with some pore man. [leaf 23]  Take with you some token by which she may know you,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *mandhood*.

and she will ordain some way to speak with you.	And, weſt I woote, ſom way ſhe wiſt ordeyn That ſhe may ſpeke you <sup>1</sup> atte your' own device, And as ye canne accorde betwix you twayne, This wold I that ye did be myne auiſe ;	4250   4253
Bid Nataneſt be ready to meet you with your horſe.'	Bid Nataneſt in eny maner wiſe, That he be redy and in eſpeciall, To mete yow with your' hors what euer fall.'	4256
So Generydes did, and changed his clothes with a beggar,	Generides dede after his counceſt, And with a begger he chaungyd his wede, The pore man thought it was for his auaile, And glad he was, for he ther of had nede. Thanne ſeide Generides, 'ſo god yow ſpede, Whanne were ye atte court I pray yow ſaye.'	4257   4260
who told him he had been at court,	'Trewly,' quod he, 'I come fro thence to day ;	4263
and ſeen the queen,	And ther I ſawe the quene in riche araye, But as me ſemyth by here countenance,	4264
but that ſhe looked unhappy as ſhe came from the temple.	And as ſhe came from the tempitt by y <sup>e</sup> waye, She likyd not that riſt ordonaunce ; Me think ther was ſome cauſe of diſpleſatnce, Butt me ought not to ſpeke therof in dede.' 'Now goo, fader, and Ihu be thy ſpede.'	2467   4270
Now Generydes goes to the court	Now goth Generides furth, I vnderſtonde, Vn to the courte, his clothis all to Rent ; holdyng' his cuppe, his claper in his hande, And on his face he layde this oyntement,	4271   4274
with his cup and clapper in his hand,	To bryng' abought the effecte of his entent ; And ther anon he purveyd hym a place, Withoute the tempitt ther as ſhe ſhuld paſe.	4277
and ſtood in a place near the temple where ſhe ſhould paſe.	Whanne he had reſtid hym he putte a ryng' On his fynger, be cauſe ſhe ſhuld it ſee, And fro the tempitt as ſhe is comyng'	4278
He put a ring on his finger,		

<sup>1</sup> MS. *yom.*

- Thorough owt the prese anon to hir com) he, 4281 and as she came  
 And Askyd Almes for seynt charite, from the temple  
 The ryng<sup>1</sup> vppon his fynger sone she knewe ; he asked alms.  
 'I shaH,' thought she, 'here sum tidynggez newe.' 4284 She knew the  
 ring,
- Thanne seid the quene, 'good man, whense be ye ?' and asked  
 'Madame,' quod he, 'o trougth I shaH yow say ; whence he was.  
 In ynd I was goten in very certente, 'Madam,' said  
 In surre I was born, this is no nay ; 4288 he, 'I was  
 Now come I owt of perse the redy way, gotten in India,  
 And ther I was brought vppe, I telle yow playn, and born in  
 Sone<sup>1</sup> I was first att mannys age [certayn]. 4291 Syria,  
 and now I come  
 from Persia,  
 where I was  
 brought up.'
- Ye are a lady born of that contree, 4292  
 God hath me visite as his creature,  
 Besechyng<sup>1</sup> yow your' almes man to be.'  
 The quene Answeryd with countenaunce demure, 4295  
 'Of myn Almes,' quod she, 'ye shaH be sure.'  
 And furth with aH, withoute taryeng,  
 She bad he shuld be brought to hir loggyng. 4298 She ordered  
 him to be  
 brought to her  
 lodging.
- To hir chaunbyr right sone he was conueyed, 4299 He was  
 And ther he spake with hir hym) self alone ; conveyed  
 to her chamber,  
 'Madame,' quod he, 'be ye noo thing' dismayde, and spoke with  
 her alone.  
 Thoughe my visage be lothe to loke vppon, 4302 'Madam,' quoth  
 he, 'be not  
 dismayed,  
 With onys wasshyng<sup>1</sup> it wiH away anone,  
 And trost that I say withoute othe,  
 I am your' trew seruaunt Generides in sothe.' 4305 I am your  
 true servant  
 Generides,
- 'Generides !' quod she, 'nay that is not so, 4306  
 It is to me a wonder thing to here.'  
 'Madame,' he saide, 'ye shaH wete or ye goo,  
 Plese it yow to see a ryng<sup>1</sup> that I haue here, 4309  
 The whiche I had of yow, my lady dere ;  
 And though<sup>2</sup> I seme a mesett in your sight,  
 It is but counterfete,<sup>3</sup> I yow be hight.' 4312 and though I  
 seem a leper  
 it is but  
 counterfeit.'


<sup>1</sup> So MS. ? *Sene.*    <sup>2</sup> MS. *thought.*    <sup>3</sup> MS. *counterfete.*

	'This ryng,' quod she, 'I know it veryly, Butt of your persone yet I mervell more.'	4313
He had with him a water with which he washed his face, and he was as fair as ever. When she saw it she took him in her arms.	With hym he had a water ther redy, And from his face he wessh away it thore, he was as faire as euer he was be fore, And whanne she sawe his vesage fayre and clene, She toke hym in hir Armys as I wene ;	4316 4319
	She was soo glad, she had noo worde to saye.	4320
'Madam,' said he, 'appoint some ready place,  and Natanel and I will meet you.	'Madame,' quod he, 'in sothe this is the case, If ye wyl now for sake all this arraye, And that ye list apoynte some redy place, Bothe Natanel and I, be goddes grace, With hors and harnes noo thing' shaft be lette To mete yow ther, what our' ye wyl sett.	4323 4326
There is a ship ready to sall.'	There is a shippe All redy for to sayle, A bideng' still opece of my comyng.'	4327
'Generides,' quoth she,	'Generides,' quod she, 'I haue mervell That ye putt dougth in eny thing'	4330
'though he were king of ten realms,  I would go with you.	As to meward, for though he were a kyng' Of reames x, And so fourth to endure, yet wold I goo with yow, I yow ensure.	4333
	And for to spede this mater to purpose,	4334
You and Natanel must hide in my garden to- night early.'	In my garden Att nyght sone must ye be, Bothe Natanel and ye, and kepe yow close, Treis and busshes full thikke yer shaft yow se, To kepe yow secrete in, and as for me I wyl be ther, trost me in feithfull wise, Betwix the day and nyght, I yow promys.'	4337 4340
[leaf 23, back]		
Generides joined Natanel in the forest, put off his rage,	Generides owt of the Casteil went To Natanel, whiche in the forest lay, Ther he dede of his ragyd garment,	4341

- his disshe, his claper, and all he cast away, 4344  
 And harnessid hym all now ayein in his array: and armed  
 To the garden he toke the waye [att nyght], himself again,  
 And tared ther as he had hir be hight. 4347 in the garden.
- Thanne Clarionas is now in grete musyng', 4348  
 And in this case be thinkith hir full strayte,  
 hir purpose craftely abought to bryng',  
 And vterly hir seasoone for to wayte; 4351  
 Atte last she founde one of hir consaite  
 To whom she told here counceit all in fere,  
 And in certayne she was a lavendere. 4354  
Clarionas found  
 a laundress  
 to whom she  
 told her plan.
- To here thanne sayde fayre Clarionas, 4355  
 'Ye are,' quod she, 'a woman that is to trost  
 Of eny one that is withynne the place,  
 Of my counceit fayne wold I that ye wist.' 4358  
 'Att your pleasure, Madame, what euer ye list.'  
 Quod she ageyn, 'withoute wordes moo,  
 That lith in me I will be glad to do.' 4361
- 'Ye say right wele, and as it semyth me,' 4362  
 Quod she onto the lavender thanne ayein,  
 'I am a straunger here in this contre,  
 This is my mater all togeder playn); 4365  
 The kyng', whiche is my lord and souereyn),  
 On hym my hert is sette, I yow be hight,  
 That I for gete hym not neyther day ne nyght; 4368  
'I am a stranger  
 here,  
 and my heart  
 is set on the  
 king my lord.
- And most I drede of eny maner thing', 4369  
 That I to hym am noo thing' in this case,  
 Butt be the sterrys,' quod she, 'and be my connyng',  
 Where euer he goo or ride in eny place, 4372  
 I trost to god to stond so in his grace,  
 And in his favour' lengest to endure,  
 Of eny other levying' creature. 4375  
I wish by the  
 stars to stand  
 always in his  
 favour.

140 CLARIONAS'S LAUNDRESS DRESSES HER AS HER LAUNDRY-MAID.

- You and I must go into my garden when the stars are up; In to my gardeyn) yow and I must goo, 4376  
 Whanne sterrys are vppe and whan) it is very nyght,  
 Butt I must surely be disgised soo  
 That I may goo vnknown) to eny wight, 4379
- I will wear your kirtle, and each of us must bear a truss on our heads.' Your' kirtill wið I were be cause of light,  
 And iche of vs a trusse vppon) oure hede,  
 This is trewly my counceH and my rede.' 4382
- The laundress answered, 'I will keep your counsel.' Thanne Answeryd the lavender ayeyn), 4383  
 Seid [she], 'Madame, your' *seruaunt* wið I be,  
 And aH your' counceH kepe and layn),  
 I trost ther shaft no fawte be founde in me, 4386  
 haue here my hande for a surete ;  
 And trostith wele that at I shaft saye,  
 ffor erthely good I wið not yow bewraye.' 4389
- She went to her house and brought a kirtle And so fourth withoute wordis eny moo, 4390  
 And to hir house as fast as euer she myght  
 She went, and brought ayeyn) with hir also  
 A kirtill, like as she be fore hight. 4393  
 Whanne the day was passid and it was nyght,
- which the queen put on, leaving her rich array. The quene dede on) hir kirtill fayre and well,  
 here riche aray she left it euery dele ; 4396
- Her clothes were well tucked up, And tokkyd vppe she was well fro the grounde, 4397  
 Before hir eyne a kerche hanging' side,  
 Ther trusses on) ther hedes aH redy bounde,  
 And furth thei went, them nede non) other gide ; 4400
- and forth they went. 'Stop, stop,' said the laundress, 'your white legs will betray us.' Thanne saide the lavender, ' abide, abide,  
 This white leggy's,' *quod* she, ' I woote it wele,  
 They wolle shende oure purpose euery dele.' 4403
- She washed Clarionas's legs with ashes and water, and ' Ye, wote ye what,' *quod* she, ' that ye shaft do ? 4404  
 Bryng' me water, and thanne late me alone,  
 A Coppe of Aisshes ye must bryng' Also,

- Where with my leggyshalbe wasshid anone, 4407  
 That Att the white I warant shalbe gon);'  
 Right thus she dede in like wise as I saye,  
 And to the gardeyn) right thus she toke the waye. 4410
- she and Clarionas  
went on to the  
garden.
- Thorough owt the haß bothe to geder gan) goo, 4411  
 As no thyng) were, fuß soft And demure,  
 Thorough out the courte they toke the way Also,  
 And atte gate thei mette att aventure 4414  
 With ser yueß, that cursid creature ;  
 She hard hym) speke, and knewe hym) be y° voyse,  
 To me[te] hym) ther was none other choyse. 4417
- At the gate they  
met Sir Yvell.
- Whanne she perseivid weß that it was he, 4418  
 A bak she drew and was fuß ih) apayde.  
 Thanne came he hir nere to knowe the certente,  
 What that she was ; ' Whom) haue yow here ? ' he seid.  
 ' Me think, ' quod he, ' it is a praty mayde ;  
 I cast here for to se what euer faß : '  
 And vppe he lift here kerchewe furth) with aß. 4424
- The queen was  
afraid and  
drew back.  
  
' Whom have  
you here ? '  
said he, and  
  
lifted up her  
kerchief.
- She was so ferde hir truse was in falling), 4425  
 With that the lavender putt hym) abak aye,  
 ' Ye are to blame, ' quod she, ' be hevyn) kyng) ;  
 Now late my mayde alone, ser, I yow praye, 4428  
 We must hast bo[the] as moche as euer we maye,  
 These are the quenez clothes, I tell you playn),  
 And she must haue them) aß to morow ayeyn). ' 4431
- The laundress  
put him back,  
saying  
  
' Let my maid  
alone, sir,  
we must  
make haste ;  
these are the  
queen's clothes.'
- ' Yet woß I wete, ' quod he, ' withoute fayle, 4432  
 ffrom whense she came, and what she is, ' quod he.  
 ' Now, good ser, ' quod she, ' what shaß it availle  
 To make iche man) to speke of yow and me ? 4435  
 Yet and ye will be rewlid weß, ' quod she,  
 ' ffor your' entente and after myn) avise,  
 Ye shaß speke with hir att your' owyn) device. 4438
- ' I will know, '  
quoth he, ' from  
whence she  
came, '  
[leaf 24]
- 



- This is the mater in short conclusion, 4439  
 I am hir maystres and here *gouernour* ;  
 hir fader is a *merchaunt* of this town.  
 'Her father is a merchant of this town,  
 and there is a knight who woos her for his paramour,  
 so her friends put her with me for safety.
- Ther is a knyght hir wowitz euery owre, 4442  
 Not for to wedde butt for his *paramour* ;  
 hir frendis wold haue hir in *suerte*,  
 And for that cause she is now here with me. 4445
- Not withstondyng, withoute wordes moo, 4446  
 Go to myn house, Go to myn house and tary ther, ' *quod* she,  
 and wait there, ' Tih I haue washt, and this moche wof I doo ;  
 Whanne I come home I shaft bryng' hir with me,  
 and you shall see her at your pleasure.' And att your' pleasur' ther shaft ye hir see,  
 And speke with hir, ther shaft noman sey nay.'  
 ' I graunt, ' *quod* he, ' will ye do as ye saye ? ' 4452
- He goes to her house, He left them ther, and on he goth a pase 4453  
 Vnto hir howse as fast as euer he may :
- and the laundress and Clarionas go into the garden, The lavender with Clarionas  
 In to the garden all another way. 4456  
 Whanne thei were ther *yer* trussez down thei lay ;  
 ' Now, faire Madame, ' seide the lavender,  
 ' Do now sum good for spede of this mater. ' 4459
- where they see Natanel, Thanne in to the gardeyn came Natanel, 4460  
 Clarionas full some had hym aspied ;  
 ' Where is your maister ? ' *quod* she, ' with ye me teh ? '  
 ' Madame, ' he saide, ' her be the gardeyn side, 4463  
 Att your' comyng ther he will abide,  
 And euery thing' is redy to your' entente.'  
 Thanne was Clarionas right wele content. 4466
- The laundress wishes herself hence, The lavender thanne was some what dismayde ; 4467  
 ' I wold, ' *quod* she, ' I hadde be hense this nyght,  
 for we do noo thyng' here as ye haue sayde,

- Noyther in noo wise like as ye be hight ; 4470  
 Madame,' quod she, ' this goth not all aright ;'  
 ' Now be not wrothe,' thanne seid Clarionas, but Clarionas  
 ' And I shafl tell yow trougth of all the case.' 4473 tells her that
- To hir' anon thanne Answerd the lavender, 4474  
 ' As for my part,' quod she, ' this shafl I saye,  
 I wolle not here noo thyng' of this mater,  
 ffor me likith noo thyng' in this arraye, 4477  
 I wiif calle after helpe some maner way !'  
 ' Nay, god defende it,' quod Clarionas,  
 ' That ye shafl inperit me so in this case ; 4480
- I haue your' faythe and promys in my hand, 4481  
 That ye shafl kepe my councefl secretly ;  
 If ye do this, ye shafl wele vnderstonde,  
 Ye shafl repente it sore as wele as I, 4484  
 Me think ye were moche better certaynly  
 To be rewlid as I shafl yow councefl,  
 And it shafl suerly be to youre avayle : 4487
- To knowe the very trougth of this case, 4488  
 I shafl declare it all [at] aventure ;  
 Ther is a knyght not ferre owt of this place,  
 I loue hym best of eny creature, 4491  
 And of his loue ayenward I am sure ;  
 Right sone I wote he wiif be here with me,  
 And streight with hym I will goo in to my contre. and who will  
 take her to her  
 own country.
- Wherefore I councefl yow leue all this fare, 4495  
 And come with me, it shafl be for *your* best,  
 here shafl ye leue in sorow and in care,  
 I canne not thynk that ye shafl leue in rest, 4498  
 And I suerly wiif make yow this behest,  
 If ye wiif take the payn me for to plesse,  
 I shafl o trougth make yow right wele At ease.' 4501

- The laundress thought that as she had deceived Sir Yuell this would be the best thing to do.
- The lavender be thought hir in hir mynd, 4502  
 That she disseuyd *ser yueH* be a trayn),  
 And if so<sup>1</sup> were that she abode be hynd,  
 She were vndone for euer in certayn); 4505  
 Thanne seid she to Clarionas ayeyn,  
 ‘ffor your’ plesure, madame, I am contente,  
 With you to go att your’ commaundment.’ 4508
- Off hir Answere Clarionas was fayn), 4509  
 And ellys she had gon) all womanles,  
 Whiche had not ben) hir honour in certayn),  
 And as thei went to geder stiiH opese, 4512
- Generydes came to the garden,  
 In to the garden) came Generides,  
 And atte first he wist not whiche was she :  
 ‘Where are ye now ? fayre lady myn),’ *quod* he. 4515
- and took up Clarionas behind him.  
 In like manner Natanell took the laundress.
- Now what nedith long<sup>1</sup> *processe* of y<sup>is</sup> mater ? 4516  
 She was sette vppe behynde Generides,  
 And Natanell sette vppe the lavendere  
 vppon) his hors, and furth they ganne them) dresse.  
 Att this while was *ser yueH* stiiH opese,  
 Euer wayteng<sup>1</sup> whanne the lavender shuld bryng<sup>1</sup>  
 That she promysed att hir departeng<sup>1</sup>. 4522
- Butt as it hath be sayde full long<sup>1</sup> agoo, 4523  
 Some bete the bussH and some the byrdes take,  
 And wheder that I be on) of thoo or noo,
- [leaf 24, back] I me reporte onto the letterys blake, 4526  
 And reasone wiH it may not be forsake,  
 he that entendith villany of shame,  
 It is no synne to quyte hym) with the same. 4529
- Meanwhile Sir Yuell was waiting at the laundress’s house till he thought something was wrong.
- Syr IueH thought she taryed passyng<sup>1</sup> long<sup>1</sup>, 4530  
 And vppe he rose and furth he goth alone,  
 In his conseite he demyd that it was wrong<sup>1</sup>,

- And to the quenys chaunber he is furth gon; 4533 He went to the  
 'Where is the quene?' quod he, 'telle me anon.'  
 'It is not long,' they sayde, 'sithe she was here,  
 And with hir also spake the lavender.' 4536 and heard she  
 had been with the  
 laundress.
- Whanne he hard that his hert was aȝ away, 4537 Then he wist  
 thanne wist he wele it was not aȝ a right,  
 'This lavender,' quod he, 'this is noo naye,  
 hath don) aȝ this, that most vnhappy wight. 4540  
 Butt I shaȝ do my powre and my myght  
 hym) for to take, and if I happy) wele  
 fuȝ sore thei shaȝ repent it euery dele.' 4543
- He armyd hym) and left aȝ other thing, 4544 He armed himself  
 And furth he goth in aȝ the hast he myght;  
 he and his page, withoute more taryeng',  
 After Generides toke the way fuȝ right, 4547 and rode after  
 Generydes.  
 And att the last, of hym) he had a sight,  
 Clarionas thanne cast hir yee a side,  
 And ser yuell fuȝ sone she had Aspyde. 4550 Clarionas saw  
 him coming,
- Thanne to Generides fuȝ sone she saide, 4551 and said to  
 'yender comyȝ your' mortaȝ enmy,<sup>1</sup>  
 The whiche fuȝ oft hath made me affrayde,  
 Now may ye wele ordeyne a remedy; 4554  
 Wherefore,' quod she, 'I prae yow hartely,  
 That what some euer he say be his promys  
 late hym) not skape your' handis in noo wise.' 4557 Let him not  
 escape.'
- To here answeyrd Generides ayeyn, 4558 'Be not afraid,'  
 'Be ye noo thyng a ferde as in this case;  
 Or we departe,' quod he, 'he shaȝ be fayn)  
 his quareȝ vppe to yelde, be goddis grace.' 4561  
 With that anon) alight Clarionas;  
 Generides anon) hym) dressid in his gere,  
 And Nataneȝ was redy with his spere. 4564  
 Clarionas  
 alighted.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *elmy*.

- Syr yuell ranne onto Generides, 4565  
 Thorough owt the sheld he smote hym) [in] certayn,  
 Butt for all that he skapid daungerles,  
 And furth with all ranne to hym) ayeyn), 4568  
 That with his spere he brast his sheld on twayn),  
 and Yuell is wounded,  
 And in his body he woundid hym) so sore,  
 That down) he felle, endure myght he no more. 4571
- Hys stede he delyueryd to Nataneth, 4572  
 A myghti hors and called passing' wight;  
 'I wold,' quod he, 'this hors were cherisshid wele,  
 ffor he is sure and good, I yow behight.' 4575  
 Generides adown) from) his hors alight,  
 Ser yuell sawe it wold non) other be,  
 And vppe he rose and knelid on) his kne. 4578
- He begs mercy of Generydes,  
 Thanne seid he thus, 'mercy, Generides, 4579  
 I haue offendid yow, I wiil no more ;'  
 but Clarionas warned him not to trust him again.  
 Clarionas cryed alway stiil opece,  
 'Though he speke fayre, trost hym) not therfore ; 4582  
 And if ye do ye shaft repente<sup>1</sup> it sore :  
 Remembre wele he hath desseyuyd yow twyes,  
 Shaft he neuer be trew, I yow promys.' 4585
- Generides remembryd hym) ther one, 4586  
 She sayde hym) trew, he knewe it verily ;  
 With that Clarionas aspyed anon),  
 Ser yuell held a knyffe in his hande secretly ; 4589  
 'He will slay you, he hath a knife in his hand.'  
 'By ware,' quod she, and ganne hym) to Aspye,  
 'he wiil sle yow, ye may wele vnderstonde,  
 A knyff all way he kepith in his hande.' 4592
- He stabbed Generydes in the thigh,  
 He smote generides in to the thye, 4593  
 And he was not gretly hurt, it was his vre ;  
 his purpose was to sle hym) vterly,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *repentid*.

with fals tresone vnder a coverture : 4596  
 Thanne Generides thought on hym to be sure,  
 And with his swerd he clefe his hede on twoo, and he in return  
 That neuer after spake he wordes moo. 4599 cleft his head in  
two.

Thanne vppon his stede lept generides, 4600  
 Be hynd hym was sett Clarionas his lady dere,  
 And Natanell all redy ganne hym dresse,  
 Vppon an hors befor<sup>n</sup> the lavandere, 4603 So they all got  
 And soo thei rode togeder all in feer', on horseback  
 Owt of ther enmys handes they were sure, again and rode on.  
 Euerychone talkyng<sup>t</sup> of ther aventure. 4606

In this meane tyme the body of the knyght 4607  
 his page anon vppon his hors it layde,  
 And to the courte<sup>1</sup> he went ayeyn full right.  
 Whanne it was knowen the kyng<sup>t</sup> was sore dismayd, The king was  
 'Now haue I lost my wor[l]dly loye,' he seid : sore dismayed  
 Grete thought he toke and way[led] more And more, when he heard  
 Wher with the courte<sup>1</sup> was trobelyd very sore. 4613

And how it was of all that aventur', 4614 of the adventures  
 Thanne to the kyng<sup>t</sup> he told all the hoole processe, from the beginning  
 'Ther is,' quod he, 'no levyng creature of Sir Yuell.

So dere to hir as is Generides ; 4617  
 Whiche in long tyme hath dured still ~~open~~,  
 This is the trougth I say yow for certayn. 4619

. . . . .  
 [A leaf has been here cut out of the MS., containing 127 lines  
 The catchwords of the next line are, 'And he th is now',.]  
 . . . . .

'And it obeye with humble ~~reuerence~~, 4620  
 I[n] yow only is all my feithfullest ~~trust~~ ;  
 I am your' child, ~~demeanure~~ ~~now~~ ~~as~~ ~~ye~~ ~~bid~~.' 4622

<sup>1</sup> MS. *curia*.

- She was glad  
for Generides,  
but when she  
thought of his  
departure  
her joy turned  
to heaviness.
- Right gladde she was as for Generides, 4623  
But whanne she thought of his departeng',  
hir ioy was turnyd in to hevynes,  
yet therof she made non) opyn) tokenning', 4626  
By countenance or by other thing',  
Butt alway kept it close in hir entente,  
And to hir chaunber furth with she went. 4629
- She lay on her  
bed in despair,
- Down) on) hir bed she felle<sup>1</sup> and ther she laye ; 4630  
Mirabell had mervell what it was,  
'Madame,' she seid, 'what is this new affraye ? 4632  
What mysfortune<sup>2</sup> ? and howh be felth this case ?'  
To here anon) Answerd Clarionas,  
'This is,' quod she, 'come to me a late,  
ye may wele saye I am vnfortunate.' 4636
- 'Vnfortunate,' quod she, 'that is not soo ; 4637  
I canne wele think it is your' owyn) conseite.'  
'Nay,' quod Clarionas, 'so mote I goo,  
I doo none other but myn) owen) deth) A wayte, 4640  
Generides hath done me this disseite,  
My fader hath geve hym) half his eritage,  
And me also ther with in mariage. 4643
- and told Mirabell  
that Generides  
had deceived her
- In to the reame of ynd now with he goo, 4644  
And ther he seith that he shalbe a kyng',  
Thanne with he come ayeyn) whanne that is do,  
And so make an ende of our weddyng' : 4647  
But wele I wote aft this is butt feyning',  
he is purveyd of some new Acquentaunce,  
Whiche I canne think is more to his pessauce,' 4650
- 'Leave these  
fancies,' saith  
Mirabell.
- Thanne seid Mirabell, 'Good Madame,' quod she, 4651  
'ffor goddes loue leve aft these fantasies,  
for this I knowe in very certente,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *lay*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *my fortune*.

- ye shaß not fynde it thus, I yow promes ; 4654  
 Wene ye that he wiß departe from *your seruice*  
 And vtterly refuse yow now *euerydele* ?  
 Nay, Madame, I know his trougth soo wele.' 4657 'I know his  
 truth so well.'
- To hir anon thanne answerd Clarionas ; 4658  
 'Ye make yow sure of *euery maner thing*'.  
 I warante yow,' *quod* she, 'as in this case,  
 That I haue seid ye shaß fynde noo lesing' ; 4661  
 he will wedde me, he seith, whanne he is a kyng,  
 In grete estate and wurchippe many wayes,  
 And aß these are butt triffolys and delayes.' 4664
- So lay she stiß in right grete hevynes : 4665 Clarionas lay still  
 in great  
 heaviness,  
 Mirabeß thanne owt of hir chaunber went ;  
 In hir goyng' she mette Generides,  
 And told hym aß hir ladyes entent, 4668 and then  
 Mirabeß brought  
 'ye must come now,' *quod* she, 'or AH is shent,  
 ffor she canne think non other sekerly,  
 Butt that ye haue for sake hir vtterly.' 4671
- 'For sake,' *quod* he, 'aye, benedicite, 4672 Generydes  
 Why wiß she me mystrost in eny wise ?  
 Trewly Mirabeß,' *quod* he, 'As for me,  
 My hert his heris, my trowth and my *ceruice*, 4675 to her  
 It grevith me full sore suche fantasiesce,  
 ffor be that lord that formyd me of nowgth,  
 Other to wedde came neuer in my thought.' 4678
- 'AH that,' *quod* she, 'I haue told here full playn),  
 Yet takith she noo credence what I say,  
 Ther is noo bote butte ye must come certayn),  
 And that anon as fast as euer ye may.' 4682  
 'I come,' *quod* he, 'withoute more delay ;'  
 So with Mirabeß furth he went anon),  
 And to Clarionas streight he is goon). 4685



- chamber. In to hir chaunber furth he goth a pace, 4686  
 Of his comyng' full redely she knewe ;  
 'What do yow here?' thanne seid Clarionas,  
 She taunted him 'Of aH knyghtes,' quod she, 'the most vntrew ; 4689  
 with his untruth. Your' fayre behest aH now may I rewe,  
 Your' beyng' here is to my grete displeaunce,  
 Goo now away onto your' old Acqueyntaunce. 4692
- ' Sir Amelok hath Syr Amelok hath a doughter certayn), 4693  
 a fair daughter Whiche is right fayre and lucidas she hight,  
 and the peace The pece is sone made betwix yow twayn),  
 will soon be made ffor to the change your' hert is wonder light ; 4696  
 between you.' I say for me, ther was no maner wight  
 That loved yow better thanne I dede before ;  
 AH that is doo, for now I wil nomore.' 4699
- Whanne she hadde sayde that pleasid hir to say, 4700  
 At this Generydes Thanne was Generides a wofull man) :  
 fell down in a Anone he felle in swouneng' and ther he laye,  
 swoon. AH discolored in vesage, pale and wanne, 4703  
 And furth with remembre she beganne  
 What man) he was, and also what seruice,  
 That he hir fader dede in euery wise, 4706
- With right good wil he was redy alway : 4707  
 MirabeH saide, 'what maner thing' is this?  
 Now certeynly ye are to blame, I saye ;  
 ffor wele I wote in hym ye demyd amys : 4710  
 yet atte last,'<sup>1</sup> quod she, 'ye shuld hym kysse.'
- [leaf 25, back] Thanne seid Clarionas, 'sith it is soo,  
 If that may do hym) good, it shalbe doo 4713
- With aH myn) hert,' quod she, 'what euer faH ;' 4714  
 To se hym) soo she was right sore dismayde.  
 Clarionas kisses Ther as he lay she kyst hym) furth withaH,

<sup>1</sup> ? *lest*.

- And he ther with all sodenly abrayde, 4717 him, and he  
like as a man had ben sore affrayde ; recovers,  
'Madame,' quod he, 'now please it yow to here  
What I shall say as towchyng' this mater. 4720
- As for my parte ther is noo creature, 4721 and all was  
That will do more your honour to avaunce, forgiven.  
And o my trowth it was I neuer sure,  
Vnto this our' of now none Acqueyntance, 4724  
In that ther is noo cause of displesaunce,  
I haue ben alway trew in myn entent,  
And of all this god wote I am full innocent. 4727
- Whanne he had seid so trewly and so playn), 4728  
In euerything' as towchyng' this mater :  
'All is for geve,' quod she, 'betwix vs twayn),  
And late vs still be frendis as we were.' 4731  
'Ther to I graunt,' quod he, 'with right good chere  
To endure ;' so with good contenuaunce  
Iche to other made thei full assuraunce. 4734
- Vppon this thanne he toke his leue for to goo, 4735 He took his leaver  
Of the Sowdon and of fayre Clarionas ; of the Sultan,  
With hir he left a littill dogge also, and of Clarionas,  
Whiche went with hir a bought in euery place, 4738 and left with her  
In here conseite a grete Iewell it was ; a little dog.  
So toward ynd Generides is gon,  
With hym the new made knyghtes euerychone. 4741
- To Surre came Generides and his knyghtes a pace,  
Ther was the ost of auferius y° kyng,  
In a Cite whiche was callid Damas, The army of  
Theder thei came withoute more taryeng' : 4745 Auferius was at  
Grete ioye made all the ost of ther comyng', Damas when  
And of all other namyd in the prese, Generides came  
They were most ioyfull of Generides. 4748 with his knights.

- They took ship  
in all haste,  
To the shippe they went in all the hast y<sup>e</sup>l myght,  
And as thei wold desire thei had the wynd ;  
Vppon the see thei toke ther course full right,  
That sone thei were vppon the cost of ynde, 4752  
Right fayre havenys aH redy ganne thei fynd,  
and soon landed. And sone thei landyd, shortly for to say,  
AH atte ther ease, was no man seid nay. 4755
- ffurth one thei went, and made noo taryeng, 4756  
The Cryes were made in euery good village,  
AH thoo that wold obey the rightwise kyng  
Shuld haue ther lyves and ther heritage ; 4759  
And euery man to haue his avantage,  
A moneth day to take avisement,  
This was the kynggez own poyntement. 4762
- Furth with his ost kyng auferius is gon, 4763  
And many lordes in his companye,  
The townys and the castelys euerychon  
Euer as he went he wanne them by and by, 4766  
Save one, whiche was full stronge and myghty,  
And as the story makith remembraunce,  
Wold not be wonne withoute grete ordenaunce : 4769
- called Vice,  
near which Sir  
Amelok lay.  
And Vice it hight, whiche is a fayre Cite ; 4770  
Ser Amelok fro thense a litiH he lay,  
And of auferius comyng' wist not he  
No maner o thing, ne of aH that Arraye ; 4773  
Thanne was ther on that had hast in his way,  
And ser Amelok Anon he ganne hym dresse,  
He was playing  
chess.  
Whiche with a knyght was playeng' Att chesse. 4776
- ' This is no time  
for chess,' said  
one, ' it is check-  
mate to thee,  
' What tyme is now to play Atte Chesse?' quod he,  
' Thu byddest thy felaw chese, I vnderstonde ;  
Butt for certeyn I saye chek mate to the,

- Kyng Auferius is here withynne the land,  
Townys and Castelys are yelde to his hand,  
With hym is come Generides also,  
Take hede be tyme or all is goo.' 4780 for Auferius and  
Generides are  
here.'
- Syr Amelok, whanne he the tydenges hard,  
A wrother man yet saw he neuer non,  
And as a man beside hem self he farde,  
These tydengys came so hastely vpon); 4784 Sir Amelok was  
beside himself  
for rage.
- Ther with he sent his lettres owt anon),  
All men to come and in hir best arraye,  
Euery man to make as many as they may 4787  
He sent out  
his letters
- The townnys and the Castellys on be on),  
he sett them vnder rule and gouernaunce,  
And made them to be vitaylid euerychon  
With stuff of pepiH And of ordenaunce; 4791 and victualled  
his towns and  
castles,
- And specially in his remembraunce,  
And in his mende the fayre Cite of Vice,  
To make it strong in eny maner awise. 4794  
especially Vice.
- And so he ded in All that euer he myght; 4798  
Withynne ij myle thanne was the kyngges ost,  
And ther was on that gidid them full right,  
Whiche somtyme kept the forest in the cost, 4801  
And brought tidengges whanne the Cite was lost,  
The same forster suerly was ther gide,  
full wele he knew the wayes on euery side. 4804  
led by the faithful  
forester.
- Whanne the ost was come before y<sup>e</sup> town), 4805  
he sett his felde and made no more delay;  
Whanne that was do, the kyng rode vppe and down),  
Beholding wele the grownde in euery way, 4808  
And thanne he sette the pepiH in his arraye,  
A xx. Rankys trewly for to accompt,  
And iche of them A M<sup>h</sup> men affronte. 4811  
he set his peop<sup>le</sup>  
in array in 20  
ranks, 1000 in  
each.

They of the town were ware,	They of the town were ware of <i>yer</i> comyng, And toke good hede hough they made ther feld ; Among them was noo lenger abideng, But furth they dressid them with spere and sheld Owt of the town, that myght a wepon weld, And ther thei made a feld vppon the playn,	4812   4815   4818
and mustered 15,000 strong.	xv thowsand to say yow for certayn.	4818
The battles met,	It was not long or bothe the battellez mett, And on that side of Auferius the kyng Generides fuH fresshly on they sett, And was the first of that encounteryng,	4819   4822
and Generydes bore down Ananyell,	ffuH wele horsyd att his likyng, And with a spere, the story can yow tell, he bare down a knyght callid Ananyell,	4825
brother to Sir Amelok.	And broder to <i>ser</i> Amelok he was ; A semely knyght, a man of grete powre, Generides toke NataneH <sup>1</sup> his stede, And hym he wold a taken prisoner, Thanne was ther of his felisshepe soo nere, That saw thei hough his stede was gon So furth with all they reskewe hym anon.	4826   4829   4832
He had a sworn brother called Sir Amysell,	He had a felaw that callid was <i>ser</i> AmyseH, his sworn broder he was in sothfastnes ; Anone with all ranne to hym <i>ser</i> DareH, And hym vnhorsyd ther in all the prese, And in like wise so ded Generides, ffurth on he goth and <i>yer</i> as the prese was most,	4833   4836   4839
whom Darell unhorsed.	Syr DareH toke the stede and led hym to y <sup>e</sup> ost.	4839
The other party were wroth.	The toder part avaunce them anone And wrothe thei were <i>yer</i> men were so outrayed,	4840
King Lamedon was there,	kyng lamedon was ther, and formest of euerychon,	

<sup>1</sup> So MS. for *Ananyell*.

- And all for love of lucidas the mayde,  
The whiche was endly fayre, as it was sayde,  
Of all hir manerys callid trew and p[er]layne,  
Ser Amelok hir fader was certayn :
- 4843 and all for love  
of Lucidas
- 4846 the daughter of  
Amelok
- Serenides hir moder was Also,  
And all she was of another disposicion  
As ye haue hard, withoute wordes moo,  
Vn Wurchipfull of hir condicion),  
like as the story makith mencion),  
And so furth on, to say yow forther more,  
Anone beganne the bateH passing<sup>r</sup> sore.
- 4847 and Serenydes ;  
but she was  
of another  
disposition.
- 4850
- 4853
- Syr Amelok in the myddes of the playn)  
Ranne to A knyght, and smote hym) with his spere  
Thorough owt the brest, and slew hym) in certayn).  
Thanne he toke<sup>1</sup> the kyng<sup>r</sup> in this maner,  
' Be my counceH take ye this present here,  
And so departe and ellys I yow behight,  
ye shaft haue more long<sup>r</sup> or it be nyght.'
- 4854 Sir Amelok smote  
a knight with his  
spear,
- 4857  
and sent to the  
king—'Take this  
and go.'
- 4860
- Thanne who was wrothe but Auferius y<sup>e</sup> kyng?  
With a spere he ranne in to the prese  
ffull egerly, and atte first metyng<sup>r</sup>  
he slew the kyng Sanyk withoute lese,  
The whiche was fader onto Serenydes,  
kyng of Auferyk, the story makith mynd,  
As here before in writeng<sup>r</sup> may ye fynde.
- 4861 Auferius was  
wroth,
- 4864 and slew Sanyk  
king of Africa,  
the father of  
Serenydes.
- 4867
- Hys sonne was ther and saw hym) wher he laye,  
Ser ysore he hight, to say yow full trew,  
Thanne to ser Amelok this ganne he saye,  
' Woo worth the tyme tha[t] euer I the knewe !  
Thy cursyd lyff,' quod he, ' and most vntrew,  
Thy hatefull hart, and thy mysgouernaunce  
hath browgth about this onhappy chaunse.'
- 4868 His son, Sir  
Ysore, said to  
Sir Amelok,
- 4871 'Wo worth the  
time that ever  
I knew thee !'
- 4874

<sup>1</sup> ? told.

- With 1000 knights he bore his father to town  
 Syr ysores, as sone as it myght be, 4875  
 Made certayn knyghtes bere his fader to town,  
 And with A M<sup>r</sup> knyghtes in his company ;  
 And all they made grete lamentacion) : 4878  
 The prestis mett hym) with A procession,<sup>1</sup>  
 And of the Citee many a creature,  
 to his sepulture. Right so they brought hym) to his sepulture. 4881
- Serenydes saw them,  
 Quod Serenydes, ' beholde them) eu[er]ychon) ;' 4882  
 And what it ment she wold a wist fayn) :  
 And so among' all other was one,  
 'Madame,' quod he, ' the sothe I wil not layn) ; 4885  
 The kyng' your' fader ded is for certayn),  
 his knyghtes yender bere hym) on his sheld,  
 kyng' Auferius hath slayn) hym) in the feld.' 4888
- and when she wist how it was she was a woful creature. She took Lucidas apart, and said,  
 And whanne Serenydes wist hough it was, 4889  
 wete ye wele she was a wofull creature ;  
 She toke aparte the mayden) lucidas,  
 'Doughter,' quod she, ' now am I very sure, 4892  
 'My Ioy is gone. My Ioy is gon), And All good aventure ;  
 [leaf 26, back] I myght right wele A knowen) All this before,  
 I haue deseruyd it if it were more. 4895
- This is all come for my untruth to  
 For myn) on) trowth all this come too [me], 4896  
 For more vntrew I trow ther was neuer non) ;  
 A better prince was neuer born),' quod she,  
 'In all this world thanne I was sure of on), 4899  
 And vterly for euer he is now gone,  
 Vppon) his grace it botith not to wayte,  
 ffor I shaft neuer stonde in his conseite. 4902
- Auferius.'  
 Kyng' auferius it is in certayn), 4903  
 To whom) I weddid was be mariage,  
 I toke a new whiche sore repentith me,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *precession*.

- It hath and will tyme me to grete damage . . . 4916  
 And daughter myn, now ye be wyng of me.  
 haue this in mynde, forthe now and alle tyme.  
 late noo thyng more yow in your bishynnes. 4919
- In this meane tyme that his conqueyred was.  
 The batell lasted alway half yere.  
 Moche pepyll hurt and many sheldes slayn ;  
 full egerly thanne came theyng for yeres. 4922  
 And with a spere ranne he Generides.  
 And with grete courage all ready to fight.  
 To avenge his faders deeth of this he myght. 4924
- Generides full suerly hym beate.  
 hym for to mete anone he ganne hym drete.  
 And ther they ranne to gader in the fild :  
 The toder knyght, callid ser yores, 4926  
 vpon the shelde he smote Generides ;  
 And with [the] stroke his stede came on so rounde.  
 That hors and man were almost cast to ground. 4928
- Generides recoueryd vppe than ayeyn, 4924  
 Thinkyng suerly to quyte hym to for on,  
 And with his swerd he brast his sheld on twayn :  
 The swerde poynte ranne onto the shulder boon, 4927  
 Sore hurt he was, and reakewse was yer non,  
 Nor non comyng, wherefore ser ysore  
 Anon he yelded hym onto Generides, 4930
- And furth with all delyueryd hym his swerd. 4931  
 To hym thanne seide Generides ayeyn,  
 'What man be ye that I haue here conquered ?'<sup>1</sup>  
 'I am,' he seid, 'to say yow for certayn, 4934  
 The kynggez sone that here to day was slayn ;  
 And eyre to his landes withoute lese,  
 My suster is the quene Serenydes.' 4937

The battle went  
as usual.

and the French  
was at Generydes  
to avenge the  
father.

He struck him,  
and nearly  
through him  
down.

Generides in  
turn cut him  
down with  
his sword,

and took him  
prisoner.

'What man be  
ye?' he asked.  
'I am son to  
the king who  
was slain to-day,

and Serenydes is  
my sister.'

<sup>1</sup> MS. *conquered here.*



- 'I know her well,' 'Serenydes,' *quod* he, 'I knowe here well ; 4938  
*quoth* he,  
 This warre beganne noo creature but she,  
 ffor she is croppe and rote and euery dele,  
 'she is crop and 4941  
 root of the war.  
 yet as for your' *persone* ye shaft goo fre,  
 And say to Serenydes that I am he  
 'Whiche she wold haue distroyed euer more ;  
 And now I trowe she wolle repent it sore.' 4944
- Sir Ysores was 4945  
 sore wounded,  
 Sore wondid Was *ser* ysores in dede,  
 And sore for bled that vnnethe myght he stonde,  
 and Generydes 4948  
 held him up  
 on his horse,  
 Might had he non) to kepe hym) on) his stede,  
 Butt as Generides put to his hande ;  
 Whereby a man) myght knowe and vnderstonde
- like a noble 4951  
 knight.  
 A noble knyght and full of prow[es]se,  
 his emny so to helpe in his distresse.
- To the Cite goth now *ser* ysores, 4952  
 Rideng' alone soft and an easy pace ;  
 Vppon) the wall stode Serenydes,  
 Serenydes saw 4955  
 him from the  
 wall.  
 And saw hym) come and callid lucidas ;  
 'God wote,' *quod* she, 'I stonde in an hevy case,  
 I se my broder woundid passing' sore,  
 My hevynes encreasith more and more.' 4958
- Ther anon) the mayde lucidas 4959  
 Comfortid hir in aft that euer she myght ;  
 Ser ysores be that tyme come was,  
 Sir Ysores 4962  
 dismounted in  
 great pain,  
 And with grete payne down) of his hors light ;  
 and told her 4965  
 what Generydes  
 had said.  
 To his suster he toke the way full right,  
 Rehersyng' euery word) bothe more and lesse,  
 Whiche he shuld telle hir fro Generides.
- And whanne Serenydes wist hym) so nere, 4966  
 God wote she was a wofull creature,  
 withoute eny comfort or eny *maner* chere,

- Trostyng<sup>1</sup> vppon<sup>2</sup> noo better aventure, 4969  
ffor of his frendshippe cowde she not be sure.  
And so furth on to telle yow ferthermore,  
Añ way the bateñ lastid passing<sup>1</sup> sore. 4972
- Off euery side grete pepiñ were slayn), 4973  
And moche grounde of *ser* Amelok<sup>1</sup> thei wanne ;  
Ser Dareñ with a spere vppon<sup>2</sup> the playn)  
Come rideng<sup>1</sup> on, and to an erle he ranne, 4976  
Born<sup>1</sup> in europe, his name was Ioatan,  
And in serteyn), be writeng<sup>1</sup> as I knowe,  
Both hors with the Erle was ouer throwe. 4979
- Syr Dareñ toke with hym<sup>1</sup> his stede ; 4980  
With that anon<sup>1</sup> his knyghtes were redy,  
hym<sup>1</sup> to reskew thei made hasty spede ;  
A long<sup>1</sup> the Citee Dareñ rode by and by, 4983  
Vppon<sup>2</sup> A towre ther with he cast his yee,  
And [on] that towre he sawe a mayde sittyng<sup>1</sup>,  
Right Inly fayre she was to his semyng<sup>1</sup>. 4986
- And thanne he callid Sygrem furth with añ,  
'Segrem,' he saide, 'now for the loue of me,  
Of on<sup>1</sup> thyng telle me in especiall,  
A gentilwoman that I yonder see, 4990  
What that she is, sey me the certente ;'  
'Ser,' quod Sygrem, 'the soth I wiñ not layn),  
Ser Amelok is hir fader in certayn) ; 4993
- And she is callid good in euery place, 4994  
Of hir maners soft and eke demure.'  
Thanne saide Dareñ, 'trewly this is the case,  
My seruice she shañ haue I yow ensure, 4997  
ffor me thinkith hir a goodly creature ;  
And yet I drede Generides therfore,  
lest he ther with will be displeasid sore.' 5000

Many people were  
slain on each side.

Sir Darell  
overthrew Ioatan,

and took his  
horse,

and as he rode  
along the city  
he saw a maiden  
on a tower,

right fair as he  
thought.

Then he called  
Sygrem,  
[leaf 27]

and asked who  
she was.  
'To tell the truth

she is the  
daughter of Sir  
Amelok.'

'She shall have  
my service,'  
quoth Darell,

'but I fear  
Generydes.'

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Amelek*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *A vppon*.

- 'Doubt not,'  
said Sygrem,  
  
'for he doth not  
hate her.'
- 'Syr,' *quod* Sygrem, 'dought not in this case, 5001  
If he loue not hir fader by noo maner waye,  
In trowth yet hate[t]h he not lucydas.  
'Why, Who is that?' *quod* he, 'I prae yow say.' 5004  
It is the mayde,' *quod* he, 'ye sawe to day,  
And if ye wilt I shañ a token bere  
To hir anon, and bryng' a trew answe're.' 5007
- 'That I beseche yow hartely,' he saide ; 5008  
And ther with añ he delyueryd hym a ryng',  
Darell then gave  
him a ring to  
carry to Lucidas,  
'Goo now,' *quod* he, 'to lucydas that mayde,  
With this tokyn and make noo taryeng', 5011  
And do your' massaage wele in euery thing'.  
Whanne he hadde told hym añ his erand playn),  
and went back  
to the feld,  
In to the feld he returnyd hym ageyn, 5014
- And in the thikkeste prece of añ the place 5015  
he bare down Ananyeh, hors and añ,  
and unhorsed  
Ananyell,  
who was uncle  
to Lucidas.  
She saw it,  
The whiche was vnkyñ onto lucydas ;  
She saw añ that stondeng' vppon the wañ, 5018  
Thanne thought she this, what thing' y' euer fañ  
Shañ noman think but that I do very right,  
Though I besette my loue on suche a knyght. 5021
- Thanne sayde she to hir moder in this wise ; 5022  
and asked her  
mother,  
'Which is  
Generydes ?  
I think it is he  
with the black  
steed.  
'wote ye whiche is generides ?' *quod* she :  
'As ferre furth as I canne device,  
his stede is blak, me think the same is he ; 5025  
A noble knyght is he, in very certente :  
And o thing shañ I telle yow that is trew,  
Myn owen vnkiñ now he ouer threw. 5028
- But there is  
another knight  
on a white steed.  
Ther is,' *quod* she, 'another knyght also, 5029  
his stede is whight, this wote I for certayn),  
In añ the ost suerly ther is no moo,

- That in knyghtwoode Are like to them twayn.' 5032  
 Thanne to hir answerd Serenydes ayeyn,  
 'Ah that is sothe,' she saide, 'and as for me,  
 Yett of them bothe I wote not whiche is he. 5035
- 'I know not  
 which of the  
 two he is,'  
 said Serenydes.
- But as for hym namyd first of all, 5036  
 I shaH declare yow trewly myn entent,  
 With that ther myght be made a pece fenyath,  
 And bothe partes beyng' of on assent, 5039  
 Whiche in this case were full conuenient,  
 And if it myght be soo thanne wold I fayn  
 The mariage were made betwix yow twayn.' 5042
- In this mene while that she these wordes seid, 5043  
 Come Sygrem vppe and founde them sittyng';  
 Whanne she hym sawe thanne was she wele apayd:  
 'Sygrem,' she saide, 'canne ye telle me eny thing,  
 Whiche are the knyghtes of auferius the kyng?' 5044  
 'Ye, ye, madame,' [quod he] 'soo mote I goo,  
 I know Generides and other moo. 5049
- Meanwhile  
 Sygrem came  
 up,  
  
 and she asked him  
 of the king's  
 knights.
- And if ye wiH haue knowlache whiche is he, 5050  
 he wiH come here anon be fore your sight,  
 his stede is white, this is the certente ;  
 With hym ther is also, I yow be hight, 5053  
 Another man whiche is a worthy knyght ;  
 his stede is blak, and therto Wight and good,  
 hym self also is come of right noble blode. 5056
- 'Generydes is he  
 with the white  
 steed,  
  
 but there is a  
 knight on a black  
 one,
- Hys fader is a man of grete estate, 5057  
 And p[r]ince of Cesare by his enheritaunce,  
 A famose man, and alway fortenate  
 In euery thing' his honour shuld Auaunce ; 5060  
 Now haue I told yow all the circumstaunce.'  
 'What is the knyghtes name?' quod she ayeyn ;  
 'Ser DareH he hight,' quod he, 'this is certayn.' 5063
- Sir Darell.

- Lucidas blushed  
a little,  
and Serenydes  
pretended not  
to notice.  
As they were  
going, Sygrem  
whispered  
Lucydas,  
and gave her  
the ring.  
She hesitated  
about taking it
- Whanne lucidas had hard hym) euery dele, 5064  
Anon) she wex a litih rede with aH,  
Serenydes perseyuyd it full wele,  
She let as though she knew noo thyng' At Ah, 5067  
And ther with aH she rose vp fro the wait ;  
And as thei <sup>1</sup> were remevyng' fro the place,  
ffull sustely <sup>2</sup> Sygrem callid lucydas, 5070  
And furth with aH delyueryd hir the ryng, 5071  
Wherwith in sothe she was right wele apayde,  
Yet made she danger in the reseuyng,  
Of his massage she was sumwhat dismayde, 5074  
And soberly to Sygrem) thus she saide :  
'Ryng ne Writeng', as I remember canne,  
I neuer yet reseuyd of noo gentilman) : 5077
- [leaf 27, back]
- Butt this I trost, in his grete gentilnes, 5078  
That his desire suerly and his entent  
Is only me yn honour' to encrease,  
And in that wise this ryng' that he me sent, 5081  
It to resevue I am right wele content.'
- but did so,  
and gave him  
another,
- And so she toke the ryng' in this maner,  
And gave Segrym) another for to bere. 5084
- which Sygrem
- Now is Sygrem departid on) his way 5085  
ffrom) lucidas, his erande for to do,  
In to the feld as fast as euer he may,  
To ser DareH withoute wordes eny moo, 5088  
his tokyn) ther he delyueryd to hym) Also ;  
Whanne he it had he was right wele apayde,  
And to Sygrem full curtesly he sayde ; 5091
- who thanked him,
- 'Ser,' quod he, 'I thank yow right hertely 5092  
Of your' good wiH and trew seruice,  
And one thyng' I yow ensure verily,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ther*.<sup>2</sup> ? *softly*.

- The first stede that I wyne in eny wise, 5095 and promised him  
 It shalbe your', and that I yow promes ; the first horse he  
 So furth he gothe in to the feld anon, should win.
- And rode a course onto kyng' lamedon). 5098 He rode at King  
 Lamedon,
- Anone thei mette to geder in the feld, 5099  
 Ther with *ser* Dareh saw his lady fre,  
 he smote kyng' lamedon vpon the sheld,  
 And suche a stroke he gave hym with a spere, 5102  
 That hors and man bothe atte grownde were ; and brought  
 And ther kyng' lamedon his stede he lost, horse and man  
 Ser Dareh hym toke and led hym to his ost 5105 to the ground.
- Callyng' anon to his remembraunce, 5106  
 What fult promys he had made before,  
 Vnto Sygrem for his trew attendaunce, 5109 The horse he  
 That he shuld be rewarid wele therefore, gave to Sygrem.
- And to Sygrem, I say yow forthermore,  
 he gave that stede withoute more taryeng',  
 The whiche he wanne of lamedon the kyng'. 5112
- Vpon the towre on highe stode lucidas, 5113 Lucidas saw all  
 And saw all this to hir grete plesaunce ; this, to her great  
 Serenydes perseivid hough it was, delight.
- She seide noo word, nor made no contenaunce. 5116  
 And so furth on, to telh yow the substaunce,  
 The bateh stih endure[d] to And fro,  
 Moche pepyht slayn And Alway moo And moo. 5119
- Kyng' lamedon, of whom ye hard me speke, 5120 King Lamedon  
 Was sette all now appon anothe[r]<sup>1</sup> stede, mounted another  
 To that entent he wold hym hym self A wreke, horse and rode  
 And to Generides he ranne in dede ; 5123 at Generides,
- Ther hors came on with suche a spede,  
 And sothely, atte first encownteryng',  
 Generides strake lamedon the kyng' 5126 who smote him

<sup>1</sup> MS. originally *A stede*, but *anothe[r]* is written above.

- to the brain,  
so that he  
fell dead. Thorough the hede streyght in to the brayn; 5127  
The kyng' was dede withynne a litih space,  
ffor hym was made grete hevynes certayn,  
And for to tell yow certayn as it was, 5130  
Whanne he was dede they stode in hevny case ;  
Thei lost the feld, and fled atte last  
In to the Citee, and shette the gateg fast. 5133
- His side then  
fled to the city. Thanne thei withoute the tentys vppe y<sup>e</sup>l pight, 5134  
Eche after other streight abowt the town,  
In all the hast possibih that thei myght ;  
And first of All, the kynges pavilion 5137  
Set for the kyng' and ther vppon a crown);  
Engyins grete were purveyd for the nonys,  
To breke the wallys with casting' of stonyis. 5140
- and set up engines  
to break down  
the walls. And whih that thei besegid the Cite, 5141  
These lordes and these knyghtes euerychone,  
Ther cam tidengys in very certente,  
Vnto Guynan the kyng' be many on), 5144  
hough in to ynde Generides is gon),  
With meche people and many a nobyht knyght  
To helpe the kyng' his fader in his right. 5147
- While they be-  
sieged the city. Thanne in to perse purposith he to goo, 5148  
his faders deth to venge if<sup>1</sup> that he myght,  
And of Clarionas he thought also,  
hir to haue he thought it was his right, 5151  
he made a massinger redy day and nyght  
Vnto ser Amelok, And hye hym fast  
Streyght in to ynde in All the possible hast. 5154
- He sent to  
Sir Amelok, bidding htm  
hold out, and  
he would come  
to his rescue. ' Goo now to Amelok, and byd hym kepe hym close,  
That in noo wise he stere not to And fro,  
And kepe hym owt of daunger of his foys,

<sup>1</sup> MS. of.

- ffor with myn ost streight to perse I wiþ goo, 5158  
 To wynne the Sowdon and his land Also ;  
 ffro thense I wiþ into ynd without fey[n]ing,  
 And reskew hym from Auferius the kyng! 5161
- Now goth the messenger on his viage 5162  
 Streight in to ynd, withoute more taryeng,  
 And to ser Amelok seide his message,  
 Whiche likid hym right wele in euery thyng, 5165  
 And very glad he was of his comyng :  
 Grete chere also made quene Serenydes,  
 ffor she purposid wele to leve in pece. 5168
- Thañ furth with aþ quod she to lucidas, 5169  
 ‘Telle me, daughter, of very frendlehede,  
 What Sygrem seid, and what his massage was,  
 And as longith to my womanhede,’ 5172  
 With thoo wordes she wexe a litiff rede ;  
 ‘Madame,’ quod she, ‘if it please yow to here,  
 I shaþ teþ yow the trowth of this mater. 5175
- There is a knyght of good and noble fame, 5176  
 In very trowth hath sent me here a ryng,  
 ffor noo slaunder ne hurt onto my name,  
 Butt to wurchippe in aþ his demeaneng, 5179  
 And myn honour above aþ other thing,  
 This is his wiþ and his desire certayn.’  
 Thanne seid Serenydes to hir ayeyn, 5182
- ‘What is the knyghtes name ? now teþ it me.’ 5183  
 ‘Trewly, Madame,’ quod she, ‘ser Dareþ he high[t],  
 And of Cesare the prince sonne is he,<sup>1</sup>  
 Of his handis callid a noble knyght, . 5186  
 And ayre to his lande, I yow be hight ;  
 Now haue I told yow aþ the circumstance,  
 I prae yow take it to no displeasaunce.’ 5189

The messenger  
 came to Sir  
 Amelok,

[leaf 28]  
 who was glad  
 of his coming.

Serenydes asks  
 Lucidas what  
 Sygrem said.

She blushed,  
 and told her of

Sir Darell and  
 his ring.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *he is*.



## SHE BEGS CLARIONAS' RING OF GENERYDES.

- 'Therof,' *quod* she, 'dowte ye neuer a dele, 5190  
 Butt my conseite wiþ I telle yow playne,  
 ' If he love you,'  
 said Serenydes,  
 ' let him get  
 If it be so that he love yow so well,  
 ye shaþ right sone haue knowlage in *sertayne*, 5193  
 your' pleasur' to *perfourme* he wiþ be fayn);  
 Send for Sygrem,' *quod* she, ' that he may goo  
 To *ser* Dareþ your' erand for to do. 5196
- And as he owith yow feith and trew *seruice*, 5197  
 That of Generides he wiþ purchase  
 A ryng' of gold, in eny *maner* wise,  
 ' a gold ring  
 from Generydes  
 which Clarionas  
 gave him.  
 Whiche he in perse had of Clarionas ; 5200  
 Why and wherefore I shaþ tell you y<sup>e</sup> cause,  
 I haue a frende, a full seke creature,  
 I have a sick  
 friend  
 Grete payn of ache allway he doþ endure. 5203
- And by a vision) it come hym too, 5204  
 he shuld be hoole if he the ryng' myght haue ;  
 And for certayn) it were grete pite also,  
 That he soo soone were dolvyn) in his grave, 5207  
 If suche a ryng' myght hym) socour' And save.  
 ffor the whiche daughter I yow require,  
 Send for Sygrem and tender this mater.' 5210
- To hir anon) Answerd lucidas ayeyn), 5211  
 Whiche in this mater was full Innocente ;  
 'Madame,' *quod* she, ' I wiþ putt to my payn),  
 In that I canne to folow your' entente.' 5214  
 ' Lucidas sent  
 Sygrem to Sir  
 Darell to borrow  
 the ring.  
 Sygrem anon) on) this message was sent,  
 And to *ser* Dareþ dede his grande soo,  
 The ryng' to borow withoute wordes moo. 5217
- As for *ser* Dareþ he thought noo thyng Amys, 5218  
 Nor he that brought the ryng', but wote ye what ?  
 full ofte it hath be seide, and trew it is,

- ffalshede and trougth is euer atte debate : 5221  
 And yet Sygrem was aHway fortenate ;  
 ffor lucidas, whanne he brought hir the ryng',  
 Gave hym a mantell of hir owne weryng'. 5224
- nor Sygrem,  
to whom Lucidas  
gave a mantle  
when he brought  
the ring.
- Serenides perseivid be the ryng', 5225  
 hir prayour was obseruyd and obeyde,  
 And furth with aH withoute more taryeng',  
 She callid lucidas, and this she saide ; 5228  
 'Doughter,' quod she, 'I am right wele apayde,  
 ffor now I wote ye haue chose you a man,  
 That will please yow in aH that euer he canne. 5231
- And fayre doughter,' quod she, 'this I yow prae, 5232  
 As late me see the facyon of that ryng'.  
 'Madame,' quod she, 'ye wote right wele alway,  
 I haue not disobeyde yow in noo thing';' 5235  
 And from a lose anon ther as it hyng',  
 Be cause she wold in no wise her displese,  
 She toke the ryng onto Serenydes. 5238
- and begged to  
see the ring,  
which Lucidas  
gave up to her.
- Whanne she it hadde thanne was she wele content,  
 And callid furth on) of hir Acqueyntaunce,  
 Suche on) as wold do after hir entent, 5242  
 And brought vppe was vnder hir gouernaunce,  
 A man that cowde hym self right wele avaunce,  
 And born he was, the story seith the same,  
 In Ethiope, and Gusare was his name. 5245
- She then called  
one of her  
acquaintance,
- Gusare,
- Ther with aH right this to hym she sayde ; 5246  
 'On my massage,' quod she, 'now must ye goo  
 ffurth in to perse, and this may not be nayde,  
 And ye shaH bere with you this ryng' Also.' 5249  
 'Madame,' quod he, 'your pleasure for to doo,  
 I wold be glad in eny maner wise,  
 To ryde or goo ye shaH haue my seruice.' 5252
- and sent him  
to Persia,  
to carry the ring  
to Clarionas,

- 'Gusare,' quod she, 'in sothe this is the case, 5253  
 [leaf 28, back] haue here a ryng<sup>r</sup> and kepe it stiH opece,  
 To the tyme that ye come onto Clarionas,  
 ffor she it gave on to Generides; 5256  
 that she might break the love between her and Generides.  
 The love of them) is grete, but,<sup>1</sup> neuer the lese,  
 I wold ther were a variaunce full fayn,  
 So that the love were broke betwix them) twayn). 5259
- By this meane my pece I may purchase, 5260  
 And other wise I trow it wiH not be,  
 If ye do wele your' labour' in this case,  
 ffor your' rewarde yow shaH wele know and se, 5263  
 That ye shaH haue A cause to praye for me.'  
 'Madame,' quod he, 'this shaH be don) right wele,  
 In this mater dowte ye neuer a dele.' 5266
- Falshede and gile is now togeder mett, 5267  
 In A persone to awayte ther Avauntage.  
 vppon) han) hors [Gusare]<sup>2</sup> hym) self was sett,  
 And rideth into perse on) his massage. 5270  
 When Gusare came to Persia he met a poor palmer,  
 Whanne he come ther he mett in his viage  
 A pore palmer, goth in sympiH gise;  
 To hym) anon) he sayde right in this wise: 5273
- and asked him where the Sultan was.  
 'At Mountoner,' said he, 'Now good fader, what contre come ye fro?' 5274  
 'firo Mountoner,' quod he, 'the redy waye.'  
 'Good ser,' quod he, 'now or ye farther goo,  
 Where lith,' he seide, 'the Sowdon? I yow praye.'  
 'I left hym) ther,' quod he, 'as yesterday;  
 A grete people surely with hym) ther was,  
 'with Clarionas.' And his daughter also, fayre Clarionas.' 5280
- 'And where is Generides?'  
 'He's gone to India to maintain his father's right.'  
 'Where is now hir love, Generides?' 5281  
 'he is furth into ynd,' quod he, 'certayn);  
 his faderys right to maynteyne and encrease,

- ffor ther shaft he be lord and souereyn.' 5284  
 'ffader,' quod he, 'of on) thyng' yet ageyn,  
 This wold I vnderstonde in myne entent,  
 What token he gave hir whanne he went?' 5287  
'What token did  
 he leave with  
 her?'
- 'In sothe,' quod he, 'that canne I tell some dele; 5288  
 Whanne he departid owt of the Citee,  
 With hir he left, I am remembryd wele,  
 A lityff dogge, and ther ye may hym see.' 5291  
'A little dog,'  
 said the palmer.  
 'ffader,' he seide, 'do now sum what for me;  
 we ij wolle chaunge our' clothyng' or we goo.'  
 Quod the palmer, 'I gree me wele therto.' 5294  
They change  
 clothes,
- Now is Gusare weff onward on) his way, 5295  
 And gave the palmer money largely;  
 To mountoner he came the redy way,  
 Ther was brought tydengez sekerly, 5298  
and Gusare came  
 to Mountoner,  
 and heard of  
 Gwynan's  
 invasion.  
 That Gwynan was enteryd certaynly  
 Into the lande of perse withoute eny delay,  
 ffor to make a feld and wyne it by bateff. 5301
- And so furth on) to say yow ferthermore, 5302  
 Gusare is now as besy as he may,  
 To do that he had promys[ed] before;  
 And as the palmer went in his Arraye, 5305  
He goes to a  
 temple where the  
 Sultan and  
 Clarionas were,  
 So goth Gusare, and toke the [redy] way  
 Into A tempiff, wheare as the Sowdon was,  
 With hym ther was also Clarionas. 5308
- On his fynger the ryng' anon) he sett, 5309  
 And in the temple purveid hym) A place  
 Among' the prese, for no man) wold he let  
 That he myght stonde before clarionas; 5312  
and puts the  
 ring on his finger,  
 and posted  
 himself so that  
 Clarionas might  
 see him.  
 And ther he stode as for a certeyn) space,  
 The ryng' vppon) his fynger for to shewe,  
 She sawe the ryng' and saide butt wordez fewe. 5315  
When she saw  
 the ring

- Yet in hir self she was gretly dismayde, 5316  
 And ther with all she chaungyd countenance ;  
 MyrabyH sawe it wele, and this she saide,  
 'Madame, ye haue som) cawse of displesaunce ; 5319  
 I prae yow, tell me what is your' grevaunce.'  
 'That shaft ye knowe,' quod she, 'withoute fayle,  
 And wele I wote therof ye wiH mervell. 5322
- 'I saw a palmer  
 in the presse,  
 with a ring on  
 his finger,  
 which I gave to  
 Generydes.'
- I saw a palmer stondeng' in the prese, 5323  
 On) his finger,' quod she, 'ther is a ryng',  
 The whiche I gave,' quod she, ' onto Generides,  
 And to non) other creature that is levyng'. 5326  
 'Madame,' quod she, 'that is a wonder thing',  
 yet for All that dismay yow neuer a dele,  
 ye shaft se all this shalbe right weH ; 5329
- 'I will bring  
 him to your  
 chamber,'  
 said Mirabell ;
- For I myself wiH speke with hym,' quod she ; 5330  
 'To your' chaumber I shaft hym) bryng' anon),  
 Ther shaft yow fele and knowe the certente,  
 In very trougth if it be so or noo.' 5333  
 So her vppon Mirabell is gon),  
 And taryd not, but as hir commandement was,  
 She brought the palmer vnto Clarionas. 5336
- and the palmer  
 came,
- Whanne he hir sawe, he knelyd on) his kne, 5337  
 'Madame,' quod he, 'take ye not in diedayne  
 Of on) fortune, whiche wiH non) other be,  
 ffor in this case to yow I wiH be playn) ; 5340  
 Generides is weddid in certeyn),  
 It passith not a fourthnyght siths it was,  
 To Amelokkez doughter lucydas. 5343
- and told her that  
 Generydes was  
 married to  
 Lucydas
- [leaf 29]  
 against his will,
- It was ayenst his wiH in euery thing, 5344  
 The cause was suche that he myght not say nay,  
 his fader chargyd hym) on his blissyng',

- That pece myght be apoyntid for alway, 5347 to make peace.  
 If y<sup>e</sup> trost not the wordes that I say,  
 here is a ryng<sup>t</sup> whiche he sent yow be me,  
 ye gave it hym<sup>n</sup> in very certente. 5350  
 'Here is the ring  
 you gave him.
- And ferthermore also he chargid me, 5351 And he charged  
 To late you wete and suerly vnderstonde, me to let you  
 That ye may now stonde att your<sup>t</sup> liberte,  
 To wedde where euer ye wiht in eny lande.' 5354 know that you  
 were free to wed.'
- Whanne she herd that noo lenger myght she stond,  
 Butt downe she felle swoninge for very payn<sup>n</sup> ;  
 Mirabeht ranne and toke hir vppe ageyn<sup>n</sup>, 5357 Clarionas fell  
 down in a swoon.
- Comfortyng<sup>t</sup> hir in aht that euer she myght, 5358  
 And whanne that she was recoueryd vp ayeyn<sup>n</sup>,  
 To hym<sup>n</sup> that brought the ryng<sup>t</sup> she went right,  
 And in noo wise she cowde not hir refrayn<sup>n</sup>, 5361  
 And smote the ryng<sup>t</sup> owt of his handes twayn<sup>n</sup> ;  
 Aht sodenly the ryng<sup>t</sup> from<sup>n</sup> hym<sup>n</sup> was gone,  
 With that Mirabeht toke it uppe anon<sup>n</sup>, 5364 she smote the ring  
 out of Gusare's  
 hands,  
 and Mirabell  
 picked it up.
- And putte the ryng<sup>t</sup> in full sure kepyng<sup>t</sup>. 5365  
 Thanne saide Gusare onto Clarionas,  
 'Madame,' quod he, 'I haue forgete a thing<sup>t</sup>,  
 Whiche I shuld say as I commaundid was, 5368  
 Ye haue a litiht dog<sup>t</sup>, this is the case ;  
 My charge was this to telh yow euery dele,  
 In eny wise that ye shuld kepe hym<sup>n</sup> wele.' 5371  
 Gusare then asked  
 for the dog,
- 'As for the dog<sup>t</sup>,' quod she, 'here it ys ; 5372  
 I wiht noo lenger kepe it sekerly,  
 Nor no thing<sup>t</sup> that I may knowe was his.'  
 To hym<sup>n</sup> she threw the dog<sup>t</sup> full hastely, 5375 which Clarionas  
 threw to him,  
 but Mirabell  
 caught it.  
 With that Mirabeht kaughit it sodenly ;  
 'Thow shalt nomore,' quod she, 'come in his way,  
 ffor lucidas with the shaht neuer playe, 5378

- And I will haue the att myn owen device.' 5379  
 Whanne Gusare saw that ther was non other<sup>1</sup> way,  
 he toke his leue anon in hasty wise,  
 Gusare then returned to India,  
 and Clarionas to her chamber,  
 And so departid vpon his Iurnay, 5382  
 Ayeyn to ynd as fast as euer he may.  
 Clarionas is to the chaumber gone,  
 With syghys depe and thoughtes many on), 5385
- a wofull woman. A wofull woman full of hevynes, 5386  
 Generides alway now remembryng,  
 Complayneng' gretly of his vnstabilnes,  
 Of wheche he was not gilty in noo thyng'; 5389
- Mirabell thought  
 there was treason. And so Myrabell alway demyng'  
 Of this mater to vnderstonde it wele,  
 That it was do be treson euery dele. 5392
- When the Sultan heard of it he came to his daughter's chamber,  
 and asked what was amiss. And whanne the Sowdon hard of y<sup>is</sup> array, 5393  
 And hough his daughter toke suche a hevynes,  
 To hir chaumber he toke the redy waye,  
 As nature wold and also gentilnes, 5396  
 And fond hir in hir bed in grete distresse ;  
 'Doughter,' quod he, 'ther is some thing' amys,  
 What euer it be now tell me what it is.' 5399
- 'My lord,' quoth she, 'Generydes is false,  
 and married to Lucidas.' 'My lord,' quod she, 'plese it yow to vnderstonde,  
 ye gaue me onys onto Generides  
 In mariage, with half your lande ;  
 Now is he false alas, an[d] cawseles 5403  
 With hym ser Amelok hath made his pece,  
 And trewly accordid in euery case,  
 ffor he is weddid vnto lucidas.' 5406
- 'This aventure,' quod he, 'is passing' new, 5407  
 And as me think a very wonder thing';  
 'But is it true?' Butt wote ye verily that it is trew ?'

<sup>1</sup> MS. eyer.

- ‘Ye, ye, my lord,’ *quod* she, ‘withoute feyning’; 5410 ‘Yea, yea, my  
And ferthermore he sent me here a ryng’, lord, here is  
That I gave hym in very certente, the ring;
- Where by I wote it may non other be.’ 5413 it cannot be  
otherwise.’
- To his doughter the Sowdon gave answer, 5414 The Sultan  
‘Who wold,’ *quod* he, ‘have thought in suche a knyght, marvelled that  
That he wold be ontrew in this mater? Generydes should  
be so untrue,
- A grete mervell to here, I yow be hight, 5417
- ffor this is do [a]yest all maner right,  
And if he shew yow suche onkyndnes,  
yet for all that take ye noo hevynes, 5420
- For I wil purvey for yow another waye, 5421 but, said he,
- And moche better as after myn entent;  
kyng Gwynan wold be glad, I dare well say,  
That he and I shuld make apoy[n]te]ment 5424 ‘Gwynan will  
be glad,
- Betwix yow twayne, and if ye wil assent, and if you  
will assent,
- That mariage, I cowde wele vnderstonde, 5427 we may make  
a final peace.’
- Clarionas seide neuer a worde ageyn, 5428 Clarionas said  
never a word,  
The whiche Mirabell liked neuer a dele; but Mirabell  
told the Sultan
- To the Sowdon than spake she wordes playn, 5431
- ‘My lord,’ *quod* she, ‘as ferre as I canne fele,  
In this mater I canne think but wele;  
And well I wote that he is suche a knyght,  
he wil not breke that he hath onys behight.’ 5434
- ‘Now, good Mirabell,’ *quod* Clarionas, 5435
- ‘ye wote right wele he sent me here a ryng.’  
‘In very tought, madame, and trew it is;  
Butt this I wote as wele as eny thing’, 5438 [leaf 29, back]  
All that he saide,’ *quod* she, ‘it is lesyng.’  
The Sowdon toke good hede of þ<sup>t</sup> she saide,  
Of hir wordes he was right wele apayde. 5441 It was all false.  
The Sultan took  
heed of her words,  
and was well  
pleased.



- 'What is best  
to be done,  
Mirabell?' 'What think yow best, MirabeH?' thanne quod he,  
'That shuld be do as towchyng' this mater?'  
'Trewly,' quod she, 'the best that I canne se,  
late me go furth and be the messanger; 5445  
And whanne I come ayeyn) thanne shaft ye here  
The very trougth, and trew as it is  
Doo as ye list, for this is myn) avise I wis. 5448
- But if I go,  
promise to put  
off the marriage Iff I shaft goo, of one thing' I yow praye, 5449  
That I may haue a surance or I passe,  
The mariage to putte in delay  
between my lady  
and Gwynan.' Betwix my lady here, Clarionas, 5452  
And kyng Gwynan, rehersid here in this case,  
And att my comyng' home ye shaft wele know  
Aft other maner tidynges as I trow.' 5455
- The Sultan  
assented,  
and she went  
off to India Too hir desire the Sowdon) seid not nay, 5456  
And furth with gave hir license for to goo;  
In to the reame of ynde she toke hir way,  
with two squires  
and two pages. With hir ther went ij squyers and noo mo, 5459  
Save ij pages to kepe ther horses also,  
On hir Iurnay to kepe the way full right,  
In AH the hast possible that she myght. 5462
- Generides in  
his sleep dreamed  
that the Sultan  
and his daughter  
came to him,  
complaining sore  
that his promise  
was not kept, Now I shaft telle yow hough befelle y<sup>e</sup> case; 5463  
Generides was dremyd in his sleppe,  
hym) thought the Sowdon) and Clarionas  
Come hand in hand, and she with sighys depe 5466  
Complayned sore, and first beganne to wepe,  
And thanne anon) the Sowdon) to hym) spake,  
'Awake,' quod he, 'Generides awake! 5469
- and that he had  
taken Thy promys is not kept that thow behight, 5470  
And namely to my doughter and to me,  
for thu hast take, ayenst aft maner right,

- Another wiff in very certente, 5473 another wife.  
 By tresone colour' vnder a suerte.'  
 Thanne seid Clarionas, 'geve me my ring',  
 ffor suerly I wiſſ haue Gwynan the kyng'. 5476  
 'Give me my ring,' said Clarionas,  
 'for I will marry Gwynan.'
- After all this hym thought Gwynan y<sup>e</sup> kyng' 5477  
 In to Egipte shuld lede Clarionas :  
 Thanne came Mirabeſſ as she was goyng',  
 And toke hir from him' as hir fortune was ; 5480  
 he awoke and of this soden case,  
 To Dareſſ and to Natanell all in fere,  
 Of his dremys he told them the mater. 5483  
 When he awoke he told Darell and Natanell.
- Syr Dareſſ, as sone as he hard of y<sup>e</sup> ryng', 5484  
 his hart anon) mysgave hym furth with all,  
 hym thought som) tresone was ymagenyng,<sup>1</sup>  
 And fayn he wold haue wist what was fall ; 5487  
 Vppon Sygrem anon) he beganne to calle,  
 Whanne he was come he told hem) mor And lesse,  
 Of all the dreme of Generides. 5490  
 and he called Sygrem,
- ' Now, good Sygrem, I prae yow goo,' quod hee, 5491  
 ' To lucidas and speke for the ryng',  
 Besechyng' hir that she wiſſ send it me,  
 As euer I may do for hir eny thing'. 5494  
 ' Ser,' quod Sygrem, ' I say withoute feyning',  
 I wiſſ do your' massage and see what she wiſſ say,  
 And bryng' ayeyn) the ryng' if that ye may.' 5497  
 and sent him to Lucidas to get the ring again.
- Thanne went Sygrem the way to lucidas, 5498  
 ffrom) ser Dareſſ to telle his erande playn),  
 In euery thyng' rehersid here the case,  
 And specially to haue the ryng' Ayeyn), 5501  
 It was his desire and his comyng' certayn).  
 Vppon this anon) she gave an answer,  
 ' I shaft,' quod she, ' speke for this mater.' 5504

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ymagenyd*.

- and she to her  
mother, To hir moder anon) with all she gothe, 5505  
And tenderly she prayde here for the ryng,  
Butt lucidas wheder she was lefe or lothe,
- but could not  
get it, She cowde not haue it for no maner thyng, 5508  
So partyd she and gretly complayneng,  
Right grete vnkyndnes she thought also,  
That vnder trost she shuld be seruyd so. 5511
- and went her  
way back to  
Sygrem. And whanne she sawe it wold non) other be, 5512  
ffull hevilly she went hir way ayeyn,  
'I shaH telle yow the trowth, Sygrem,' quod she,  
This ryng' wilH nott be goten) for certayn,<sup>1</sup> 5515  
I haue both) lost my labour' and payn,
- 'There is some  
treason, I pro-  
mise you, And wele I wote it is not all a right,  
ffor some tresone ther is I yow behight. 5518
- and Darell will  
bear the blame. And all I trow be for Generides, 5519  
I canne well) think that Darell shaH bere y<sup>e</sup> name  
Of this vnhappy werk, yet neuer the lese  
Right wele I wote that he is not to blame ; 5522  
And I suppose ye wilH reporte the same :
- But tell him Butt this I prae yow hartely,' quod she, 5525  
'Do my message as sone as ye hym) see,
- that Gwynan  
is gone to  
Persia to destroy  
the Sultan and  
his land. And say I send hym) word this in sertayn) ; 5526  
Gwynan the kyng' is gon), I vnderstonde,  
ffourth in to perse, and his erande is playn),  
The Sowdon) to distroye and his land : 5529  
It to perfourme he hath) made full) covenauant.
- Beg him to get  
leave to go to  
[leaf 30]  
Persia, Now, good Sygrem, I prae yow say hym) soo,  
And that he gete hym) licence for to goo 5532
- where he will  
hear tidings of  
the ring, Furth in to perse withoute more taryeng, 5533  
And say hym) suerly this is myn) avice,  
Ther shaH he here some tidynges of the ryng,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *certente*.

- And whoo that take on hym that enterprise, 5536  
 hough it was brought about, and in what wise,  
 And he most dele with all so sekerly,  
 That no man knowe it save he and ye and I.' 5539 but he must deal  
secretly.'
- Now goth Sygrem, and noo thyng well apayd, 5540 Sygrem meets  
Darell,  
 he mette ser Darell rideng on the playn,  
 And told hym all that lucidas had seide ;  
 hough he had lost his labour and his payn, 5543 and tells him  
all that Lucidas  
had said.  
 And hough the ryng wold not be gotten ageyn ;  
 Whanne he had hard all this yan was he wroth,  
 And to Generides anon he gothe. 5546 As soon as he  
heard all,
- ' I pray yow, ser, now geve me leve,' quod he, 5547 he asked  
Generydes leave  
to go into Persia  
 ' furth into perse I purpose me<sup>1</sup> to goo,  
 hough it is ther to knowe the certente,  
 ffor I am alway trobolyd to and to ; 5550 to see if his dream  
were true.  
 ffor your dremys right I drede also.'  
 Generides ther of was wele apayde,  
 ' Goo on your way, in goddis name,' he seide, 5553 'Go on your way  
in God's name,
- ' As fast as euer ye may, and com ayeyn, 5554  
 Owt of that lande sum tidynges wold I here ;  
 I pray yow, darell, bryng me word sertayn,  
 And of Clarionas my lady dere.' 5557 and bring me  
some tidings of  
Clarionas.'  
 ' That shall not be for gete in noo maner.'  
 Ser darell toke his leve, and went his way  
 Into the lande of perse, as I yow saye. 5560
- Now is Gusare, that most on happy wight, 5561 Gusare is now  
come out of  
Persia,  
 Out of the lande of perce com<sup>2</sup> into ynd,  
 full fast seching, in all that euer he myght,  
 The redy way Generides to fynde, 5564  
 With new contrivid falshede hym to blynd,  
 In all the hast to seche hym furth he went,  
 And atte [last] he founde hym in his tent. 5567 and goes straight  
with a new lie  
to Generydes,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ne.*      <sup>2</sup> MS. *is com.*

- ' My lord,' *quod* he, ' fro perse now am I come, 5568  
ffro the Sowdon) with tidynges y<sup>t</sup> be there,  
ffor I wi<sup>ll</sup> tel<sup>l</sup> yow playnle a<sup>ll</sup> and som),  
that Clarionas is married to Gwynan.  
Gwynan the kyng<sup>t</sup> is ther *with* grete powre, 5571  
They ben) accordid a<sup>ll</sup> bothe in on) maner,  
The pece is made and cryed in euery place,  
The kyng<sup>t</sup> is weddid on to Clarionas. 5574
- These tydingez sendith yow *ser* Anasore ; 5575  
Anoder erand haue I for to do,  
The dog which Clarionas sent,  
A liti<sup>ll</sup> dog<sup>t</sup> Clarionas hath ther,  
She had I shuld bryng hym) *with* me Also, 5578  
Butte be the tyme I shuld part And goo,  
Thanne shuld I haue brought it *with* me verily,  
he had had taken from him. And it was taken) ayeyn) from me sodenly.' 5581
- Generides hard wele a<sup>ll</sup> that he seide, 5582  
And in hym) self he was abasshed sore,  
Generydes was sore abashed,  
Thanne furth) with a<sup>ll</sup> the message[r] he prayde ;  
and asked when the wedding was. ' Good *ser*,' *quod* he, ' yet telle me ferthermore, 5585  
Whanne she was weddid and hough) [long] before,  
Of your' departeng' sey me the certente.'  
' Ther of I sha<sup>ll</sup> tel<sup>l</sup> yow the trouthe,' *quod* he ; 5588
- ' I come fro thense apoynted as thei were, 5589  
The same day that I left,' said Gusare. The same day thei were weddid full) sekryly ;  
My hast was suche that I myght not be ther,  
To see the rewle and it was trewly.' 5592  
Generides toke it full) hevily,  
In petuose wise complayneng' euer in on),  
Thanne Natane<sup>ll</sup> comfortid) hym) Anon). 5595
- Now let us speak of Mirabell. Off Mirabe<sup>ll</sup> now late vs speke) a while, 5596  
Whiche is reden, in a<sup>ll</sup> that euer she may,  
Into the reme of ynd) full) many A myle ;

- Whanne she came nygh the ende of hir Iurnay, 5599 When she came  
Ther mette she with Darell vppon the waye, near the end of  
A ferde she was in very certente, her journey  
ffor Atte first she wist not yat it was he.<sup>1</sup> 5602 she met Darell,
- Whanne she hym sawe she was right wele apayde, 5603 and was well  
And herd hym speke thanne very glad was she ; pleased.  
'hough doth my lord, the Sowdon, now?' he said,  
'And my lady Clarionas,' quod he, 5606 'How doth my  
'Is she weddid? tell me the very certente.' lord?' said he,  
'Weddid?' quod she, 'nay, nay, I yow ensure, 'and is my lady  
Nor neuer wilbe to non erthely creature, 5609 Clarionas  
'No,' said married?'  
Mirabell,  
'and never will
- Save only on to my lord Generides, 5610 except to  
In whom suerly is all hir fyence, Generydes.  
ffor this I canne yow tell in sothfastnes,  
ffull seldom is he owt of hir remembraunce, 5613  
And as for eny new<sup>2</sup> founden Acqueyntaunce,  
Ther is noo suche, I saye yow feithfully,  
ffor wele I wote she had moche lever dye 5616 She would  
rather die.
- Butt now I prae yow telle me,' quod she, 5617 And now tell me,  
'Generides is he weddid, or noo?' is Generydes  
'Nay,' quod Darell, 'for certayn levith me, married?'  
It came neuer in his thought so for to do ; 5620 'Nay,' said  
Darell,  
And for to say the very trowth Also, 'it never came  
ffor hym I dare wele answere in this case, into his thought.  
he wil non other but fayre Clarionas.' 5623 He will have none  
but Clarionas.'
- 'The pece is not appoynted thanne,' quod she, 5624 [leaf 80, back]  
'Of ser Amelok and of Generides?' 'Then the peace  
'Nay,' quod Darell, 'trewly it wil not be ; is not made  
holde on your way,' quod she, 'stih opece, between Sir  
And sette my lady<sup>3</sup> more in hartes ease ; Amelok and him?'  
ffor on thyng shall I say yow that is sure, 5627 'Nay,' quoth  
Darell.  
Ye shall fynde hir a wofull creature.' 5630 'Hold on your  
way,' said she,  
'and set my  
lady at rest,  
for you will find  
her a woful  
creature.'

<sup>1</sup> MS. she.<sup>2</sup> MS. now.<sup>3</sup> MS. worde.

- 'I will,' said  
Darell,  
'in all the haste  
I can.  
Generides is  
now sad for his  
dream.'
- 'In all the hast,' quod Darell, 'that I canne, 5631  
To hir I will withoute eny more ;  
Generides is now an hevvy man),  
As for a dreme whiche trobelyd hym) full sore, 5634  
No thynge so meche sith he was boore ;  
And wenyng' in his dreme, this is y<sup>e</sup> case,  
kyng' Gwynan had weddid clarionas. 5637
- The Sowdon) was agreyd well therto, 5638  
All hym) thought was trew in euery thing,  
Now may ye tell hym) it is noo thynge' soo,  
And putt Away all this Imagenyng'.' 5641
- They parted,  
he for Persia,<sup>s</sup>  
she for India,  
to seek  
Generides.
- Thanne departid thei and noo taryeng',  
he went to perse and she went to ynd,  
The redy way Generides to fynde. 5644
- Whanne she cam) yer, into y<sup>e</sup> ost she went, 5645  
Generides to seche she ded here payn),  
Atte last she founde hym) in his tente,  
And ther she founde that false Gusare ageyn), 5648  
The messenger, wherof she was full fayne ;  
And bothe here squyers furth with all she prayde,  
'lay on handes on) that false theff,' she saide. 5651
- Whanne he hir saw he drew hym) owt aside, 5652  
hir comyng' theder likid hym) full ill ;  
Mirabeil thanne anon) hym) had asspyde,  
She toke hym) be the hede and held hym) still, 5655  
Thanne on) that knewe hir purpose and will,  
he smote Gusare so harde vppon) the cheke,  
That leche craft hym) nede non) other seeke. 5658
- whom she seized  
by the head.  
One that knew  
her wish  
hit him a blow  
that put him  
beyond the help  
of doctors.
- And ther he dyed withynne a litill stounde, 5659  
Generides had mervell what it ment ;  
As he came owt Mirabeil ther he founde ;
- Generides  
wondered what  
it meant,

- And as sche was comyng inward to his tent, 5662  
 Of hir he was full gladde in his entente,  
 And seid, 'mayde MirabeH, benedicite ;  
 What thyng hath brought yow into this contre ?' 5665 and asked  
MirabeH what  
had brought  
her thither.
- 'I shalH,' quod she, 'telle yow the mater playn), 5666  
 And of my comyng heder all the case ;  
 This fals traytoure that here this day was slayn),  
 he came and told to my lady Clarionas, 5669 She told him  
all Gusare's  
treason,  
 That ye were weddid onto lucidas,  
 And on his fynger ther he brought a ryng',  
 Whiche she gave yow Att your both departyng). 5672 and all about  
the ring
- For all his best from hym I toke the ryng', 5673  
 My lady it forsoke, she was so wroth ;  
 The litiH dog she toke that he shuld bryng' ;  
 Butt as for that, quod she, 'I hadde them both : 5676 and the dog,  
 Now haue I told yow hough the mater goth.'  
 And he hir thankyd right curtesly,  
 And hir rewardid as she was worthy. 5679
- 'As for the ryng', quod she, 'loo here it is ;' 5680  
 And furth with all delyueryd hym the ryng'.  
 Generides knowe wele that it was his ;  
 'This ryng', quod he, 'DareH had in keypyng' : 5683 and gave him  
back the ring.  
 Wherefore, quod he, 'me think it is a wonder thyng,  
 his trouthe I knowe and haue don many a day,  
 The fawte is not in hym I dare wele say. 5686
- Now, fayre myrabeH, go to hir ayeyn), 5687 'Go to her again,  
fair MirabeH,  
 ffor this I canne vnderstonde and fele,  
 She wilH not leve noo tidynges in sertayn),  
 Butt if she here yow speke, this wote I weH ; 5690  
 And yet DareH wilH tell hir euery dele,  
 Yet wilH she geve noo credence I am sure,  
 Butt ye be ther, ellys to noo creature. 5693



and tell her how unkind she is to mistrust me.'	And ferthermore I <i>prae</i> yow telle hir this, Me to mystroste trewly she is vnkynd, ffor o thing <sup>a</sup> shaft I say, and trew it is, Vntrew to hir she shaft me neuer fynde, And this I wiþ remembre in my mende Eche creature of nature hym delitith, That on <sup>b</sup> good turne another quytitil. <sup>c</sup>	5694      5697   5700
At this Mirabell took her leave.	With these wordes Mirabell ganne to smyle, hir leve she toke, and furth she goth hir waye ; Of <i>ser</i> Darell now late vs speke a while, Whiche hastith hym as fast as euer he may, So ferre fourth he was on <sup>b</sup> his <sup>1</sup> Iurnay, That into the land of perse aryvid he, And came to Mountoner the fayre Citee.	5701    5704   5707
Sir Darell came to Mountoner,	Full streyght he went onto Clarionas, And to her chaunber toke the redy waye, he knockyd softely as the maner was, Thanne came a mayde and this to hym gan <sup>d</sup> say ; 'Go fro the dore,' <i>quod</i> she, ' <i>ser</i> , I yow praye, My lady had noo rest of all this nyght, Nor slept not to now, I yow be hight.'	5708    5711   5714
and went straight to Clarionas.	Full fast he prayde, but neuer the neer he was, And whanne he sawe it wold non <sup>e</sup> oyer wise be, he callyd alow vpon <sup>f</sup> Clarionas ; 'Madame,' <i>quod</i> he, 'please yow for to see ; I am Darell, now speke a word with me.'	5715    5718
Her maid would not admit him,	Thanne spake Clarionas onto the mayde, 'Goo vpon <sup>g</sup> the chaunber dore,' she saide.	5721
[leaf 81] but he called upon Clarionas,	Thanne Darell came in and knelid on <sup>h</sup> his kne, And thus he saide onto fayre Clarionas, 'ffrom <sup>i</sup> ynd I come to this contre,	5722
who heard, and said to the maid, 'Open the door.'		
Then Darell came in,		

<sup>1</sup> MS. *hir*.

- Generides commaundith hym on to your' grace ; 5725 and told her all  
 As for my comyng' now this is the case, about Generydes.  
 Off' yow he hath be dremyd passing' sore,  
 Whiche dayly hym noyeth more and more.' 5728
- Thanne he told hir the mater hough it was, 5729  
 She hard' hym speke aH his entente to fele ;  
 'lete be these wordes,' quod Clarionas,  
 'This that ye say is lesyng' euery dele, 5732 She professed  
 at first not to  
 believe him.  
 Suppose ye not I vnderstonde yow wele ;  
 Generides, this is the mater playn),  
 To lucydas is weddid for certeyn). 5735 'It is plain,'  
 said she,  
 'that Generydes  
 is married to  
 Lucidas.  
 This message  
 should be to her.'
- To hir it is this message shuld be do, 5736  
 And not to me, for I haue not to don) with aH.'  
 'Now good madame,' [quod he,] 'why say yow soo ?  
 My message is to yow in especiaH, 5739  
 Now please it yow onto your' mynd to caH,  
 hough good, hough trew he was to yow alwaye,  
 And yet is he the same this dare I say. 5742
- Off lucidas,' quod he, 'ye may be sure, 5743 Darell then told  
 of his own love  
 for Lucidas,  
 ffor I shaH telH yow trougth withoute feyning',  
 I love hir best of eny creature ;  
 She sent to me, noo malyce supposyng', 5746 and how the  
 ring had been  
 obtained.  
 By hir moderys subtile ymagening',  
 The ryng' to borow of Generides,  
 Seying' she had a frende in grete distresse. 5749
- The ryng', she said, wold make hym hoole ayeyn), 5750  
 And for that cause I sent it lucidas ;  
 Now wote ye wele, it was but for a trayn)  
 Serenydes it had, this is the case ; 5753  
 That false Gusare the messanger he was,  
 ffor yow and for Generides also,  
 To make a variaunce betwix yow bo.<sup>1</sup> 5756

<sup>1</sup> MS. *bothe*.

- This is,' quod he, 'the trowth that I have seide, 5757  
 And putt me to what othe that ye list.'  
 In here conseite thanne was she weñ apayde,  
 'To you,' quod she, 'now haue I noo mystrost.' 5760  
 'Trewly, Madame,' quod he, 'and I had it wist,  
 That ye shuld me mystrost in my message,  
 I had not A take vppon me this viage.' 5763
- With that she became friendly,  
 With that she made hym) very frendly chere, 5764  
 And whanne the Sowdon wist of his comyng,  
 To hir he went som) tidynggez for to here,  
 And gave ser Darell anone his welcomyngt; 5767  
 'What tidynges now,' quod he, 'do yow bryngt?'  
 'ffor certayn, ser,' he seide, 'suche as thei be,  
 To yow I wiñ declare the very certente. 5770
- who told him that Parentyne was closely besieged,  
 The Sege is leyde to parentyne,' quod he, 5771  
 'A grete dele nerrer thanne it was before,  
 The gates ar añ shett of that Citee,  
 And of vitayle thei haue but easy store, 5774  
 Nor non) may haue, to say yow ferthermore;  
 So streyte them kepith auferius the kyngt,  
 That owt thei may not for noo maner thingt. 5777
- and that Generides was at Vice,  
 Generides lithe atte Citee of vice, 5778  
 Whiche is the strongeth Citee of añ the land;  
 he hath besegyde it in suche a wise,  
 That thei may not skape I vnderstonde, 5781  
 The contre hoole obeyeth to his hand.'  
 The Sowdon) hard hym wele, and this he seid,  
 'Of these tidynges I am right wele apayde; 5784
- 'I would he were here,'  
 said the Sultan,  
 'for Gwynan is  
 in the land,  
 Butt now I wold he were here with me, 5785  
 Tell hym) so, Darell, in eny maner wise.  
 Gwynan) the kyngt is now in this contre,

- And to my land he doth grete preiudice, 5788  
 Therefore haue I nede of his seruice.'  
 'Ser,' quod Darell, 'as fast as I canne goo,  
 In all the hast your' erande shalbe doo.' 5791  
 and I haue need  
 of his seruice.'
- Syr Darell toke his leue and went his way, 5792  
 Whiche euer hath be founde both good and trew ;  
 Mirabe'll is homeward in hir Iurnay,  
 Ser Darell and she mette togeder now, 5795  
 Echeon told such tidynge as thei cowde,  
 Betwix them was noo lenger abideng',  
 Butt furth they rode withoute more taryeng'. 5798  
 Sir Darell took  
 his leave,  
 and met Mirabell  
 coming home-  
 ward.
- Ser Amelok came owt of the Citee of vice, 5799  
 With sertayn of his pepill furth he went,  
 ffor it was told hym in credibill<sup>1</sup> wise,  
 Generides lay seke in his own tent, 5802  
 Whiche boldith hym the more in his entent ;  
 yet were thei blynd in that opynyon,  
 ffor he was rideng' owt before the town. 5805  
 Sir Amelok heard  
 that Generydes  
 lay sick,  
 and came out of  
 the city.
- Now is ser Darell come ayeyn to ynd, 5806  
 And furth withall into the feld he went,  
 ffuH fast rideng' Generides to fynde,  
 And furth withall he sought hym in to y<sup>e</sup> tent, 5809  
 To telle hym all the effecte of his entent,  
 Butt ther he founde non erthely creature,  
 So furth he rode seching' his aventure ; 5812  
 [leaf 31, back]  
 Sir Darell rode  
 over the field in  
 search of  
 Generydes,
- And with a Duke of Ethiope he mette, 5813  
 Vppon a courser crossyng' hym the way ;  
 Eche vppon other ferly on they sett,  
 And or thei partid, shortly for to say, 5816  
 The duke was slayn and in the feld he lay :  
 Whanne lucidas hym saw thanne was she fayn,  
 And glad she was of his comyng' ageyn. 5819  
 whom he slew.  
 Lucidas saw this  
 and was glad.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *credilbill*.

- Generydes rode  
to meet him, Generides thought wele that it was he, 5820  
And furth with aH came rideng<sup>r</sup> apace,  
'DareH,' he seid, 'right welcom be ye,  
'What tydinges bryng<sup>r</sup> yow fro Clarionas?' 5823  
'To telle yow,' quod he, 'I haue noo space,  
Goo now on) and take your' seaso<sup>n</sup> as<sup>1</sup> it is ;  
ffor aH is weH, ther is noo thyng<sup>r</sup> Amysse.' 5826
- 'All is well,'  
said Darell. Fuh wele apayde thanne was Generides, 5827  
And in his mynd reiyoysid passing wele,  
In to the feld he rode among<sup>r</sup> the prece,  
And in his way he mette ananyell, 5830  
A manly knyght, the story canne yow telt,  
A wise man) and sadde in euery case,  
And broder onto *ser* Amelok he was. 5833
- the brother of  
Amelok. Anon) thei ranne togeder in the feld<sup>r</sup> 5834  
With sperys sharpe, and made no more delay ;  
he smote Generides vppon) the sheld<sup>r</sup>,  
The sheld<sup>r</sup> to brast and fro hym) feH away ; 5837  
And as his grace and fortune was that day,  
The spere ranne down) by generides side,  
And ellys withoute fayle ther had he dyed. 5840
- And furth with aH<sup>2</sup> or they departid *yer*, 5841  
Generides thanne smote hym) so ayeyn),  
That thorough owt the body ranne the spere,  
And with that stroke Ananyell was slayn), 5844  
Down) from) his hors he felle vppon) the playn) ;  
And whanne *ser* Amelok saw aH) the case,  
ffor his broder an hevy man) he was, 5847
- and ran at Sir  
Darell. And to *ser* DareH) he ranne with spere & sheld<sup>r</sup> ; 5848  
Thanne luydas was sorry in hir hert,  
To see them) twayn) togeder in y<sup>e</sup> feld<sup>r</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *at*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *all all*.

- And fast she prayde that thei myght sone departe,  
like as nature required for hir part :  
Butt bote was non) to pray ne for to trete,  
And bothe thei mette anon) with speris grete. 5854
- Ful long) thei fought, to say yow ferthermore, 5855 They fought till  
their horses fell  
under them.  
And lenger wold) haue don) as by ther wiil  
Vnder them) bothe ther stedys feynted sore,  
That bothe togeder to the grownde ganne y<sup>e</sup>l faill, 5858  
Ser Darell in the feld) ther lay he stiil,  
The prese was suche he myght not gete away,  
Butt stiil defendid hym) ther as he lay. 5861 The crowd was  
so great,  
Sir Darell could  
not get away.
- Syr amelok was holpyn) att his nede, 5862  
his knyghtes came and fechid hym) anon) ;  
Sone after that ser Darell was on) his stede,  
With that Generides came rideng on), 5865 At length  
Generydes  
came up,  
and they made  
room for him.  
They made hym) rome among) them) euerychone,  
And where that euer he rode in eny side,  
Ther was non) in the feld wold) hym) abide. 5868
- The dede body vppon) a sheld) they layde, 5869 Ananyell's body  
was carried to the  
city,  
Toward the Citee thei caried it anon) ;  
Ser amelokkez men) were so dismayde,  
To the Citee thei fled his pepill euerychon), 5872  
And yet ther were distroyed many on),  
And or thei myght gete the Citee, this is sertayn),  
An C knyghtes were take and slayn). 5875
- Whanne thei were in thei shette ye gates fast, 5876  
Ananyell) thei beried furth) with all) ; and buried.  
Thanne afterward in all) the possible hast,  
Too knyghtes thei sent echone in generall), 5879 Two knights  
were sent to  
Generydes to  
ask for two  
months' truce,  
This was the message in especiaill),  
full) tenderly Generides for to praye,  
To graunt them) truse for ij monethis day, 5882

- His knyghtes for to bery euerychone. 5883  
 which was granted. he grauntid them) and was right wele apayde,  
 Ser Darell thanne he callid furth anon,  
 And Natanett Also, and this he saide ; 5886  
 'The trewse is now appoyntid and prevyed  
 Betwix the Cite and Me ij monethys day,  
 And now I wiſt goo see Clarionas I say. 5889
- Generydes left Darell in commaud,  
 Wherefore, Darell, I *prae* yow now,' *quod* he, 5890  
 'That ye wiſt do so moche as take the payn),  
 To rewle these men), that hir be vnder me,  
 In my absence as lord and cheff' capteyn), 5893  
 Or ought it be long' I wiſt be here ayayn),  
 And if ther fortune eny hasty nede,  
 Thanne wiſt I come as fast as I may spede. 5896
- and ordered Sygrem to come with him with 100 knights to go to Clarionas.  
 Off' knyghtes And squyers that be here, 5897  
 Of them) will I haue A C and no moo ;  
 ffuſt secretly,' he seid, 'in all maner,  
 I wold they were warnyd wiſt me to goo ; 5900  
 And say to Sygrem that he come also  
 In eny wise, that he may be my gide,  
 ffuſt wele he knowith the wayes on) euery side.' 5903
- Meantime, Mirabell came home and told the whole story.  
 In this meane tyme thanne was come home ayeyn)  
 Mirabell on) to fayre Clarionas ;  
 She saide, 'Madame, Generides for certayn)  
 hym recomaundid onto your' good grace 5907  
 In humble wise, and as for lucidas,  
 hir for to wedde came neuer in his thought ;  
 The messenger is slayn) that the tidynges brought.
- And so furth on) she told all the hole processe, 5911  
 hough) that she founde Generides *sertayn*),  
 All discomfortid in right grete hevynes ;

- Thanne saide Clarionas to hir ayeyn), 5914  
 ' Moche thank to yow for your labour' a[nd] payn).'  
 And thus I leve them) bothe in hartys ease,  
 And fethermore I wiþt speke of Generides. 5917
- Now toward perse ridith Generides, 5918 As Generydes  
was riding  
towards Persia  
 Takyng' his viage in the evyn) tide,  
 And of his<sup>1</sup> Iurnay wold he neuer sese,  
 Tiþ he came ther wher he shuld abide ; 5921  
 With hym) ther went Sygrem) to be his gide,  
 Costyng' the contre many dyuers way,  
 And so came he in to perse the redy ways. 5924
- The contre was destroyed in that tide, 5925  
 And as he rode vpon) the way,  
 A lady he sawe rideng' be a forest side, ..  
 Grete hast she had on) hir Iurnay, 5928 he saw a lady  
by a forest side,  
 To hir he rode withoute more delay, and rode after  
her.  
 Whanne she hym) saw come toward hir so fast,  
 Away fro hem) she fledde in all the hast. 5931 She fled,
- With hir ther were xvij. in company, 5932  
 Generides rode after hir so fast,  
 And on) his way so fast he ganne hym) hye,  
 he ouer toke the lady atte last ; 5935 but he overtook  
her,  
and told her no  
one should do  
her harm.  
 ' Madame,' he seid, ' be ye noo thyng' agast,  
 Why ride ye thus and in so hasty wise ?  
 Ther shaft no mañ do yow harme o warantise.' 5938
- ' In trowth I am a wedow, ser,' quod she, 5939 ' I am a widow,  
said she, ' and  
the Sultan is my  
uncle.  
King Gwynan  
wishes to marry  
me to his cousin,  
but I will not,  
and therefore am  
fleeing to  
Mountoner.'  
 ' The Sowdon) is myn) vncler in certayn) ;  
 kyng' Gwynan wold that I weddid shuld be  
 To his Cosyn), and me he wold constreyne 5942  
 So for to do ; this is the mater playn) :  
 And thus fro hym) in all the hast I went,  
 Because I wold not folow his entent. 5945

<sup>1</sup> MS. *hus*.



- Too Mountoner now I will take my way, 5946  
 And with myn vnkiſſ ther I will abide,  
 for here I leve in drede and in affray.'
- 'Madam,' quoth he, 'I pray you be our guide to Gwynan.'  
 'Madame,' quod he, 'I prae god be your' gide, 5949  
 After kyng' Gwynan I purpose me to ryde,  
 ffayne I wold knowe the way and not to mys.'  
 'I shaft yow tell,' quod she, 'where that he is. 5952
- 'He is here in a castle a mille or two off,  
 In a castell here be a forest side, 5953  
 from hens it passith not a myle or twayne,  
 hold on your' way streight as ye ride,  
 And ther ye shaft hym fynde, this is certayn, 5956  
 A bideng' ther Otran the kyng' of spayne,  
 Whiche comyth the kyng' to helpe I vnderstonde,  
 To warre vppon my vncl and his lande.' 5959
- 'Now, Madame,' thanne seid Generides, 5960  
 'What pepyth hath he ther? I prae yow say.'  
 'Trewly,' quod she, 'as ferre as I canne gesse,  
 with 200 men, he passith not CC men this day, 5963  
 And Chosen men they be in good arraye,  
 he is noo thyng' a drede in certente,  
 and every day he goes hunting.' ffor every day on huntynge rideth he.' 5966
- 'Madame,' quod he, 'thanne I besече yow this, 5967  
 That it may plese yow do so meche for me,  
 Whanne ye be ther as your' vncl is,  
 That I to hym may recomaundid be, 5970  
 A knyght of Surre gladly wold hym see,  
 Butt now I may not come, the cause is soo,  
 ffor I will seche the kyng' where euer he goo.' 5973
- The lady went on to Mountoner,  
 Too Mountoner the lady toke the waye, 5974  
 And to the forest Generides is gon,  
 And whanne it was ferre past on the day,

- In a buschement he layde his men eche on), 5977 and Genergydes  
 And thanne he callid Sygrem furth anon); laid his men  
 'Sygrem,' quod he, 'afore all other thyng', in ambush,  
 I prae yow wete where lith Gwynan the kyngt. 5980 and sent Sygrem  
 to find where  
 Gwynan was.
- Off his demeanyng' I wold wete also, 5981  
 And with my felisshepe I wiþ abide.'  
 'Ser,' quod Segyrem, 'anon it shalbe doo ;  
 Att your' commaundment now I wiþ ride, 5984  
 And bryng' yow worde her be the forest side.'  
 Now goth Segrym, withoute more taryeng',  
 To monperson, and ther he founde the kyngt. 5987 He found him at  
 Monperson,
- The town was fast by the castell wher he lay, 5988  
 Thorough owt the town he went among y<sup>e</sup> prese,  
 And whanne that he had Aspyed all yer array,  
 Agayn he came vnto Generides ; 5991 and came and  
 told Genergydes  
 'I shaþ yow telle,' quod he, 'that is noo leese, [leaf 32, back]  
 I left them ther att dyner euerychon, they were all  
 at dinner,  
 And to this forest he wiþ come anon. 5994
- Armyd thei be eche on) atte poynte device, 5995  
 here wiþ thei hunte I say yow verily ; and were coming  
 out to hunt.  
 Butt this I counceþ yow be myn) avise,  
 Whanne yow them) se late them) go by and by, 5998  
 Tiþ thei be passid thanne may ye them) askry.  
 And this suerly if ye do after me,  
 Betwix them) and the Castell shaþ ye be. 6001
- And ferthermore,' as my Auctor doth write, 6002  
 'Gwynan if ye wiþ [know] whereuer he be,  
 his owne Array is all togeder white,  
 hors and harnes and so is non) but he, 6005  
 his spere also is white, that ye shaþ see,  
 Now haue I sayde, do as ye semes best,  
 here wiþ he come anon) in to this forest.' 6008

- The king rode out, Anon vpon [on] huntynge rode the kyng,  
Generides was ware therof anon, 6009
- and Generydes kept his men quiet till they were all past,  
No noyse was made nor ther was noo steryng,  
To tyme the kyng and all his men were goon;  
And whanne that thei were passid euerychon,  
Generides anon hym ganne Askerye, 6012
- when he called to them to turne.  
And bad them 'turne, for tyme it is trewly.' 6015
- The king turned his horse,  
With that the kyng his hors he turnyd then,  
And to his knyghtes all thanne he saye,  
'Serys, now is tyme to shewe that we be men,  
ffor yender folk will lette vs of our way.' 6016  
6019
- and in the first encounter lost 20 of his knyghtes,  
Anone thei mette them withoute more delay,  
And atte first encounterynge certayn,  
kyng Gwynan had xx. of his knyghtes slayn): 6022
- and 15 were taken.  
And xv more were taken furth with all, 6023  
Where with the kyng was greuyd passyng sore,  
And sware his othe what euer shuld hym falle,  
he wolde suerly avenge hym therfore, 6026
- In revenge the king slew Lucas,  
And in that hete, to say yow ferthermore,  
Anon he ranne to lucas with a spere,  
And bare hym thorough and slewe hym ther. 6029
- and Generydes was full and threst, remembering all his love and kindness.  
Whanne he was dede ther was grete hevynes, 6030  
And with Generides was full hevychere,  
Remembryng the grete love and kyndnes,  
Whiche he had shewid to hym in all maner;  
And specially whanne he was prisoner, 6033  
And by his meane the Sowdon gave hym grace,  
Whanne he so long lay in prisone for Clarionas. 6036
- He then ran at Gwynan,  
And for by cause kyng Gwynan had hym slayn, 6037  
To go vn quyte he thought noo wurchippe in,  
And with his spere ranne toward hym ageyn,

- Thanne was ther on of the kynggez kynne, 6040 but one of his kin came between,  
 Betwene them) bothe his wurchippe for to wyne,  
 And with a spere in myddes of the prese,  
 ffurth with all he ranne vnto Generides. 6043
- And bothe thei mette to geder in the feld, 6044  
 And for to tell yow all the mater playn,  
 Generides stroke hym) thorough the sheld) and was pierced by the spear.  
 Owt atte bak, and slew hym) for certeyn; 6047  
 And whanne ther felawes were take And slayn,  
 A bak thei drewe, and sperkelyd her and yer, At this the king's men drew back, and scattered themselves.  
 Thanne was the kyng) full wrothe in his maner, 6050
- And blew his horn) to geder them) to bryng), 6051  
 ffurth sory he was to se them) goo so wide ;  
 Thanne seid Sampson) these wordes to y<sup>e</sup> kyng),  
 Off Cornyss)h was he born), and of that side ; 6054  
 ' It is noo tyme here for vs) to Abide,  
 Drawe to your) Castellward), and that anon),  
 ffor here we do butt lese oure men) euerychon). ' 6057
- Too monpersone the kyng) with drew hym) yan), 6058 The king withdrew to Monperson, pursued by Generydes.  
 Generides hym) folowid in the chase ;  
 ' Syr, ' quod Sygrem, ' thus sha)ll yow lese your men),  
 And wery them), withynne a short space : 6061  
 Butt this me think better in this case ;  
 Gete yow be fore, this wold I yow avise,  
 Betwix hym) and the town) in eny wise.' 6064 ' Get between him and the town,' said Sygrem.
- Generides dede after Sygrems counce)tt, 6065  
 And to blanchard his stede he saide,  
 ' Blanchard, ' quod he, ' thow dost me neuer fayle,  
 Nor vppon) the I was neuer ovtrayde.' 6068  
 With these wordes thoughtfull in A brayde  
 A nother way he rode, and in a while  
 he was be fore the kyng) welle half a myle. 6071 and outstripped Gwynan by half a mile.

- He crossed  
his path,                   And whanne the kyng<sup>t</sup> perseivid that it was he,   6072  
Adrede he was, And litill wold<sup>t</sup> he say ;  
And verily he thought not hym<sup>o</sup> for to Asse,  
Nor hym<sup>o</sup> to mete he thought no more y<sup>t</sup> day:   6075  
Generides thanne crossid hym<sup>o</sup> the way ;  
'This way,' quod he, 'thū shalt noo ferther pas,  
Or thu do armys for fayre Clarionas.'   6078
- and told him  
he should go  
no further,  
except he did  
battle for  
Clarionas.  
  
The kyng<sup>t</sup> sawe weñ he myght non<sup>o</sup> oyer way,   6079  
Nor to the town<sup>o</sup> he myght not ride in pece ;  
Anon<sup>o</sup> he dressid hym<sup>o</sup> in his arraye,  
[leaf 38]                   And thanne he turnyd vnto Generides :   6082  
Ther mette thei bothe withoute the prese,  
And shortly the processe for to make,  
Atte first encounteryng<sup>t</sup> bothe ther sperys brake.   6085
- and they went  
to work with  
their swords.  
  
The sparks flew  
from them,  
  
With yer swerdes to geder thei went,   6086  
And layde euerychone on<sup>o</sup> other strokes grete,  
The fyre sparkelid and fro the harneys glynt ;  
Betwix them<sup>o</sup> twayne it was noo tyme to trete,   6089  
Añ maner love and frenshippe was forgete,  
The kyng<sup>t</sup> in his conseite he was stronge,  
he thought noman<sup>o</sup> shuld fight with hym<sup>o</sup> so long<sup>t</sup>.   6092
- and Generydes<sup>t</sup>  
shield was  
broken.  
  
'Go now,' said  
the king.  
  
Hee strake Generides vppon<sup>o</sup> the sheld<sup>t</sup>,   6093  
It añ to brast in peces to and fro,  
The handdeñ it fell in to the feld<sup>t</sup>,  
A grace of god that he askapyd soo,   6096  
That with that stroke his arme was not a twoo !  
Thanne seid the kyng<sup>t</sup>, 'if thu wilt leve in rest,  
Goo now thy way and hold it for the best.'   6099
- Generydes  
was wroth,  
  
Generides wrothe was in his maner,   6100  
That he shuld byd hym<sup>o</sup> voyde owt of y<sup>e</sup> place,  
Remembryng<sup>t</sup> whiche was to hym<sup>o</sup> soo dere,

- That fayre lady, that mayde Clarionas, 6103  
 he thought to ease his hert as in this case,  
 And ther with aH, withoute more taryeng,  
 Vppon the helme he smote Gwynan the kyng, 6106 and struck him  
on the helmot,
- And the helme to brast that was good and strong,  
 A quarter of it fell vppon the grene, cutting off a  
quarter of it,  
and cleaving  
his shield  
and two of his  
fingars.  
 The swerde ranne down and clave y<sup>e</sup> sheld along,  
 And ij fyngers he smete<sup>1</sup> of quyte and clene, 6110  
 Thanne was he bare his visage myght be sene,  
 AH discomfeyte and aH forbled Also,  
 That in noo wise he wist not what to do. 6113
- Thanne spake the kyng, and seid in y<sup>is</sup> maner, 6114 ‘Who are you?’  
said the king,  
 ‘what maner a man, be ye? I prae yow say;  
 ffor I wiH fight with yow noo lenger here,  
 My swerd and aH I yeld it vppe this daye; 6117 ‘I will fight  
no more.  
Here is my  
sword.’  
 What is your name?’ quod he, ‘I prae you say’  
 ‘Trewly my name,’ quod he, ‘I wiH not layn,  
 Generides men calle me for certayn.’ 6120 ‘My name is  
Generydes.’
- The kyng toke hym his swerd, and seid aycyn, 6121 Gwynan gave up  
his sword,  
and said,  
 ‘Though I have ben Ayenst yow in this case,  
 yet am I not blame worthy in certayn,  
 By yow only my fader slayn was, 6124 ‘I am not  
to blame,  
you slew my  
father.  
 Butt now it is for gevyn certayn y<sup>e</sup> trespas,  
 And this I wold desire of yow also,  
 In to my land that I may savely goo. 6127 Let me go to my  
land, and I will
- AH this I wiH ensure yow be myn othe, 6128 never trouble the  
Sultan more.’  
 ShaH I neuer the Sowdon trobiH more,  
 hym nor his land; and for his ayris bothe,  
 I wiH be sworne like as I seid before, 6131  
 ffor I saw neuer that day sithe I was bore<sup>2</sup>,  
 Atte my full age and was att mannys myght,  
 That euer I medled with soo good a knyght.’<sup>3</sup> 6134

<sup>1</sup> MS. *smete*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *born*.<sup>3</sup> MS. *kyng*.

- Generides in  
jest asked,  
'What say you  
now about  
Clarionas?' 6135  
'Syr,' quod the kyng', 'with grete trobit,  
'You have bought  
her full dear,'  
said the king;  
'she is yours.'  
ffull dere ye haue hir bought, this is y<sup>e</sup> case; 6138  
Now is she yourez by fortune and by grace,  
And I am well content that it be soo,  
And as for my part now ther with I haue doo.' 6141
- Peace was  
proclaimed,  
After all this whanne pece was made and AH, 6142  
The kyng therof sent tydinges to his ost,  
Thanne were thei glad his men in esspeciall,  
Among them AH whiche of them myght be most,  
The pece was cryed abought in euery cost,  
The kyng' and he no longer ther abode,  
To monpersone to geder thanne they rode. 6148
- and they rode  
together to  
Moupperson.  
Theder were come the kynges men before; 6149  
As sone as he hym see he seide anon,  
'Now serys,' quod he, 'withoute eny more  
I wold that ye went homeward euerychon': 6152  
The pece is made and all the werre is gonl.  
Now hye yow fast, I canne noo ferder say,  
And I shaH come as sone as euer I may.' 6155
- The Sultan had  
dreamed that  
Gwynan and  
Generides fought,  
Now speke we of the Sowdon in this case, 6156  
Whiche hard no maner thing' of AH y<sup>is</sup> pece,  
And in this mater dremyd sore he was;  
hym thought kyng' Gwynan and Generides 6159  
had fought hand to hand, yet neuer the lesse  
Right this hym thought it happid atte last,  
and that Gwynan  
was thrown into  
a river.  
That in A Ryuer Generides hym cast. 6162
- The kyng' hym thought for mercy yanne he prayde,  
Generides thanne toke hym vppe to grace;  
Whanne this was do, this dreme Aforeseid

- he told them AH in to fayre Clarionas ; 6166 He tells it to  
 Thanne was the lady present in the place, Clarionas,  
 whiche with Generides spake on the way, and then the  
 She had forgete hir erande for to say. 6169 lady who had  
 spoken with  
 Generides
- Fuþ vmbely of pardon she hym prayde, 6170 remembered the  
 'To yow I haue offendid, ser,' quod she, message of the  
 'ffor Amessage the whiche I shuld haue seide ; strange knight.  
 Ther is a knyght come in to this contre, 6173  
 To yow he recomaundid hym be me, [leaf 33, back]  
 his name he wold not telle me, ne what he hight,  
 Of Surre he<sup>1</sup> was born the gentill knyght. 6176
- Right wele armed this knyght is also, 6177  
 And gladly wold haue sene yow or he went,  
 Butt nedis he must owt of this contre goo.'  
 Thanne was Clarionas not weþ contente, 6180 Clarionas guessed  
 ffor wele she vnderstode in hir entent, who it was.  
 And euer in one she thought still opece,  
 That it shuld be hir love Generides. 6183
- And for by cause she had hym in mystrost, 6184.  
 Allway she demyd the<sup>2</sup> wold hir quyte,  
 hym to Absente awhile while that hym list,  
 And so to putte his comyng in respite ; 6187  
 Thanne ferthermore, as my auctour doþ wete,  
 The kyng and Generides for ther disporte and play,  
 Att Mounperson to geder bothe thei lay, 6190 Gwynan and  
 Generides stay at  
 Mounperson  
 two days or more,
- Att ther pleasure ij dayes or a litill more, 6191  
 And thanne to Moun-toner he toke the way ;  
 Sygrem was made the messenger before,  
 Onward to goo as fast as euer he may 6194 and then go to  
 Moun-toner,  
 sending Sygrem  
 before to say that  
 the war was  
 over.
- To the Sowdon, commaundyng them to say :  
 "The warre is att anende, and all is pece  
 Betwix kyng Gwynan and Generides, 6197

<sup>1</sup> MS. of *he*, but *of* is struck out.<sup>2</sup> So MS. for *that he* ?



Neuer to vex the Sowdon) and his land, 6198  
 With grete suerte in euery maner thyng.<sup>1</sup>  
 Sygrem delivers Now hath Sygrem this message take in hand,  
 his message, To the Sowdon) the tidyngges doth he bryng<sup>1</sup>; 6201  
 Thanne was he glad, as eny man<sup>1</sup> leving,  
 and the Sultan hym) self he goth onto Clarionas,  
 goes and tells Clarionas. And told hir aH these tidyngges hough it was; 6204

And hough the kyng' and he shuld mete Also, 6205  
 In the forest appoyntid betwix them) twayn):  
 'Butt trow ye, ser<sup>1</sup>, that it be now soo?'  
 'yae, dough<sup>1</sup> ye not,' quod he, 'it is certayn); 6208  
 Sygrem is come which is bothe trew and playn),  
 ffor thense he come, he knowith aH in fere,  
 he shaft tell yow the trougth of this mater.' 6211

Now goth Sygrem as fast as euer he may 6212  
 To hir chaunber, and told<sup>1</sup> hir this processe;  
 'The warre is done,' quod she, 'this here I say;'  
 'Madame,' he seid, 'for certayn) aH is pece; 6215  
 'Butt now,' quod she, 'where is Generides?'  
 She asks 'Where is 'At Mounperson,'  
 'Where is Generides?' said Sygrem. 'ffor sothe,' he seide, 'I left hym) with y<sup>e</sup> kyng',  
 To Mounperson) he is withoute feyneng.' 6218

'And is he not 'Butt wiH he not come heder now?' quod she; 6219  
 coming here?' 'Madame,' quod he, 'of that I canne not say,  
 ffor atte this tyme I trow it wiH not be;  
 his purpose is to ryde another waye, 6222  
 'No, madam, he is going back ffourth in to ynd as fast as euer he may,  
 again to India as ffor to his ost he must take hede among',  
 fast as he can.' his people after hym) think fuff long'. 6225

From hir he went withoute wordes moo, 6226  
 To the Sowdon) furth he goth his way;  
 'My lord,' quod he, 'it is good tyme to goo,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *serp.*

- ffor ye wiþ mete with hym I dare weþ say.' 6229  
 Now goth the Sowdon furth in good array,  
 With lordes and with knyghtes many on,  
 Toward the forest rode thei euerychone. 6232  
 The Sultan and  
 his lords ride  
 forth to the forest  
 to meet him.
- In this meane while abode Clarionas 6233  
 In hir chaunber, noo thyng<sup>r</sup> in hartes ease,  
 Gretly musyng<sup>r</sup> and in fuþ hevy case,  
 Whanne she be thought hir on<sup>r</sup> Generides ; 6236  
 And Alway she remembryd stiþ opece,  
 hough she had mystrostid hym before,  
 Supposyng<sup>r</sup> well he<sup>l</sup> wold se hir nomore. 6239  
 Meanwhile  
 Clarionas was ill  
 at ease in her  
 chamber.
- To Mirabeþ thanne told she aþ hir hart, 6240  
 In euery thing<sup>r</sup> as it felle in hir mynde ;  
 'Madame,' quod she, 'for eny wo or smerte  
 That euer he had, I wist hym neuer on kynde, 6243  
 So vncurtese ye shaþ hym neuer fynde ;  
 And ferthermore I warantt yow,' quod she,  
 'Or it be long here with yow wiþ he be.' 6246  
 Mirabell consoles  
 her,  
 saying, that  
 Generydes will  
 soon be here.
- To the forest the Sowdon doth ride, 6247  
 And first of aþ he mette Generides,  
 Thanne came the kyng<sup>r</sup> along<sup>r</sup> by y<sup>e</sup> forestes side,  
 And whanne that thei were mett in aþ y<sup>e</sup> prese, 6250  
 And made betwix them bothe a fyniaþ pece,  
 And with a suraunce sworn in broderhode,  
 Togeder bothe in grete frendshippe thei rode. 6253  
 The Sultan met  
 Generydes  
 and the King in  
 the forest,  
 and peace was  
 made.
- Thanne they departid bothe the kyng<sup>r</sup> and he, 6254  
 In aþ maters to ben<sup>r</sup> of on assentt ;  
 The kyng<sup>r</sup> gothe homeward in to his contre,  
 The Sowdon streight to Moun-toner he went ; 6257  
 Generides ther was with hym present,  
 And prayeth hym of licence for to goo,  
 The Sowdon mervelid why he shuld do so. 6260  
 The King goes  
 home,  
 and Generydes  
 asks leave to  
 depart.

<sup>1</sup> MS. I.

- 'Will you not come and see Clarionas?' 6261  
 'WyH<sup>1</sup> ye not come and see Clarionas?'  
 'Noo trewly, *ser*,' he seid, 'that may not be;  
 I must praye yow of pardon) in this case,  
 ffor in to ynd now must I goo,' *quod* hee: 6264  
 'No, sir, I must go back to India.'  
 Another tyme I purpose hir to see;  
 [leaf 34] And in certayn, herof ye may be sure,  
 I love hir best of eny creature.' 6267
- Fro the Sowdon Generides is gon), 6268  
 And to his men) he seid this for certayn);  
 'To Mounperson) I wiH that ye goo euerychon),  
 And ther to Abide in to the tyme I come Ayeyn); 6271  
 and he and Sygrem go secretly to Montoner,  
 Sygrem and I, this is the mater playn),  
 To Mowntoner we wiH goo sekryly,  
 In secrete wise noman) but he and I.' 6274
- Now is Sygrem gon) with Generides, 6275  
 To Mowntoner he take the way fuH right,  
 Savyng' thei twoo ther was non) other preese,  
 and at night he stands in the garden, near her chamber,  
 Theder thei came be thanne<sup>2</sup> it was nyght; 6278  
 Generides whanne it was sterre light,  
 hym) self anon) gothe vnto Clarionas,  
 Thorough owt the gardeyn) wher hir chaunber was. 6281
- Whanne he came ther he hard a womannes voyce, 6282  
 and hears a woman's voice complaining.  
 In pytues wise complayneng' more and more,  
 Save only detH ther was non) other choyse,  
 She had so meche hevynes in store, 6285  
 vnkyndnes had greuyd hir so sore,  
 That Generides was in the countre her',  
 Butt see hir wold he not in noo maner'. 6288
- And whanne Generides had hard hir speke, 6289  
 He knew it was Clarionas,  
 Thanne wist he wele it was fayre Clarionas,  
 ffor very payn) hym) thought his hert wold breke,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Uyll*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *be twanne*.

- And in hym) self discomfeyte sore he was, 6292  
 Speke myght he not as for a certeyn) space,  
 Butt down) he fell and ther withaht he cryed ;  
 Myrabeht hym) hard and some hym) had Aspyde. 6295
- and for very pain  
he fell down with  
a cry.
- 'Myrabeht,' she seid, 'what may this be ? 6296  
 Whanne I hym) hard mervett it was.'  
 'In hevly pligh) my lady is,' quod she.  
 'Whom speke ye to?' thanne seid Clarionas : 6299  
 'Madame,' quod she, 'in sothe this is the case,  
 Now shaft ye fynde me trew in my servuce,  
 here atte wyndow is generides.' 6302
- Thanne with) thoo wordes arose Clarionas, 6303  
 And to the wyndow came she aht dismayde ;  
 Generides full) redely ther he was,  
 Ther was kyssyng) butt noo wordes were seid ; 6306  
 Eche of oyer wer) full) weht apayd) :  
 Anone thei putt) AH hevynes away,  
 And thanne Clarionas beganne to saye : 6309
- At these words  
Clarionas came to  
the window,  
and then there  
was kissing,  
but not a word  
said.  
Then Clarionas  
began,
- 'Generides, why are ye so vnkynd, 6310  
 In this contre so long) As ye haue be ?  
 Me thought I was full) litiht in your mynde,  
 And aht be cause ye wold not come to me.' 6313  
 Thanne seid Generides, 'Madame,' quod he,  
 'I yow beseche of pardon) in this case,  
 In very troug)ht a litiht thyng) ther was. 6316
- 'Generydes, why  
are you so  
unkind ?'  
'Madam,
- Ye wend that I had be weddid in certayn) 6317  
 To lucidas, whiche grevid me full) soore ;  
 To yow alway I haue be trew and playn),  
 Now haue I lete yow wete why and wherfore, 6320  
 And yet I am mystrostid) euer)more,  
 In easyng) of myn) hert I haue don) this,  
 ffor now is aht for geven) that is amys. 6323
- you thought  
I was married to  
Lucidas.  
I have always  
been true to you,  
and yet you  
mistrust me.  
But all is forgiven.

<sup>1</sup> This and the following line should be transposed.

- You must give me  
leave to go back  
to India. Off yow I must haue licence for to go 6324  
furth in to ynd, and therof haue I nede ;  
My felisshepe they wote not who to do,  
The treson of *ser* Amelok I drede : 6327  
In aH the hast homeward I wiH me spede,  
ffor euer the sonner that I goo certeyn,  
The sooner I go  
the sooner I shall  
be back.' Meche the sonner thanne I wiH come ayeyn.' 6330
- Quoth she, Quod she ayeyn, 'my reson) doth me bynde, 6331  
And as ferre furth as I canne vnderstonde,  
I canne wele think your' goyng' in to ynd  
Shalbe wurchippe and profight to your' land, 6334  
Your' pepiH glad to wete yow so nygh hande :  
'I must not  
refuse.' wherfore,' quod she, 'if I me weH avise,  
I may nott be ayenst it in noo wise.' 6337
- That night, in all  
innocence, they  
were together  
in groat pleasure. That nyghit they were to geder as I rede, 6338  
Nor sownyng' to [no] villany ne shame,  
In grete pleasure and in aH goodlyhede ;  
She made hym) chere and he dede hir y<sup>e</sup> same, 6341  
In feithfuH wise withoute spotte or blame,  
Anone with aH withoute spotte or eviH fame bothe ;<sup>1</sup>  
Whanne it was day, though thei were neuer so loth.
- Generydes and  
Sygrein ride to  
Monperson to his  
men, To Mounperson) rideth Generides, 6345  
In company with hym) Sygrein is gon,  
his men) were ther abideng' stiH opece,  
like as he had commaundid hym) before icheon, 6348  
and so away to  
India. Thei made no taryeng' but furth anon,  
With hors and harnes in ther best Array,  
Streight in to ynde thei toke the [redy] way. 6351
- The people were  
glad of his return. Whanne he was come ther as the pepiH lay, 6352  
Thanne were thei IoyfuH euey creature ;  
Ser amelok fuH bold he was that daye,

<sup>1</sup> This line is corrupted by the copyist from the preceding.

- ffor vnder a trete at AH aventure 6355  
 Of *ser* Dareh he thought he had be sure :  
 Butt of his werkyng' *ser* Dareh knew it weht,  
 And so he brake his purpose euery dele. 6358
- Generides rode streight into the feld 6359  
 With his knyghtes, for noo thyng wold he lette,  
 his stede was blak, his spere and eke his sheld,  
 Anone with ah with Sampson ther he mett ; 6362  
 Generides full fresshely on hym he sett,  
 Owt Atte bak he bare hym quyte and clene,  
 Sampson felle down and dyed vpon the grene. 6365  
Generides rode straight into the field, [leaf 34, back]
- Thanne came *ser* Amelok into the prese, 6366  
 And thought he wold a be avengyd for his sake,  
 Vpon the hede he smote Generides,  
 A quarter of his helme ther with he brake : 6369  
 Generides ther with to hym he spak,  
 'Thu wend,' quod he, 'that I had lakkid sight,  
 ffor now I may se better thanne I myght.' 6372  
Up came Sir Amelok to avenge him, and struck Generides on the head, cutting off a quarter of his helmet.
- And ther with ah he smote *ser* Amelok 6373  
 Vpon the hede, and brast [his] helme in twayn ;  
 Downe by the cheke his ere away he strake,  
 AH quyte and clene it felle vpon the playn ; 6376  
 And with that stroke, I say yow the certayn,  
 his Arme was smette fro the body clene,  
 So from his hors he felle vpon the grene. 6379  
In return Generides cleaves his helmet, and cuts off his ear and arm, so that he fell.
- Thanne was *ser* Amelok full woo begon), 6380  
 AH ouer come for angwiss and payn ;  
 his men were ther and reskewyd hym Anon),  
 vpon his sheld thei brought hym home ayeyn), 6383  
 AH for wondid and sore in euery vayne :  
 Thanne seid he this, complayneng' passing' sore,  
 'I haue deseruyd this though it were more.' 6386  
His men rescued him, and took him home.

- Sir Darell knew  
not of Generides,      Syr Darell wist not of Generides,      6387  
B[utt] Alway demyd that<sup>1</sup> it shuld be he ;  
To Sygrem thanne he came in to the prese,
- and asked Sygrem  
who the knight  
was on the black  
horse.      'Sygrem,' seid he, 'teff me the very *sertente*,      6390  
What knyght is that that I may yender see ?  
his stede is blak ; good Sygrem, teff me this,  
I canne weff think Generides it is.'      6393
- 'It is Generides,'  
quoth Sygrem.      'Syr,' *quod* Sygrem, 'it is as ye haue rede,      6394  
Generides it is withoute fayle ;  
he come butt late and right weff hath he spedd,  
Wherby his honour gretly doth prevayle,      6397  
ffor he hath wonne kyng' Gwynan in bateff ;  
The corde is made, the mortuall werre is sese,  
Betwix hym and the Sowdon AH is pece.'      6400
- Sir Amelok,  
on his bed,  
repented of the  
time past,      Now lith *ser* Amelok vppon his bed ;      6401  
Of tyme past full sore he doth repente,  
Wery and feynt, his wondys AH for bled,  
A basshed passyng' sore in his entent,      6404
- and sent for  
Serenydes,      And for Serenydes anon he sent,  
Whiche in hir mende full gretly was dismayde ;  
Whanne she was come right thus to hir he seid :      6407
- 'Madame,' *quod* he, 'ye vnderstonde full weff,      6408  
Sithe I beganne to love yow first of AH,  
I haue my hert, my *seruice*, euery dele,  
To yow allonly in especiaff ;<sup>2</sup>      6411
- and told her they  
had both done  
wrong.      And now reasone constreyneth me to call  
Vnto my mend and to my remembraunce this,  
Bothe ye and I haue done ferre Amys.      6414
- 'I made you  
leave my lord  
Auferius      Ye were the wyff of auferius the kyng',      6415  
Whiche was my very lord and souereyn,  
And trayturly first Atte begynneng'

<sup>1</sup> MS. *that that*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *especially*.

- I made yow to forsake hym in *sertayn*, 6418  
 And thanne vnder a false compassion trayn),  
 The lande anon and I were atte accorde,  
 To be rebelt ayenst our' *soueryn* lord. 6421  
and the land to rebel.
- I take noo hede of all this werk before, 6422  
 Wherefore I am in bytter paynes strong';  
 And though that I shuld suffer<sup>1</sup> meche more,  
 In very trowth I thinke it were noo wrong; 6425  
 As for my dayes thei witt not now be long,  
 And fayne I wold~~t~~ my consciens were clere,  
 Wherefore anon do calle a messenger, 6428
- And to *ser* Darell chargid hym to goo, 6429  
 Besechyng hym that he witt speke *wit* me ;  
 After his counceh gladly wold I doo,  
 To pray the kyng' of grace and it wold be, 6432  
 On me to shew his mercy and pitee.'  
 A Carefull woman was Serenydes,  
 And euer wept that no man cowde hir sese. 6435  
Serenydes was sad, and wept.
- To lucydas she seid in this maner, 6436  
 'Doughter,' *quod* she, 'this is now myn entent ;  
 Your' fader wold, as towchyng' this mater,  
 That to *ser* Darell a messenger were sent ; 6439  
 It were weh done that Sygrem theder went,  
 And to your' fader *prae* hym for to come,  
 In all the hast, loo this is all and som.' 6442  
send Sygrem to Darell,  
and pray him to come to your father.'
- Now on this message Sygrem furth [is] went, 6443  
 To<sup>2</sup> *ser* Darell and this to hym he seid ;  
 'The mayde lucidas now heder me sent,  
 And hir *commaundement* I haue obeyde ; 6446  
 ffor hir fader now good hath so purveyde,  
 A febyh man he is, I yow ensure,  
 And in this liff he may not long' endure. 6449  
Sygrem goes on his message to Sir Darell,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *suster*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *And to*.



- This is the effecte of my massage, 6450  
 That ye wiþ doo so mekiþ as take y<sup>e</sup> payn,  
 To come so ferre hir fader for to se,  
 The whiche gretly shuld counfort hym certayn; 6453  
 [leaf 35] To speke with yow truly he wold be fayn,  
 That wote I wele, and she wold purvey so,  
 That ye shaþ savely come and savely goo.' 6456
- Off these tidynges was he weþ contente, 6457  
 And part also as for his hartes ease;  
 Yet he remembryd hym or euer he went,  
 who asks leave of he wold haue licence of Generides, 6460  
 Generydes,  
 for in noo wise he wold not hym displease;  
 And her vppon he made noo lenger space,  
 To hym he goþ and told hym all the case 6463
- Off *ser* Amelok and of his repentaunce: 6464  
 Generides answerd, and this he seid;  
 'If I may fynde his wordes of substaunce,  
 In very trougth I wiþ be weþ apayde.' 6467  
 'for my comyng' his doughter hath so purveyde,  
 Ser,' quod Dareþ, 'and that in suche wise  
 I shaþ goo save and come o warantise. 6470
- And to be playn to yow in euery wise, 6471  
 This is the cause that he hath sent for me;  
 I owe his doughter trewly my seruice,  
 telling him of his So ye were weþ content ther with,' quod he; 6474  
 love for Lucidas.  
 'Ellys wiþ I not goo in very certente.'<sup>1</sup>  
 Off his wordis Generides was full fayn,  
 And smyling' softly answerd thus ageyn): 6477
- 'Dareþ,' quod he, 'I know this very sure, 6478  
 She is not long' owt of your' remembraunce,  
 Ye love hir best of eny creature;

<sup>1</sup> MS. *certentente*.

- Wherin, god woote, I take noo displeasaunce, 6481  
 ffor AH that may be for *your* foryeraunce,  
 I am contente to helpe yow to the same ;  
 Wherefore, ' quod he, ' goth on) in goddis name.' 6484  
'Go on, in God's name,' said Generydes.
- To the Castell ser Darell now is gon), 6485  
 Whanne he was come first atte begynneng',  
 his doughter lucidas mette hym) Anon),  
 And thankfully she gave hym) his welecomyng', 6488  
 Thanne furth with aH withoute eny more taryeng',  
 She brought hym) to hir fader ther he lay,  
 Seke and febyH, full nye his endyng' day. 6491  
Darell came to the castle, where Lucidas met him, and brought him to her father.
- Syr amelok was glad of his comyng'; 6492  
 'Ser Darell, I *prae* yow, bere me witnesse,  
 This I desire above aH other thyng',  
 ffor to haue my pardon) of Generides : 6495  
 I haue affendid sore, yet neuer the lesse  
 Of AH thynges that is past what euer it be,  
 Besechyng' hym) now of mercy and pite ; 6498  
Amelok begged him to pray Generydes to make his peace with Auferius.
- And of his fader auferius the kyng), 6499  
 If it wold be, fayne I wold haue his grace ;  
 ffor more vntrew ther was neuer non) levyng',  
 Thanne I haue ben) to hym) as in this case : 6502  
 My life woH now endure butt short space,  
 Besechyng' yow to *prae* Generides,  
 That he wold with his fader to make my pece. 6505
- And for to do your' dever in this case, 6506  
 Remembryng' this mater euery dele,  
 here is, ' quod he, ' my doughter lucidas,  
 The whiche, if I may vnderstonde and fele, 6509  
 That ye with hert and thought y<sup>t</sup> ye love hir wele,  
 She shaft be youres, lo this shalbe your' wage,  
 And aH my land with hir in mariage. 6512  
'Here is my daughter Lucidas, whom you love : I will give her to you, and all my land.

Pray also that  
Serenydes may be  
forgiven.'

And also, Dareh, as for Serenydes, 6513  
This I besече yow hartely,' quod he,  
'That ye speke with hir that she may haue hir pece,  
And so to leve in rest and it wilbe : 6516  
And pray Generides to speke with me,  
So wold god that he were here present,  
loo her is all the effecte of myn entente.' 6519

To lucidas he seid in this maner ; 6520  
'Doughter,' quod he, 'here is a nobill knyght,  
his aunccetours were men of grete powre ;  
And of princes he is descendid full right, 6523  
Ye shaft be his, this I haue hym be highit,  
In marriage, this is the mater playn,  
And of my land I say yow for certeyn. 6526

Lucidas agrees.

And be ye so agreyd ther to, 6527  
And as ye think now tell me your' advise.'  
'Syr,' quod she, 'as it plese yow to do,  
I am contente ther with in euery wise, 6530  
like as ye wil appoynte it and devise ;  
In euery thing' to folow your' entent,  
I am hooly atte your' commaundment.' 6533

Darell goes back  
to Generides,

Thanne ser Dareh departid home ayeyn, 6534  
Vnto Generides the redy way,  
And ther he told hym all to geder playn  
Of ser Amelok, and in what plight he lay ; 6537  
'And this,' quod he, 'he prayde me to say,  
In vmbill wise, desireng' tenderly  
That ye wold come and see hym or he dye. 6540

and at length  
prevails upon him  
to visit  
Sir Amelok.  
He was in great  
distresse,

Wyth long' prayour he brought hym atte last 6541  
Vnto ser Amelok ther as he lay,  
In grete distresse musyng' of tymes past,

- And to Generides this ganne he say, 6544 [leaf 38, back]  
like as a man had ben half in affray ; and cried  
'Mercy,' quod he, 'mercy, gentiſt Generides, 'Mercy, mercy,  
Graunt me that I with yow may haue my pece, 6547 gentle Generydes,  
let me haue pece  
with you
- And with your' fader auferius the kyng', 6548 and with Auferius,  
ffor hym I haue offendid specially, whom I haue  
To non so moche a creature levying, specially offended.  
This land I hym be raft full traytourly ; 6551  
To god and hym I yeld me now gilty, I yeld myself to  
Pray hym of grace and ellys, I wote certayn, God and him.  
My sowle shaft lye in euer lastyng' payn. 6554
- And o thyng' I wold, this is the case, 6555  
Ye myght haue knowlage or [I] feryer goo,  
Dareſt shaft haue my daughter lucidas Darell shall  
In mariage, and all my land also, 6558 marry Lucidas.  
Besechyng' yow to be good lord therto, Be good lord to  
And shewe your' grace onto Serenydes, them,  
That sne may prae for yow and leve in pece. 6561
- And ferthermore, now I remember me, 6562 and forgive me  
how I smote yow with villany and shame, for smiting you  
Withynne the courte that euery man myght see, in the court.  
Nought remembryng' the wurchippe of your' name, 6565  
And therefore on that side I am lame,  
ffull vmbely besechyng' your' goodnes,  
That of all this I may haue forgevenes.' 6568
- With that he felt in swounyng' for very payn, 6569  
Wherof Generides had grete pitye,  
And whanne he sawe he<sup>1</sup> was awake ayeyn) ;  
'Ser Amelok,' he seid, 'now as for me, 6572 'All that is past,  
Sir Amelok,  
All that is past shaft clene forgevyn) be,  
And with my fader I shaft make your' pece, and I will make  
ffor yow and also for Serenydes. 6575 your pece with  
my father.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *hym ho.*

- But before you die, forgive me.' And or ye dye this I desire also,<sup>1</sup> 6576  
 That ye for geve me or I ferther passe.'
- 'That may soon be done,' said Amelok, 'for you have done me no wrong.' 'Trewly,' quod he, 'ser, that may sone be doo, 6579  
 As for to me ye haue do noo trespace ;  
 And [as] ferfurth as god wiþt geve me grace,  
 With aþ the world, with highe and low degree,  
 I shaþt departe with loue and charite.' 6582
- Serenydes tears her hair, A Carefull woman was Serenydes ; 6583  
 She rent hire here, a petuose thing to see,<sup>2</sup>
- and with a naked sword comes to Generydes and begs him to slay her. And with a nakyd swerd came to Generides, 6586  
 'I yow requere for goddis loue,' quod she,  
 'haue here this swerd, and make an ende of me  
 Now or ye goo, and bryng me owt of payn,  
 ffor I haue weþt deseruyd it for certayn.' 6589
- 'God forbid, madam,' he said, 'Do away, Madame,' quod he, 'god defende ;' 6590  
 Ther with he toke hir in his armys twayne,  
 'Aþ that is amys,' quod he, 'may be amend,  
 And so ye must comfort your self ayeyn, 6593  
 ffor this I haue promysed for certayn,  
 Vnto my lord and fader for to goo,  
 To make the pece for yow and hym Also.' 6596
- Generides departid furth his way, 6597  
 Ser amelok lay in angwissþ and in payn,  
 Sighyng full oft vppon his bed he laye,  
 And shortly to say yow the certayn, 6600  
 he dyed anon withynne a day or twayne.  
 Thanne who was hevvy butt Serenydes,  
 ffor more and more hir sorow ded increase. 6603
- Sir Amelok died within a day or two, And ouer wharte his body ther [s]he lay, 6604  
 Aþ in swoune, grete pite to be hold,  
 And in noo wise she wold not thens away,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *desire of yow also.*<sup>2</sup> MS. *rent hire a petuose thing to here*

- Moche sorow was made of yong<sup>r</sup> and old<sup>r</sup> : 6607 and in an hour  
 With that hir face wex aH to geder cold<sup>r</sup>, after Serenydes  
 helpe was ther non, reskewe ne socour<sup>r</sup>, died of grief. ✓  
 Bothe he and she were dede withynne An owre. 6610
- A woofull creature was fayre lucydas, 6611 Fair Lucidas was  
 To se the maner of ther departeng<sup>r</sup>, very sad,  
 And bothe to geder in a full litiH space ;  
 So aH the day alone she sate wepyng<sup>r</sup>, ~~6614~~ and sat all day  
 She had noo comfort of erthely<sup>1</sup> thying<sup>r</sup>, weeping and  
 Save euer more was ser DareH in hir mynde, thinking of  
 he was to hir so curtes and soo kynd. 6617 Darell.
- Generides sent furth a messenger, 6618 Generydes sent to  
 To telle the kyng<sup>r</sup> his fader tideng<sup>r</sup>, the king  
 hough ser Amelok hath yeld vppe aH in fere to tell him of  
 The Reme of ynd, and knowith hym<sup>r</sup> for his kyng<sup>r</sup>, 6621 Sir Amelok's  
 With petuese wordes gretly repentyng<sup>r</sup>, repentance.  
 And of aH his offence and trespace,  
 fuH vmbly besechyng<sup>r</sup> yow of grace. 6624
- Off these tidengys the kyng<sup>r</sup> was well apayd, 6625 The king was  
 And toward Surre dressid hym<sup>r</sup> to ride, well pleased,  
 Thanne to the messenger right<sup>2</sup> yuus he seid ; and prepared to  
 ' Sey to my sonne that he here abide, 6628 leaving Generydes  
 And sette the lande in rewle on<sup>r</sup> euery side, to rule India.  
 hole to be and vnder his obeysaunce, [leaf 36]  
 And take it as his owen<sup>r</sup> inheritaunce.' 6631
- Kyng<sup>r</sup> auferius fell seke anon<sup>r</sup> vppon), 6632 Anon after he fell  
 Yet not withstondyng so as it myght be, sick,  
 With hym<sup>r</sup> he tooke his knyghtes euerychon),  
 The streight way toward surre rideth he, 6635 but went back to  
 And whanne that he was come in to y<sup>r</sup> cuntre, Syria,  
 Tydynges he hard whiche grevid hym<sup>r</sup> right sore, where he found  
 The quene Sereyne was dede a day before. 6638 queen Sereyne  
 had died the day  
 before.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *etherly*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *this right*, the former word being marked for erasure.

	Grete hevynes ther was for hir deceas,	6639
He went where she lay, and swooned twice,	The kyng' went to the place ther she laye, And twyes he swooned amongst the prece, fuH sory were his meñ to se that day,	6642
	Be one assent thei had hym) thens awaye, And furth with aH in to his chaunber y <sup>e</sup> l hym) brought, aH disfortles he was and fuH of thought.	6645
	And alway stiH he febelid passyng' sore, So what with thought and feyntid with sekenes, Withynne ij dayes he dyed or litiH more ;	6649
and within two days died,	Thanne was the lande in grete hevynes, To think vpon) so noble a princez That dyed be fore, and ther kyng' Also, So woo thei were thei wist not what to do.	6652
	For hym) and hir was made grete ordenaunce,	6653
and they were both buried.	Prelettes, prestis, syngeng' ther seruice, And grete lordes doth ther obseruaunce, ladys also in fuH lamentabiH wise,	6656
	Euerychon) of them) in blak as is ther gise ; Now late vs leue them) in rest and pece, And speke wee farther of Generides,	6659
	Whiche is in ynd, and doth grete diligence	6660
Generydes, in India, set the land in order,	Thorough owt the land to sette good ordenaunce, In ponyssheng' of them) that doo amys, Suche as be good of witte and gouernaunce,	6663
	Them) to charisshe and putte to fortheraunce, aH this remembert he both day And nyght, And for to see that euery man) haue right.	6666
	So wele he dede in euery maner thing,	6667
and was crowned king.	The land of hym) were passing' weH content, As rightwise ayre thei toke hym) for yer kyng',	

- And Crownyd hym) be all the hooft assent ; 6670  
 Thus were thei All att his commaundment,  
 he was soo good soo curtese and soo fre,  
 he had the loue of all the hoole contre. 6673
- The same forster that came on to [the] kyng', 6674  
 And told of All the treson) that was do,  
 he lost his office ther and his levyng',  
 And with quene Sereyne he went Also ; 6677  
 Ther for his trowth withoute wordes moo,  
 A C pownde of fee he had ther fore,  
 With his office like as he had before. 6680  
and restored to his office.
- Owt of Cesare thanne cam) barons iij, 6681  
 And in ther Iurnay thei rode passing' fast,  
 To tell ser Darell the very certente,  
 hough) his fader ow) of his life<sup>1</sup> is past ; 6684  
 Desireng' hym) to come in all the hast,  
 And by the Assent of All his baronage,  
 Of that contre to cleyme his eritage. 6687  
Three barons of Cæsaræ bring tidings to Darell of his father's death.
- Whanne thei had told ther message hole and playn),  
 Ye may weft wete ser Darell was not glad ;  
 Vnto Generides he went certayn),  
 And told hym) of the tidynges that he had, 6691  
 Besechyng' hym), with countenance right sadde,  
 Of licence in Cesare for to goo ;  
 Generides consentid weft ther too. 6694  
He asks leave of Generydes to go home,
- And whanne his leve of hym) thus takyn) was, 6695  
 ffor All the payn he sufferyd and the smert,  
 Ye shaft weft knowe the fayre mayde lucidas  
 Right endly was inprentid in his hert ; 6698  
 Vnto hir chaunber sone he made a stert,  
 And curtesly of hir his leve he toke,  
 With kysseng' fele as witnes[eth] the book. 6701  
and sorrowfully parted with Lucidas.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *list.*



- In to Casare now *ser* Darell is goon), 6702  
 The countre hole was glad of his comyng,  
 He was made king of Casarea, And for ther prince thei toke hym euerychon),  
 And gave hym ther trouthe withoute feyneng', 6705  
 he was soo good to them in euery thing,  
 Shewyng' them favour' and grete gentilnes,  
 he had the hartes hoole of more and lesse. 6708
- Whanne he had sett the rule and gouernaunce, 6709  
 Thorough owt the land to mayteyn rest and pese,  
 And made his officers to his plesaunce  
 Suche as hym thought his honour wold encrease, 6712  
 and then went back to Generydes, Thanne ageyn he went onto Generides,  
 And in his Iurnay rideth he full fast,  
 fforth in to ynd in all the possibiH hast. 6715
- Now is the prince of Cesare come ayen), 6716  
 Vnto the kyng' of ynde Generides,  
 [leaf 36, back] The whiche in sothe of his comyn),  
 for he abode his comyng' still opece ; 6719  
 and without delay was wedded to Lucidas. And for to telle yow shortly the processe,  
 Withoute delay or lenger space,  
 The prince was weddid onto lucidas. 6722
- And whanne the fest was all to geder do,<sup>1</sup> 6723  
 ffor tender love and speciall remembraunce,  
 With hym and here he gave the lande also,  
 Whiche was hir faders old inheritance ; 6726  
 He is made governor of India in the absence of Generydes, The prince also, his honour to avaunce,  
 he gave hym full powre signyd with his hande,  
 In his absence to gouerne all his lande. 6729
- who goes to Syria, Now goth Generides, the kyng' of ynde, 6730  
 Toward Surre withoute more delay ;  
 And in the story leke as I do fynde,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *done*.

GENERIDES HEARS OF THE DEATH OF HIS FATHER AND MOTHER. 215

- Too Counstables ther mette hym be the way, 6733 and is met by two constables,  
 One of them twayne, the very trouth to say,  
 Of all Surre cheff *gouvernour* he was,  
 The toder kept the Citee of Damas. 6736
- All sad thei were, and made full hevvy chere, 6737 who told him  
 Generides had mervett what it ment ;  
 To his presence he bad thei shuld come nere,  
 That he myght knowe the effecte of *yer entente*, 6740  
 And vpon that A streight *commaundment*,  
 Gevyng them charge to tell hym all the case,  
 Trewly and playn what *maner* a thyng' it was. 6743
- Full lothe thei were to tell the certente, 6744  
 ffor hevvy tidinges came to sone Alway,  
 Butte whanne thei sawe it myght non oyer be,  
 To hym thei spake, '*ser*, please it yow,' *quod* thei, 6747 of the death of his father and mother.  
 'To take it in pacient that we shall saye,  
 The kyng' your' fader dede is for certeyn,  
 And your' moder also the quene Sereyne ; 6750
- Bothe he and she, withynne iij dayes of space : 6751  
 It is grete hurt to the land were it goddes will.  
 And whanne Generides wist hough it was, He fell from his horse in a swoon,  
 Down from his hors in swounyng ther he fell, 6754  
 To tyme he was awake ther lay he still ;  
 Thanne euery man dede grete diligence and payn,  
 And vpon his hors thei sette hym Ageyn. 6757
- They brought hym to the Cite of Damas 6758 and was carried to Damascus, where he lay sick.  
 And passing seke in his pales he laye,  
 All pale and wanne, owt of likeng' he was, 6761  
 his fressh colour' it fatid al away,  
 And thanne to Nataneff this ganne he sey,  
 'Goo now, I prae yow hartely,' *quod* he, He sent for Sygrem,  
 'And sey to Segrem that he come to me.' 6764

- Whanne he was come thanne seid Generides, 6765  
 and gave him a ring to take to Clarionas,  
 'Sygrem,' quod he, 'I haue sent for yow here ;  
 God wote I am noo thing' in hartes ease,  
 And very seke ye se, and in what maner ; 6768  
 Goo to Clarionas myn owen lady dere,  
 haue here this ryng', bere it here for me,  
 I am aferde I shaft hir neuer see. 6771
- Tell ye hir soo in very certente, 6772  
 Me recomaundyng' in full humble wise,  
 beseeching her to pray for him.  
 Besechyng' hir that she wiþ pray for me,  
 I aske no more for all my trew seruiçe ;' 6775  
 Ser,' quod Sygrem, 'right as ye wiþ devise,  
 What I shaft do or say for your' entent,  
 I am redy att your' owne commaundment.' 6778
- Sygrem goes into Persia  
 Now goth Sygrem withoute wordes moo, 6779  
 ffurth in to Perce he ridith on) a pace,  
 To Mountoner Citee now is he goo,  
 On) his message As he commaundid was, 6782  
 and tells Clarionas all,  
 So Streight he goth on to Clarionas,  
 And ther he told hir all the circumstaunce  
 Of his sekenes with hevy countenaunce. 6785
- She swoons,  
 And whanne Sygrem had all to geder seide, 6786  
 Anon) she fell in swounyng' for very payn with all,  
 Where with Mirabell gretly was dismayde,  
 and Mirabell counsels her  
 'Madame,' quod she, 'what thing' that euer fall?' 6789  
 And on) hir lady fast beganne to call,  
 'hurt not your' self, I prae yow, in this case ;'  
 With thoo wordes a woke Clarionas. 6792
- 'All way your' comfort is full good,' quod she, 6793  
 'Butt in this case I wote not what to sey.'  
 'Madame,' quod she, 'woþ ye do After me?'

- ' Gladly,' she seide, ' aH that I canne or may.' 6796  
 ' Be my counceH thanne shaft ye take your' way to go to Syria  
secretly.  
 To Surre warde,' quod she, ' be myn' Avyse,  
 In pore clothing' and in full secrete wise. 6799
- And haue with yow Gwynot *your* chaunberleyn), 6800  
 And one to kepe your' hors it shaft suffice,  
 Take vppon' yow the labour and the payn),  
 And ye shaft make hym' hoole o warantice.' 6803  
 ' I will,' quod she, ' do like as ye haue device,  
 And certainly, withoute eny wordes moo,  
 To morow erly forward wiH we goo.' 6806
- Fro Mountoner gothe Clarionas, 6807 and goes from  
Mountoner with  
[leaf 87]  
Sygrem,  
 With hir rode Sygrem to hir gide,  
 ffuH secretly as she appoynted was,  
 That noman' of the Cite hir aspide ; 6810  
 ffurth on ther way to surreward thei hied,  
 And in aH goodly hast as it myght be,  
 ffuH sone thei came to Damas the Citee. 6813 till they come to  
Damasus.
- Sygrem from hir departid furth *with* aH, 6814  
 Streight to the CasteH gothe Clarionas,  
 Vppon' the porter she beganne to calle,  
 And he ayenward askid what<sup>1</sup> she was : 6817 Clarionas goes  
straight to the  
castle,  
 ' ffor certeyn, *ser*,' quod she, ' this is the case,  
 The kyng' is seke, it is infourmyd me,  
 I trost to god to make hym' hole,' quod she. 6820 and tells the  
porter  
she is come to  
cure the king.
- ' In strenthe or erbys that ben *profeitable*, 6821  
 In them I knowe the vertu that is sure,  
 In *euery* kynd whiche is most comfortabiH,  
 And accordeng' to *euery* creature, 6824  
 And often tyme I haue putte it in vre ;  
 Wherefore, I *prae* yow, do my eraunde,<sup>2</sup>  
 That I may see the kyng' now or I goo.' 6827

<sup>1</sup> MS. *was*.<sup>2</sup> So MS. ? *my eraunde to do*.

- 'Damesett,' quod he, 'your' erande shaft be do<sup>1</sup> ;' 6828  
 The porter brings  
 Natanel, With that the porter goth vnto the place,  
 And spake with Natanel a worde or twoo,  
 who does not  
 recognize her. And brought hym furth onto Clarionas, 6831  
 Vnknownen to them bothe what that she was ;  
 'What is your  
 will?' said he. 'Ye are right welcom, suster myn,' quod he,  
 'What is your' will? I prae yow telle it me.' 6834
- 'I am a poor  
 woman,' 'Trowly,' quod she, 'I am a pore woman), 6835  
 The kyng' is seke, whom gretly I complayne ;  
 and wish to make  
 the king whole.' And I wold Shewe suche connyng' As I canne,  
 Trosting' to god to make hym hoole ayeyn.' 6838  
 He saw the ring  
 on her finger,  
 but still did not  
 know her, Thanne he beheld hir ferthermore certayn,  
 A ryng' he knew whiche on hir fynger was,  
 Yet wist he not that it was Clarionas. 6841
- and went straight  
 to the king, From hir he went streight onto the kyng', 6842  
 'Ser, please it yow to vnderstonde,' quod he,  
 'Ther is a woman) whiche is full connyng'  
 In euery sekene and, as thinkith me, 6845  
 By here wordes her semyth so to be ;  
 here atte CasteH gate with hir I spakke,  
 To make yow hoole this wolle she vndertake. 6848
- 'On hir fynger ther is a ryng', quod he, 6849  
 'The whiche in sothe me think a straunge case ;  
 And this I wote in very certente,  
 Ye gave suche on vnto Clarionas, 6852  
 And in myself I mervell hough it was.'  
 who bade him  
 bring her in. Thanne seid the kyng', 'I wold now y<sup>t</sup> ye goo,  
 Bryng' hir to me withoute wordes moo.' , 6855
- She came in  
 closely veiled, Now Natanel goth to the CasteH gate, 6856  
 And brought this woman) streight onto the kyng',  
 Butt she was wympelyd soo that woote ye what,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *don*.

- That he had no maner knowlaching', 6859 so that he did not  
 With that anon he had aspyed the ryng', know her,  
 The whiche hym thought he gave Clarionas,  
 Yet for all that he wist not what she was. 6862
- 'I pray yow, *ser*, be of good chere,' quod she, 6863  
 'And if it please your' goodnes for to here  
 I am a woman of ferre contre ;'  
 And ther withall, in full curtes maner, 6866 and offered to  
 She proferyd hym to kysse with louyng' chere ; kiss him.  
 'Nay, suster myn,' quod he, 'with goddes grace,  
 I must pray yow of pardon in this case : 6869
- For I with kysse no woman be ye sure, 6870 He refused to  
 Though she myght make me hoole as euer I was, kiss any one  
 Butt only hir whiche is that creature but Clarionas.  
 That I loue best, the mayde Clarionas ; 6873  
 And if that she were present in this place,  
 If I here kyssid, I think, so god me save, She, perhaps,  
 It were the best fisykke that I cowde haue.' 6876 could cure him.
- 'I haue,' she seid, 'brought with me hir ymage : ' 6877  
 'Ye,' quod the kyng, 'I *prae* yow, late me see ;'  
 Anone she dede vnWympih hir visage, She unveiled  
 'Withoute fayle I am the same,' quod she : 6880 herself,  
 Thanne seid the kyng, 'Aye, Benedicite !  
 hough haue ye take vpon yow all this payn ?'  
 Ther with he toke hir in his armes twayn. 6883 and he took her  
 in his arms
- Thanne he kyssid hir withoute more taryeng', 6884 and kissed her,  
 And all that nyght, till day beganne to rise, and they sat  
 They twayne were sett withoute departeng', together till  
 As glad and mery as thei cowde device, 6887 daybreak.  
 To bothe ther pleasurez in all goodly wise ;  
 And on the morow, sothely for to say,  
 To mountoner she toke the redy way. 6890 On the morrow  
 she went back to  
 Mountoner.

220 GENERYDES IS CROWNED KING OF SYRIA, AND MARRIES CLARIONAS.

Generydes recovered,	And hole he was and very well att ease, And atte his hartes rest in especiaff ;	6891
and was crowned king,	The iij <sup>de</sup> day after Generides Was crownyd kyng <sup>t</sup> of Surry furth with Aft ; Thanne the lordes echon in generaft, With very dew and feithfull obseruaunce, Dede hym omage with vmbles obeysaunce.	6894 6897
and soon after set off for Persia,	Whanne he had sette the land in gouernaunce, ffurth in to perce he takith his Iurnay, In grete estate And in grete ordenaunce, With his lordes and in suche array,	6898 6901
to wed Clarionas. [leaf 37, back]	To Mountoner, ther as the Sowdon was, Ther for to wedde the mayde Clarionas.	6904
	Whanne he was come, the Cite was full fayn, for att aft tymes of necessite he toke on hym the labour and the payne, And was ther sheld from aft aduersite ; So thanne withynne the space of dayes iij, As rially as thei cowde device, The mariage was made in solempne wise.	6905 6908 6911
Gwynan was there,	Gwynan the kyng <sup>t</sup> was atte mariage, The kyng <sup>t</sup> of Trace also withoute lese,	6912
and Ismael the Savage,	Whiche callid was Ismael the savage, Broder he was onto the kyng <sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup> Generides,	6915
and Darell was steward of the feast,	And so to gide and gouerne aft the prece Appoynted was, likke as thei thought it best, The prince of Cesare cheff stiward of y <sup>e</sup> fest.	6918
and many others.	And other grete estatis ther were moo, Bothe of lordes and ladyes many on, Grete Iustis ther the Sowdon made also,	6919

<sup>1</sup> Omit *the kyng*.

- And all the plesure that cowde be thought vppon;  
 And to be hold the pepiH euerychon,  
 Whiche came to se the fest of yong' and old',  
 It was a very wonder to be hold. 6925
- Sone after whanne the fest was don) and AH, 6926  
 And euery man) gon) home in to his cuntre,  
 Withynne a while, as aventur' gan) faH,  
 The Sowdon) dyed, whiche was grete pite; 6929  
 Grete mone was made of men) of the Cite,  
 Save ther comfort and trost in<sup>1</sup> euery thyng',  
 Was only on) Generides the kyng', 6932
- Whiche seid all the lande in his demeane, 6933  
 Be right wise titeH of his mariage,  
 Takyng' homage, as lord and souereyn,  
 Thorough owt the lande of all the Baronage : 6936  
 Bothe yong' and old' and euery man) of age,  
 As glad thei were of hym), I yow ensure,  
 As euer was land of eny levyng' creature. 6939
- He was to them) so lovyng' and so kynd, 6940  
 The laugh abseruyd wiH bothe ferre and nere,  
 No man) had Wrong that eny man) cowd fynde,  
 ffewe compleyntes or non) that men) myght here, 6943  
 Gentitt ther with, curtes in AH maner,  
 If eny man) wold wrong' oyer day or nyght,  
 he was redy for to forfeTe his right. 6946
- And for be cause it shuld not owt of mynd, 6947  
 The good seruice so feithfuH and so playn)  
 Off Natanel, whiche he had founde so kynde,  
 And for his love hadde grete labour' and payn), 6950  
 He thought he wold remember it ayeyn),  
 In suche a wise as hym) thought honorable,  
 And maryed hym) to the made Mirabel. 6953

<sup>1</sup> MS. *was in*.



- and gave them  
the city of Seure.      Too hym) and her he gave a faire Citee,      6954  
Withynne the Reme of Surre callid Sevre,  
A bougħt the town) a dosen) myle fre  
Vnto hym) self, and yerly of valour<sup>1</sup>      6957  
vj thousand pownde, to maynteyn) yer honour ;  
And of that land he made hym) cheff Iustice,  
To maynteyn) in euery maner wise.      6960
- Sir Anasore was  
made lord of a  
great barony.      Syr Anasore with hym) was not for gete,      6961  
he made hym) lord of A grete baronye,  
The whiche was fallyn) in perce be eschete,  
Whanne lucas dyed that was of ydonye ;      6964  
And for grete trost that he hadde specially  
In hym), Aħ myn) Auctour reherse,  
he gave hym) ther the Stiwardshepe of perce.      6967
- Sygram was  
wedded to the  
laundress,      Sygram also was in his remembraunce,      6968  
Vn to the lavender weddid ther he was,  
Whiche vtterly for soke hir acqueyntaunce,  
And toke hir Iurnay with Clarionas ;      6971  
The king) hym) grauntid, of his speciall grace,  
A fayre lordshippe onto them) bothe in fere,  
The whiche was wurth an Chi be yere.      6974
- and had a fair  
lordship given  
him by the king.      Thus quyte he them) that were to hym) so kynd,      6975  
And, for to seie<sup>1</sup> yow in shorte conclusion),  
A better prince was neuer had in mynd,  
Thanne he was on) that euer bare crown) ;      6978  
And thus he was a man) of grete renown),  
Sowdon) of perce with aħ his signory,  
And also kyng) of ynd and of surre.      6981
- Generydes and  
Clarionas lived  
many a year in  
prosperity,      In grete wurchipe Clarionas and he      6982  
Good lyff thei ledde to geder many a yere,  
In hartes ease and moche prosperite,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *valowe.*<sup>2</sup> MS. *seia.*

Issue they had whiche was to them full dere,	6985	and had issue.
Right grete lordes and ladyes thei were,		
Whiche on) of them) of xv yere of age,		The daughter was
The kyng <sup>r</sup> of Egipt had in mariage.	6988	married to the king of Egipt,
The remenaunt grew to grete honour,	6989	and the others
And thus I make an ende of this processe,		grew up in great
Besechyng <sup>r</sup> hym that is our saviour <sup>r</sup> ,		honour.
All oure synnes of pardon) to relese, <sup>1</sup>	6992	
And in the Ioy and blisse that <sup>2</sup> is endlese,		
he graunt vs a place perpetuall,		
In paradise where all his seyntes dwell.	6995	

**Explicit the boke of Gene-  
rides and of his faire lady Clarionas.**

<sup>1</sup> MS. *be relese*, but the first word is struck out.      <sup>2</sup> MS. *this*.

VARIOUS READINGS FROM THE PRINTED FRAGMENTS OF SIR GENERYDES,

GIVEN IN THE PREFACE AND POSTSCRIPT TO MR FURNIVALL'S EDITION  
OF THE HELMINGHAM MS. FOR THE ROXBURGHE CLUB.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2016. <i>claymeth it of</i> ] they clayme this             | 2058. <i>ij thousand . . . companye</i> ] [Sir  |
| 2017. <i>Also to be made</i> ] And also to be              | Crove]s with thre thousande                     |
| " <i>your</i> ] his  | in theyr company                                |
| 2018. <i>voward</i> ] forwarde                             | 2059. <i>ward</i> ] batayll                     |
| 2019. <i>of right it longith</i> ] it longeth of           | " <i>ser Anasore</i> ] anazere                  |
| ryght  | 2061. <i>they were thore</i> ] that there were  |
| 2021. <i>so it</i> ] me so                                 | 2062. <i>withoute</i> ] withouten               |
| 2022. <i>may withoute</i> ] may bere without               | 2064. <i>bothe the rule of more</i> ] the reule |
| 2025. <i>it is but</i> ] for it is                         | more  |
| 2026. <i>full curtes</i> ] curteys                         | 2067. <i>all</i> ] and                          |
| 2027. <i>they ganne</i> ] gan they                         | 2072. <i>by and by</i> ] ryght hardely          |
| 2029, 30. <i>withoute . . . Batell</i> ] without[ <i>t</i> | 2073. <i>after hym</i> ] after                  |
| <i>dowte</i> ] Unto the kyng of                            | 2075. <i>begely</i> ] vgly                      |
| kynges to gyue a strou[ <i>te</i> ]                        | " <i>bothe in</i> ] in                          |
| 2031. <i>ganne them</i> ] gan                              | 2105. <i>was Baner</i> ] bare the banere        |
| 2032. <i>princes</i> ] knyghtes                            | 2314. <i>they twayne</i> ] they                 |
| 2033. <i>other dyuerce</i> ] dyuers                        | 2345. <i>sheld and thu goo</i> ] shelde         |
| 2034. <i>Dukes and Erles</i> ] erles                       | agayne and go                                   |
| " <i>anon</i> ] many one                                   | 5339. <i>on fortune</i> ] a fortune             |
| 2035. <i>that they hadde vppon</i> ] so that               | 5343. <i>Amelokkez</i> ] syr Amelokes           |
| they shone   | 5344. <i>It was ayenst</i> ] This was           |
| 2036. <i>perlys</i> ] grete perles                         | 5345. <i>cause</i> ] case                       |
| 2037. <i>in the fressest</i> ] on the best                 | " <i>certente</i> ] certayne                    |
| 2038. <i>through out in</i> ] thrughe                      | 5351. <i>also he</i> ] he                       |
| 2040. <i>enmys for</i> ] enemyes                           | 5352. <i>late</i> ] let                         |
| 2042. <i>fro</i> ] Forth of                                | 5354. <i>where euer</i> ] where that            |
| 2043. <i>rideth</i> ] rode                                 | " <i>eny lande</i> ] ony londe                  |
| " <i>to his pavilion</i> ] vnto his tente                  | 5355. <i>noo lenger myght she</i> ] she myght   |
| 2044. <i>With . . . rome</i> ] With his lordes             | no lenger                                       |
| aboute hym wente   | 5356. <i>for very payn</i> ] for grete doloure  |
| 2045. <i>redy</i> ] all redy                               | 5357. <i>ageyn</i> ] that houre                 |
| 2046. <i>a companye</i> ] company                          | 5359. <i>that she</i> ] she                     |
| 2047. <i>were</i> ] brought                                | " <i>vp ayeyn</i> ] agayne                      |
| 2049. <i>All redy to gye</i> ] to guyde truly              | 5361. <i>refrayn</i> ] restrayne                |
| 2052. <i>att his demenyng</i> ] in his ledyng              | 5365. <i>full sure</i> ] sure                   |
| 2056. <i>he was baner</i> ] dyde the baner                 | 5371. <i>shuld kepe</i> ] kepe                  |
| bere   | 5372. <i>here</i> ] lo here                     |

5374. *that*] elles that  
 5375. *full hastily*] hastily  
 5378. *with the shall neuer*] shall neuer  
     with the  
 5379. *haue*] kepe  
 5382. *vppon*] on  
 5383. *as he*] as euer he  
 5384. *the chaumber*] her chaumbre  
 5386. *full of hevynes*] and full of per-  
     plexocyte  
 5387. *alway now*] alway  
 5388. *of his vnstabilnes*] his duplycyte  
 5389. *not gilty*] giltles  
 5390. *alway*] had alway  
 5392. *do be*] done by  
 5394. *a hevynes*] mornyng  
 5396. *also gentilnes*] asa gentyll kyng  
 5690. *here you speke*] here you  
 5692. *I am sure*] be ye sure  
 5694. *ferthermore*] furthermore  
     " *this*] so  
 5696. *o*] one  
     " *is*] is also  
 5701. *these wordes*] this worde  
     " *ganne*] began  
 5702. *goth*] wente  
 5703. *late*] let  
 5704. *hastiþ*] hasted  
 5705. *So*] And so  
     " *hir*] his  
 5706. *into*] in  
 5707. *the*] that  
 5708. *onto*] to  
 5709. *redy waye*] way redy  
 5711. *this to hym gan say*] to hym  
     sayde preuely  
 5712. *the dore*] this dore  
     " *I yow praye*] I pray you hertely  
 5714. *to now*] tyll nowe  
 5715. *the nerer he was*] the nerer he  
     coude  
 5716. *otherwise*] other  
 5720. *onto the*] to hir  
 5721. *vpon*] open nowe  
 5722. *Thanne Darell*] When he  
     " *and*] he  
 5723. *onto fayre*] vnto  
 5724. *ffrom ynd . . . contre*] Fro ynde  
     I come now as faste as I can  
     [te]  
 5725. *on to*] to  
 5726. *now this*] this  
 5727. *be dremyd*] ben drenchyd  
 5728. *hym noyeth*] and nyghtly is  
 5731. *quod*] nowe quod  
 5732. *lesyng*] lesynges  
 5733. *yow*] it  
 5736. *this message*] the erande  
 5737. *not to don*] done  
 5738. *why*] quod he why  
     " *yow*] ye  
 5740. *onto*] to  
 5742. *is he*] he is  
     " *this dare I*] I dare well  
 5744. *I shall tell yow trougt*] in very  
     trouthe  
 5752. *wote ye*] wote I  
 5753. *Serenydes*] Senerydes  
 5754. *he was*] was  
 5755. *ffor*] Fro  
     " *for*] fro  
 5756. *betwix*] bytwene  
 5757. *the trougt*] trouthe  
 5758. *that*] that euer  
 5759. *she*] the  
 5761. *and I had it*] if I had  
 5762. *shuld me mystrost*] mysdeme me  
     sholde  
     " *my*] ony  
 5763. *not A take vppon*] nat taken on  
 5767. *ser Darell*] hym  
 5768. *now quod*] quod  
     " *yow*] ye now  
 5769. *he soude suche*] suche  
 5770. *very certente*] certente  
 5772. *nerrer*] nere  
 5775. *to say*] I say  
 5780. *it*] them  
 5782. *to*] vp to  
     " *hand*] honde  
 5784. *right vele*] well  
 5785. *he*] that he  
 5786. *eny maner*] ony  
 5788. *preiudice*] dyspysse  
 5789. *nede*] great nede  
 5790. *canne goo*] may gone  
 5791. *doo*] done  
 5793. *both good*] euer gode  
 5794. *is homeward in*] [home]warde  
     gothe on  
 5795. *now*] a newe  
 5796. *cowde*] knewe  
 5799. *Citee*] towne  
 5800. *went*] sente  
 5802. *his own*] his  
 5803. [ ]nes to hym verament  
 5804. *that*] theyr

## GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

- A = He, 800.  
 A, Ah ! 3049, 6096.  
 A = of, 1150, 2752. A = in, 4810 ; unless this is an example of the indefinite article used redundantly with a numeral. A = have, 3483, 3955, 4829, 4883, 5763 (redundant).  
 ABASSHID, *v. pret.* was abashed or confounded, 127. ABASSHED, 4091 ; confounded, 3451. *pp.* ABASSHED, cast down, 6404.  
 ABELL, son of the prince of Turkey, 1921 ; constable and standard-bearer to the Persian army, 2017, 2023 ; slain by Belen, 2963.  
 ABIDENG, *sb.* dwelling, 4199 ; *part.* awaiting, 5957.  
 ABISSHID, *v. pret.* was abashed or confounded, 1260.  
 ABODE, *v. pret.* remained, 6147.  
 ABRAYDE, *v. pret.* started, 2320, 4717.  
 ABSERUYD, *v. pret.* observed, 6941.  
 ACCORDENG, *adj.* corresponding, 143, 1936, 2179, 6824.  
 ACCORDYNG, *adj.* appropriate, becoming, 245, 395.  
 A COMPAYNED, *pp.* accompanied, 1283.  
 ACQUEYN TAUNCE, *sb.* familiar friends, 6970.  
 ADO, *sb.* dealings, 2518. We use 'to do' in the same sense.  
 ADRED, *pp.* afraid, 844. ADREDE, 3867, 5965, 6073.  
 AFERDE, *adj.* afraid, 85, 1435, 5601, 6771.  
 AFFENDID, *pp.* offended, 4580, 6496.  
 AFFRAY, *sb.* affright, terror, 6545.  
 AFFRONTE, *adv.* in front, 4811.  
 AFORE, *prep.* before, 5979.  
 AFRAYE, *sb.* assault, attack, 2533.  
 AFTER, *adv.* afterwards, 3407.  
 AFTER, *prep.* 'After me,' according to my advice, 6795.  
 AGAST, *adj.* aghast, frightened, 5936.  
 AGE. 'Wels in age,' advanced in years, 1905.  
 AGEYN, *prep.* against, 1476 ; 'ther ageyn' = against it, 973.  
 AGREYD, *pp.* 'Was agreyd' = had agreed, 5638.  
 A HYE, *adv.* on high, 3051.  
 AISSHES, *sb.* ashes, 4406.  
 A LANDE, *adv.* on shore, 93.  
 A LATE, *adv.* of late, 4635.  
 ALIGHT, *v. pret.* alighted, 4562, 4576.  
 ALL AND SOM, everything, generally and particularly, 5570, 6442.  
 ALL IN ONE, *adv.* altogether, 1319.  
 ALLONLY, *adv.* only, 6411.  
 ALL ONLY, *adv.* only, alone, 881, 1432.  
 ALLOWE, *v. t.* to approve, 2783.  
 ALL SONE, as soon, 3778.  
 ALL THE HAST. 'In all the hast,' in all haste, 1293, 1444, 2807, 2886, 5566, 5878, 5931, 6442, 6685.  
 ALL THE HOOLE, all the whole, 3600, 6673. ALL THE HOLE, 5911.  
 ALL THE HOOLL, 6670.  
 ALL UTTERLY, *adv.* entirely, 1500, 1757, 1867.

- ALOW**, *adv.* in a low voice, 5717.
- ALTO**, *adv.* altogether, 1559. **ALL TO**, 4272, 6094.
- ALWAY**, *adv.* always, 415, 490, 899, 1044. In 3948 it appears to be an error for 'all away.'
- AMELOK**, the false steward of Auferius, and usurping King of India, 28, 2129. **AMALOK**, 2381.
- AMEND**, *pp.* amended, 6592.
- AMONG**, *adv.* 'Euer among,' continually from time to time, 1373, 1853. Palsgrave gives, 'Amonge, parfoys.' See also Prof. Zupitza's note to Guy of Warwick, l. 950.
- AMYSELL**, sworn brother to Ananyell, 4833.
- ANANYELL**, brother of Amelok, slain by Generydes, 4825, 5016, 5830, 5844.
- ANASORE**, a knight of Persia, keeper of the prison, 1460, 5575, 6961. Son of Croves, 1906.
- ANASAR**, 1471. **ANASOR**, 1503.
- ANOSORE**, 2852, 3023, 3029.
- ANCERS**, *sb.* anchors, 3653.
- ANCETORS**, *sb.* ancestors, 3139.
- AND**, *conj.* if, 214, 354, 889, 3415, 4436, 6432.
- AN HUNTYNG**, 37.
- ANONE VPPON**, *adv.* immediately after, 78. **ANON VPON**, 141. See **VPPON**.
- A PASE**, *adv.* apace, swiftly, 988, 4453. **A FACE**, 2316, 3076.
- APAYDE**, *pp.* pleased, 848, 3485, 4206, 4419, 5072. **APAYD**, 1932.
- APAYED**, 856, 1162, 2430, 2828.
- APAYN**, an error for 'and payn,' 5915.
- APOYNTEMENT**, *sb.* arrangement, 5424.
- APOYNTID**, *pp.* arranged, 5347.
- APOYNTED**, 5589. **APOYNTED**, 5624. **APOYNTID**, 5887.
- APPARELL**, *sb.* provision, 641. In the next line the word is repeated, apparently in error, perhaps for 'peril;' or it may merely be used in the other sense of 'preparation,' like Fr. *appareil*.
- AQUYTE**, *v. pret.* requited, 1876.
- ARABYE**, Arabia, 1901.
- ARAY**, *sb.* condition, 1193. **ARRAYE**, 1258.
- ARAYED**, *pp.* 'Thus hath arayed me,' hath made me in this guise, 515.
- ARKADYE**, Arcadia, 1952.
- ARMYS** 'To do armys' = to do battle, 6078.
- As**, redundant in the phrases 'as for that nyght,' 138, 152, 383; 'As for a nyghtis space,' 230; 'as in this case,' 442, 582; 'as for a space,' 568; 'as after hir avise,' 702; 'as for a tyme,' 902; 'where as,' 1191; 'as for his hartys ease,' 1354; 'as for the landes right,' 1846; 'as for more witnessse,' 2382; 'As now,' 2409; 'as towching,' 2805, 5443; 'as after myn avise,' 2892; 'as for a daye or twayne,' 2990; 'as for this landis right,' 3345; 'as for a litill space,' 3789; 'as for this day,' 3887; 'as for that nyght,' 3897; 'as this nyght,' 3902; 'As for the cheve guerdon,' 3912; 'as for on nyghte reste,' 4030; 'as for Generides,' 4623; 'As late me see,' 5233; 'as yesterday,' 5278; 'as for a certeyn space,' 5313; 'As for a dreame,' 5634; 'as for a certeyn space,' 6293; 'As for to me,' 6579.
- ASKAPYD**, *v. pret.* escaped, 6096.
- ASKRY**, *v.* to descry, 5999.
- ASKERYE**, 6014.
- ASPIED**, *v. pret.* espied, spied, 437.
- ASPIED**, *pp.* 2476. **ASPYED**, 2674.
- ASPYE**, *v.* to spy, watch, 1357, 1400, 2600.
- ASSE**, *v.* to assay, 6074.
- ASSEMELYD**, *pp.* assembled, 1317.
- ASSEMELID**, 2046.
- ASSENT**, *sb.* 'Ar of hir assent,' are in league with her, 983.
- ASSIRYE**, Assyria, 2166. **ASIRYE**, 2545.
- ASTATE**, *sb.* state, 389.

- ASTERTE**, *v.* escape from, avoid, 173.  
**ASTOINYD**, *pp.* astonished, stunned, 2498.  
**ASTOWNYD**, *pp.* astounded, 3506, 4013.  
**A SURANCE**, *sb.* assurance, 5450.  
**AT**, *pron.* that, 591, 4388. **ATT**, 347.  
**ATT**, *prep.* In the phrase 'toke good hede att hym,' 660.  
**ATTE**, at the, 2797, 2947, 4106, 6912.  
**ATTE**, in the phrase 'atte after none' = in the afternoon, 3715.  
**A TWOO**, *adv.* in two, 6097.  
**AUCTOR**, *sb.* author, 6002.  
**AUFERIUS**, King of India, father of Generydes, 7, &c.  
**AUFRIKE**, Africa, 16. **AUFERYK**, 2138.  
**AUNCOETOURS**, *sb.* ancestors, 6522.  
**AVAILE**, *sb.* advantage, 4259.  
**AVAYLE**, 4487.  
**AVAUNCE**, *v.* to advance, 489, 2021, 3417, 4840, 5060.  
**AVAUNSED**, *v. pret.* advanced, 650.  
**AVAUNSID**, 2214, 2673.  
**AVAUNTE**, *v.* to vaunt, boast, 1008.  
**AVENTURE**, *sb.* adventure, fortune, 370, 2597, 4893, 4969, 6928. 'Att all aventure' = at all events or hazard, 3494, 6355. 'At aventure' or 'Att aventure,' by chance, 1238, 2791, 4414.  
**AVISE**, 258, 981, 1402, 1762, 2683; or **AVYSE**, *sb.* advice, 101. 'Toke gode avise,' considered well, 449; consideration, 702.  
**AVISE**, *v.* to advise, 6063.  
**AVISEMENT**, *sb.* advice, consideration, 4761.  
**AVOYDE**, *v. i.* to remove, disappear, 4239.  
**AVOYDID**, *pp.* cleared away, removed, 3293.  
**AVOWE**, *v.* to avouch, acknowledge, 894.  
**AWAITENG**, *pr. p.* waiting, 648.  
**AWAYWARD**, *adv.* away, 3813.  
**AWISE**, in the phrase 'maner awise' = maner wise, 4797.  
**AWREKE**, *v.* to avenge, 508, 5122.  
**AWYSE**. In 146 'sothe awyse' is probably an error for 'soche a wyse.'  
**AXKID**, *v. pret.* asked, 309.  
**AYE**, *adv.* again, 4426.  
**AYEN**, *adv.* again, 133, 1098.  
**AYENST**, *adv.* against, 5472, 6122.  
**AYENWARD**, *adv.* again, 128, 1876, 3366, 3944, 4492.  
**AYERIS**, *sb.* heirs, 2016.  
**AYEYN**, *adv.* again, 2718, 2735, 3942.  
**AYRE**, *sb.* heir, 5187, 6669; *pl.* **AYRIS**, 6130.  
**BALAM**, King of Damascus, 1957, 2090.  
**BANYERE**, *sb.* standard-bearer, 2014. **BANEER**, 2055. **BANER**, 2105. **BANERE**, 2128, 2213, 2963.  
**BARACHIAS**, King of Europe, 2147.  
**BARONAGE**, *sb.* the barons as a body, 4218, 6936.  
**BATELL**, *sb.* a body of troops, 2077, 2101. **BATAYLL**, 2090.  
**BE**, *pp.* been, 352, 811, 1209, 5220, &c.  
**BE**, *prep.* by, 412, 635, 2445, 2761, &c.; with regard to, 610.  
**BE CAUSE**, *conj.* in order that, 4279.  
**BEDDE**, *v. pret.* bade, 1336.  
**BEFALL**, *pp.* befallen, 1087, 3388.  
**BEFORN**, *adv.* before, 521, 3139, 4603.  
**BEGELY**, *adv.* bigly, hugely, 2075.  
**BEHAVINGE**, *sb.* behaviour, 433.  
**BEHEST**, *sb.* promise, 4499, 4690.  
**BEHIGHT**, *v.* to promise, assure, 812, 2231, 2695, 3508.  
**BELEN** the bold, King of Egypt, 1735. **BELLEYN**, 2451. **BELLYN**, 3291. **BELYN**, 3285. **BOLEYN**, 3059. **BELLYNG**, 3463. **BOLYN**, 3074.  
**BEN**, *v. inf.* be, 2685; *ind. 3 pl.* 2738.

- BE RAFT, *v. pret.* bereft, 6551.  
 BERY, *v.* to bury, 5883; *pret.* BERIED, 5877.  
 BESEN, *pp.* beseen, provided, 1978.  
 BE SENE, 2068.  
 BESETTE, *v.* to set, bestow, 5021.  
 BESY, *adj.* busy, 5303.  
 BESYNESSE, *sb.* in the phrase 'did all ther besynesse' = busied themselves, exerted themselves to the utmost, 1167.  
 BE TROST, *pp.* trusted, 1049, 3615.  
 BETWIX, *prep.* between, 108, 905, 3117, 5259.  
 BE TYME, *adv.* betimes, in good time, 522.  
 BEWRAYED, *pp.* exposed, 3885.  
 BE WREYE, *v.* to expose, betray, 4155.  
 BLAME, *sb.* 'To take a blame' = to take blame, 1628.  
 BLANCHARD, the name of King Belen's steed, 2458; given to Gwynan, 2265; and won by Generydes, 2247, 6066.  
 BLODE, ON. 'Braste on blode,' burst out bleeding, 546.  
 BLYSSYNG, *sb.* blessing, 236. BLISSYNG. 'On his blissyng,' as he expected to receive his blessing, 5346.  
 BOLDITH, *v. pres.* emboldens, 5803.  
 BOLEYN, BOLYN. See BELEN.  
 BOORE, *pp.* born, 5635. BORE, 6132.  
 BOTE, *sb.* use, advantage, 4681, 5853; *v.* 'It botith not,' is of no use, 4901.  
 BOTELER, *sb.* butler, 424.  
 BOUNDEN, *pp.* bound, 1458.  
 BOUSTOUS, *adj.* boisterous, rough, 2152.  
 BRAKE, *pp.* broken, 3489.  
 BRAST, *v. pret.* broke, 2326, 2677, 3047, 4926, 6094, &c.  
 BRASTE, *v. pret.* burst out, 546.  
 BRAYDE, *sb.* a sudden movement, a start, 2218, 2342, 2736, 6069.  
 BRAYDED, *v. pret.* started, 165.  
 BREDE, *sb.* breadth, 2075.  
 BRODER, *sb.* brother, 4826, 6915.  
 BRODEREN, *sb.* brethren, 2656.  
 BRODERHODE, *sb.* brotherhood, 6252.  
 BROWGTH, *pp.* brought, 4874.  
 BUSCOMMEST, *adj.* buxomest, most compliant or obedient, 2505.  
 BUSSHMENT, *sb.* ambush, 950.  
 BUSCHEMENT, 5977.  
 BUT IF, *conj.* except, 322, 332.  
 BY AND BY, *adv.* 2048, 2072, 3287, 4766.  
 BYTWIX, *prep.* between, 2188.  
 BY WARE, *v.* beware, 4690.  
 CALLED or CALLID, reputed; in the phrases 'called passing wight,' 4573; 'callid good,' 4994. See 5186.  
 CAME, *v. pres.* come, 6745.  
 CAPADOCE, Cappadocia, 2087.  
 CAPADOOR, Cappadocia, 1954. Elsewhere CAPADOCE.  
 CAREFULL, *adj.* full of care, sorrowful, 4161, 6434, 6583.  
 CASARE, elsewhere CESARE, 6702.  
 CAST, *v.* to intend, purpose, 4423; *pret.* 3654.  
 CAWDE, could, 373. A scribe's error for 'Cowde.'  
 CERTAYNE, 'Incertayne,' 462, 476, 4856; 'For certeyn,' 419; 'For certayn,' 4934; 'The certayn,' 2036, 6600.  
 CERUICE, *sb.* service, 4675.  
 CESALL, one of the Sultan of Persia's allies, 1965.  
 CESARE, Cesarea, 1926, 6681.  
 CESELL, Sicily, 2070.  
 CHARGID. Perhaps for 'chargeth,' the imperative, 6429.  
 CHARISSHE, *v.* to cherish, 6664.  
 CHARITE, OWT OF, 502. SEYNT CHARITE, 4282.  
 CHASE, *v. pret.* chose, 1325.  
 CHASTELYN, *sb.* the keeper of a castle, 1520, 1609. CHASTELAYN, 1632.



- CHAUNBOUR, *sb.* chamber, 1407.  
 CHAUNBYR, *sb.* chamber, 69;  
 CHAUNBER, 71, 3792, 4629.  
 CHEFF, *adj.* chief, 5893, 6735.  
 CHER, *sb.* aspect, countenance, 129;  
 condition, 2594, 6031. CHERE,  
 239, 433, 2953; happiness, 2580.  
 'To make chere' = to be cheer-  
 ful, 571; 'To make better  
 chere' = to treat better, 2660;  
 'To take chere,' 751; 'To  
 make frendly chere' = to treat  
 in a friendly manner, 5764;  
 'To make chere' = to cheer,  
 6341; 'Made hevvy chere,' were  
 sad in countenance, 6737.  
 CHERYDONE, Prince of Cesarea,  
 and father of Darell, 1928.  
 CHESE, *v.* choose, 1232, 1316.  
 CHESE, an error for 'Chek,' 4778.  
 CHEVE, *adj.* chief, 3912.  
 CHOSE, *pp.* chosen, 5230.  
 CLARIONAS, daughter to the Sultan  
 of Persia, 686, &c.  
 CLARIONAT, a town in Persia, 3677.  
 CLARYET, the name of Generydes'  
 sword, 3481.  
 CLAYMETH, *v.* 3 *pl.* claim, 2016.  
 CLEFE, *v. pret.* clave, cleft, 4598.  
 CLEUE, *v. pret.* clave, 3035, 3523.  
 COME, *v. pret.* came, 3017, 3042,  
 3829, 4214, 4281, 5204, 6396.  
 COMENAUTE, *sb.* the commonalty  
 or commons, 254.  
 COMFORT, *v. pret.* comforted, 3854.  
 COMMANDITH, commendeth, 444.  
 COMMAUNDITH, 5725.  
 COMNE, *pp.* come, 9.  
 COMPANABLE, *adj.* companionable,  
 2261.  
 COMPASSING, *adj.* 'False compass-  
 ing' = with a false design, 4163.  
 COMPASSION, 6419; an error for  
 'compassing.' See 4163.  
 COMPLAYNE, *v. t.* to lament for,  
 6836.  
 CON. 'To con thanke' = to thank,  
 878.  
 CONFORTABLE, *adj.* comfortable,  
 able to help, 2212.  
 CONFORTYNG, *pr. p.* comforting,  
 2514.  
 CONNYNG, *adj.* skilful, wise, 338.  
 CONNYNG, *sb.* skill, wisdom, 404,  
 1020.  
 CONNYNGLY, *adv.* wisely, 398.  
 CONSEYTE, *sb.* imagination, opinion,  
 696, 6091. CONSAITE, 4352.  
 CONSEITE, good opinion, favour,  
 4638, 4739, 4902.  
 CONTENTAUNCE, *sb.* 'Made no con-  
 tenaunce,' did not change the  
 expression of her face, 5116.  
 COPPE, *sb.* a cup, 4406.  
 CORAGEUS, *adj.* courageous, 2093.  
 CORDE, *sb.* accord, 6399.  
 CORNYSSH, the native county of  
 Sampson, 6054. Called CORNYTH  
 in the MS. 1. 3137.  
 CORYNTH, Corinth, 3137. The MS.  
 has CORNYTH, and elsewhere  
 CORNYSSH.  
 COST, *sb.* coast, border, 6146.  
 COSTOM, *sb.* custom, 2974.  
 COSTYNG, *part.* traversing, 5923.  
 COUENAUNDE, *sb.* covenant, agree-  
 ment, 3807.  
 COUERTURE, *sb.* pretext, 4596.  
 COUMFORT, *v.* comfort, 1019; *sb.*  
 comfort, 1023.  
 COUNFORT, *sb.* comfort, 61, 3565.  
 COUNFORT, *v.* to comfort, 76, 1014.  
 COURSE. 'Toke ther course, or  
 coursis,' a term of tilting, when  
 the combatants rode at each  
 other with their spears, 2462,  
 2627, 3360, 3383; 'Rode a  
 course,' 5098.  
 COWDE, could, 381.  
 COWD GOOD SKILL, was skilful, 932.  
 CRAFT, *sb.* 'A craft' = a cunning  
 contrivance, 4233.  
 CREDENCE, *sb.* 'To take credence'  
 = to believe, 4680.  
 CROPPE, *sb.* the top of a plant or  
 tree. "Crophe and rote," 4940.  
 CROSSYNG HYM THE WAY, crossing  
 his path, 5814. See 6076.  
 CROVES, King of Arabia, 1901.

- CRYED, *pp.* proclaimed, 5573, 6146.  
 CRYES, *sb.* proclamations, 4757.  
 CURTESLY, *adv.* courteously, 166, 392, 602, 694, 5091, 6700.  
 CURTEYS, *adj.* courteous, 3, 307.  
 COURTEYSE, 338. CURTES, 425, 2026, 6617, 6866. CURTESE, 1946, 6672.  
 DALAY, *sb.* delay, 1842.  
 DAMAS, Damascus, 4744.  
 DAMASK, Damascus, 3140.  
 DANGER, *sb.* 'Made danger = made a difficulty, hesitated, 5073.  
 DARELL, a knight of Persia, son of Cherydone, Prince of Cesarea, 1505, 1929, 5058.  
 DAVID, eldest son of the Prince of Turkey, 1920.  
 DAY, *sb.* space of time; in the phrases 'ij monethis day,' 5882, 5888; 'a moneth day,' 1717, 1890.  
 DAYLE, a mistake for 'daye,' 3959.  
 DEBATE, *sb.* quarrel, strife, 2296, 5221.  
 DEBONERLY, *adv.* 279; perhaps for 'deboner' = debonair.  
 DED, 'Don to ded' = put to death, 1487.  
 DEDE, *v. pret.* did, 692, 1327, 5216; 'Dede of' = put off, 4343. DED, 3925, 4798.  
 DEFaute, *sb.* fault, 875.  
 DEFENDE, *v.* to forbid, 900, 4479, 6590.  
 DEFENSABLE, *adj.* 'In defensible wise,' in a defensive manner, fully armed, 1888.  
 DELAY. In l. 5300 'eny delay' is found to rhyme with 'batell,' where it must be a mistake for 'fayle.'  
 DELE, *sb.* a part or portion. 'Euery dele,' every bit, 112, 605, 892, 2717; 'Some dele,' somewhat, 261. DEELL, 698.  
 DEME, *v.* to judge, 461, 1614; *pret.* DEMYD, 1455, 4710.  
 DEMEANE, *v.* to deal with, treat, manage, 788, 4622.  
 DEMEANYD, *pp.* 'To be demeanyd' = to behave, conduct oneself, 1719.  
 DEMEANYNG, *sb.* demeanour, 398, 2195, 5981. DEMEANENG, 662, 5179. DEMEANING, 929. DEMENING, 1345. 'Att his demening,' under his command, 2052.  
 DEPARTE, *v. t.* to part, separate, 2747, 5851; and *t.* to share, divide, 3418; *pp.* DEPARTID, 3080, 6254.  
 DEPARTENG, *sb.* parting, separation, 209, 2661.  
 DETERMYTTE, *v. t.* to put an end to, 1695.  
 DEVER, *sb.* endeavour, 6506.  
 DEWTE, *sb.* 'Of dewte,' as their due, 2016.  
 DIGHT, *v.* to make ready, prepare, 382, 1110, 2027; *pp.* prepared, 3636.  
 DILIGENCE, *sb.* 'Dede diligence' = was diligent, 6756.  
 DISCOMFETE, *pp.* discomfited, 2411.  
 DISCOMFETURE, *sb.* 'Were att discomfiture' = were discomfited, 2511.  
 DISCOMFETEYTE, *pp.* discomfited, distressed, 6112, 6292.  
 DISCOMFORTID, *pp.* deprived of comfort, 5913.  
 DISCOMFORTURE, *sb.* discomfiture, 2571.  
 DISENTE, *sb.* descent, 1314.  
 DISFORTLES, an error for 'comfortles,' 6645.  
 DISMAY, *v.* used as a reflexive verb, 5328.  
 DISPLESAUNCE, *sb.* displeasure, 4268, 4691, 5189, 5319, 6481.  
 DISPORTE, *sb.* sport, 36, 3836. 'Disporteng place,' pleasure ground, 647.  
 DISSENTE, 956; apparently an error for 'assent.' See 983.  
 DISSESE, *sb.* discomfort, 292, 713, 878.

- DISSEYUED, *pp.* deceived, 959.  
 DISTEYNE, *sb.* destiny, 1097.  
 DISTEYNEY, *sb.* destiny, 175.  
 Do, in the phrases 'do ordeyne' = arrange, 748; 'Do calle' = call, 6428.  
 Do, *pp.* done, 11, 416, 555, 606, 960, 1179, 2881, 2955, 4646, &c.  
 Doo, 3249.  
 Do away = put it away, 6590.  
 DOBILNESSE, *sb.* duplicity, 3890.  
 DOLVYN, *pp.* dug, 5207.  
 DON, *v. inf.* to do, 5737.  
 DOON, *adv.* down, 4094.  
 DOTR, 3 *pl.* 6655.  
 DOUGHT, *v.* to doubt, 661.  
 DOUTELYS, *adv.* doubtless, 430.  
 DOWTE, *v. i.* to fear, 2519.  
 DRAWE, *pp.* drawn, 1778, 3398.  
 DREDE, *v. pret.* dreaded, 996.  
 DREMYD, *was, pret.* dreamed, 5464, 6158; *pp.* BE DREMYD, 5727.  
 DRESSE, *v.* make ready, prepare, 1164, 3587, 4602; prepare to go, 3769, 3981; *pret.* DRESSID, 2028, 2477, 2830, 4563, 6626.  
 DROW, *v. pret.* drew, 1000.  
 DURED, *pp.* endured, continued, 4618.  
 DURENG, *part.* continuing, 2766.  
 DYAMAUNTEZ, *sb.* diamonds, 2036.  
 EGDIDAS, a city of Egypt, 4200.  
 Ellipsis of verb of motion, 2901, 6947.  
 ELLYS, *adv.* else, otherwise, 4859, 5693.  
 EMBOSED, *pp.* embossed, foaming at the mouth. A hunting term, 80.  
 ENBATELL, *v. t.* to set in battle array, 2904. ENBATELID, *pret.* 2919. ENBATELYD, *pp.* 2925.  
 ENBROWDERYD, *pp.* embroidered, 3287. ENBROWDRED, *v. pret.* embroidered, 3253.  
 ENCONTINENT, *adv.* incontinently, immediately, 1769. ENCON-  
 TYNENT, 2819.  
 ENDLY, *adv.* inwardly, thoroughly, 849, 4844, 6698. See INLY.  
 ENDURYD, *v. pret.* continued, 2976.  
 ENGENYS, *sb.* engines, 2887.  
 ENMY, *sb.* enemy, 4951; *pl.* ENMYS, 2005, 2082, 2524, 4605.  
 ENSURE, *v.* assure, 169, 223, 431, 893, 2751.  
 ENTENT, *sb.* endeavour, 954. See INTENT.  
 ENTENT, *sb.* design, thought, 4668. 'To ther entente,' 220; 'To ther intent,' 1323; 'To myn entent,' 808; 'In ther entent,' 924; 'After ther entente,' 1070, 2099; 'As to his entente,' 2666; 'Aftur your own entent,' 2868; 'In his entent,' 2880, 6404; 'In myne entent,' 5286; 'The effecte of his entente,' 4217, 4275, 5810. See also 6740.  
 ENTRETYD, *pp.* treated, 3428.  
 ERANTE, *adj.* arrant, 1007.  
 ERITAGE, *sb.* heritage, 3115, 4642.  
 ERMONES, the King of Higher Ind, 2150, 3017; slain by Generydes, 3053. See HARMONES.  
 ERMONYE, 1958.  
 ERETELY, *adv.* heartily, 4057.  
 ESAUNCE, King of Nicomedia, 1945.  
 ESCHETE, *sb.* escheat, forfeiture, 6963.  
 ESCHEW, *v.* to avoid, 1377.  
 ESKEPYD, *pp.* escaped, 2374.  
 ESPECIALL. 'In especiall' = especially, 5739, 6411.  
 ESTATIS, *sb.* persons of state and dignity, 6919.  
 ETHIOFE, Ethiopia, 1947, 3143.  
 EUER IN ON, *adv.* continually, 5594. EUER IN ONE, 6182.  
 EVERYCHONE, *pron.* every one, 5866, 5872.  
 EXCEPT, *v.* to accept, receive, 406.  
 EYNE, *sb.* eyes, 1483, 4398.  
 EYTHER, *pron.* each, 3447.  
 FADER, *sb.* father, 134.  
 FALL, *pp.* befallen, happened, 5487.

- FALL, rhyming with 'will' and 'still,' 5858.
- FALLOW, *sb.* fellows, 1766.
- FALSED, *sb.* falsehood, 958.
- FALSHEDE, *sb.* falsehood, 1539, 5221, 5267.
- FANTESIES, *sb.* fancies, 4652.
- FANTESYOE, 4676.
- FARDE, *v. pret.* behaved, seemed, 4786.
- FARE, *sb.* course of life, 4495.
- FATID, *v. pret.* faded, 6761.
- FAWTE, *sb.* fault, 4386, 5686.
- FAYNE, *adj.* glad, 27, 3801, 5649.
- FAYN, 1145, 1284, 2329, 4560.
- FEBELID, *v. pret.* grew feeble, 6646.
- FELASHEPE, *sb.* company, 1667, 1956. FELASSHEPE, 2855.
- FELAW, *sb.* companion, 134, 4833.
- FELD, *sb.* field. To 'sette a feld' is to put an army in order of battle, 2914, 2921, 4806; 'Made ther feld,' 4813; 'made a feld,' 4817; 'To make a feld,' 5301.
- FELE, *adj.* much, 6701.
- FELISCHEPE, *sb.* company, 1886.
- FELISSHEPE, 2540, 4830, 5982, 6326. FELISSHEPPE, 2869, 2969.
- FENDE, *sb.* fiend, 3069; *pl.* FENDEZ, 2520.
- FENYALL, *adj.* final, 5038.
- FER, *adv.* far, 911.
- FERD, *adj.* afraid, 3389. FERDE, 4425.
- FERDER, *adv.* further, 6154.
- FERE. 'In fere' or 'in feere' = together, 422, 527, 728, 1326, 1378, 2113, 4353, 4604, 6210, 6620, 6973.
- FERLY, *adv.* strangely, wonderfully; and hence, impetuously, 2203, 5815.
- FERRE, *adj.* far. 'Ferre in age,' advanced in life, 66, 228, 3666; *adv.* 3118.
- FEYNTID, *pp.* rendered faint, 6647.
- FISYKKE, *sb.* physic, 6876.
- FLATRISE, *sb.* flattery, 4042.
- FOR BECAUSE, *conj.* because, 2959, 6947.
- FOR BLEED, *pp.* weakened by loss of blood, 4946, 6112; bleeding, 6403.
- FOR BLODE. It is difficult to say whether 'sore for blode' (3528) signifies 'sore for loss of blood,' or 'having bled sore.' Most likely the latter. Compare 'sore forbled,' 4946.
- FOR BY CAUSE, *conj.* because, 6037, 6184.
- FORDER, *v.* to further, 336.
- FORGETE, *pp.* forgotten, 2352, 5367, 5558, 6090, 6961.
- FORGEVE, *pp.* forgiven, 4730.
- FORGEVYN, *pp.* forgiven, 6125.
- FORGEVEN, 6323.
- FORGROWE, *pp.* misshapen, 3667.
- FORMEST, *adj.* first, foremost, 1998, 2023, 2971.
- FORS, *sb.* care. 'Gave butt litill fors,' took but little care, 2268.
- FORSAKE, *pp.* forsaken, 4671.
- FORSOKE, *pret.* gave up, abandoned, 5674.
- FORSTER, *sb.* forester, 975, 4803, 6674.
- FORTHERAUNCE, *sb.* furtherance, advancement, 6664.
- FORTHERMORE, *adv.* furthermore, 103.
- FOR THOUGHT, *v. pret.* repented, 1456.
- FORTUNE, *v.* to chance, happen, 3977, 4234, 5895.
- FOR WHYE, *conj.* because, 996.
- FOR WONDID, *pp.* severely wounded, 6384.
- FORYERAUNCE, *sb.* furtherance, 6482.
- FOR YETE, *pp.* forgotten, 1916.
- FOUGHTEN, *pret.* 3 *pl.* fought, 3512.
- FOUNDEN, *pp.* found, 5614.
- FOUNDRED, *v. pret.* were worn out with fatigue; used of horses, 3385.
- FOURTHNYGHT, *sb.* fortnight, 5342.
- FOYS, *sb.* foes, 2491, 5157.
- FRAUNCHESSE, *sb.* franchise, 1273.

- FRE**, an error for 'fere' or 'faire,' 5100.
- FRELY**, *adv.* 2415; perhaps for 'ferly.'
- FRENDLEHEDE**, *sb.* friendship, 5170.
- FRESSEST**, *adj.* freshest, 2037, 3562.
- FRO**, *prep.* from, 792, 5712. **FROO**, 3483, 3945.
- FURMABELY**, *adv.* formally, conformably to precedent, 1728.
- FYENCE**, *sb.* affiance, trust, 5611.
- FYLLE**, *v. pret.* fell, 4095.
- FYND**, *v.* to provide, 1013.
- FYNE**, *sb.* end, 1757.
- FYNIALL**, *adj.* final, 5427, 6251.
- GADERID**, *v. pret.* gathered, 2917.
- GADEBYNG**, *sb.* gathering, 1335.
- GAILL**, *sb.* gaol, 1696.
- GALAD**, King of Assyria, 2167, 2545.
- GANNE**, *v. pret.* began, 243, 390, 933, 1998, 4870, 5701. **GAN**, 5711.
- GEERE**, *sb.* gear, equipment, 2104, 2670. **GEBE**, 2857, 4563.
- GENERYDES**, son of Auferius and Sereyne, 291, &c.
- GETE**, *v. imper.* get, 6063.
- GETEN**, *pp.* gotten, begotten, 187.
- GEVE**, *v.* to give, 4249; *pp.* given, 3581, 4642.
- GIDE**, *sb.* guide, 4803.
- GIDID**, *v. pret.* guided, 4800.
- GIRDE**, *pp.* girt, 3557.
- GISE**, *sb.* guise, 2974, 4203.
- GLAD**, *sb.* gladness, joy, 1255.
- GLYNT**, *v. pret.* glanced, 2421; flashed, 6088.
- GOFFORE**, the Sultan of Persia, 651.
- Goo**, in the phrase 'goo sett,' 2914.
- Goo**, *pp.* gone, 4003, 4783, 6781.
- GOOD**, *sb.* goods, possessions, 237.
- GOOD**, *interj.* 2770.
- GOODLYHEED**, *sb.* goodness, 679.
- GOODLY HEDE**, 2803, 6340.
- GOOD MAN**, *sb.* master, proprietor, 1122.
- GOTEN**, *pp.* begotten, 4287.
- GOTH**, *v. imper.* go, 6484.
- GOVERNANCE**, *sb.* government, 674, 1094, 1948.
- GOULYS**, *adj.* gules, 2306.
- GRAMEROY**, *int.* Fr. grand merci, great thanks, 452, 2653.
- GRAUNT**, *pp.* granted, 1671.
- GRE**, *v.* to agree, 1141.
- GRE**, *sb.* pleasure; to take in gre = to be pleased, 103, 998.
- GREE**, *v.* to agree, 5294.
- GREEKE**, *sb.* Greece, 356, 402.
- GRESELY**, *adj.* grisly, 2153.
- GRESES**, *sb.* steps, 1531.
- GRISSELL**, the name of Generydes' horse, 3301.
- GROW**, *pp.* grown, 804. **GROWE**, 1343.
- GUSARE**, an Ethiopian in the service of Serenydes, 5245.
- GWYNAN**, son of Belen, King of Egypt, 2127, 3595, 5787. **GUYNAN**, 2238, 4198. **GWAYNAN**, 2241.
- GWYNOT**, chamberlain to Clario-nas, 2688, 3244, 6800.
- GYE**, *v. t.* to guide, 2049.
- HAKENEY**, *sb.* hackney, 1249.
- HAN**, an, 5269.
- HAND**. To 'bere in hand' = to treat, 2780.
- HAND BE HAND** = hand to hand, 1827.
- HANDE**. 'Of his hande,' 1930; 'Of his handis,' 5186; 'Aside hand of' = beside, 2453, 2825.
- HANGED**, *adj.* 'An hanged bedde,' a bed with curtains, 71.
- HAP**, *v.* to happen, 156.
- HAPPYD**, *v. pret.* happened, 435, 3622. 'Hym happyd in,' he lighted upon, 57. **HAPPID**, 3524, 6161.
- HARD**, *v. pret.* heard, 516, 659, 2740, 3347, 3663, 5730. **HARDE**, 49.
- HARD**, *pp.* heard, 897.

- HARKENYD**, *v. pret.* heard: followed by 'of,' 2949.
- HARKYN**, *v.* to hear: followed by 'of,' 4016.
- HARMES**, *sb.* arms, 614, 2305.
- HARMYS**, 2405.
- HARMONES**, the king of higher Ind, 2956.
- HARNES**, *sb.* armour, 605, 2028, 2965. **HARNESSE**, 2945. **HARNEYNS**, 6088.
- HAROWED**, *sb.* a herald, 2249.
- HARTID**, *pp.* encouraged, 2418.
- HATH**, 3 *pl.* 2659.
- HAUE**. In the phrase 'have here' = take here, 6587, 6770. 'Had hym awaye,' took him away, 6643. **HAUE**, apparently for 'hath,' 1710.
- HEDYR**, *adv.* hither, 75. **HEDEB**, 168, 5667, 6219.
- HEERE**, *sb.* hair, 545. **HERE**, 501, 6584.
- HELME**, *sb.* helmet, 6106, 6107.
- HELVYS**, *sb.* helves, handles, 2162.
- HEM**, *pron.* them, 5931.
- HEM SELF**, *pron.* himself, 4786.
- HERE**, *pron.* her, 4247.
- HERE BEFORE**, *adv.* heretofore, 1134.
- HERIS**, hers, 4675.
- HEVILLY**, *adv.* sorrowfully, 5513.
- HEVY**, *adj.* sorrowful, 239, 595, 2665, 3038, 5847, 6602.
- HEUYNESSE**, *sb.* sorrow, 887, 2548, 2604, 2987. **HEVYNES**, 2969, 3585, 4625.
- HIDE**, *sb.* head, 2342.
- HIGH**. 'On a high' = on high, aloud, 2456.
- HIGHE**, *v.* to hie, go, 4067.
- HIGHT**, *v. pret.* was called, 21, 639, 1291; *v. pres.* am or is called, 2756, 4144, 4159, 4694, 5063.
- HIR**, *pron.* their, 635, 4789; *adv.* here, 5892.
- HIRE**, *v.* to hear, 576.
- HIS**, is, 4675.
- HOLD**, *pp.* holden, 495, 1710, 1930.
- HOLFPYN**, *pp.* holpen, helped, 5862.
- HOLTYS**, *sb.* holts, woods, 43.
- HOLY**, *adv.* wholly, 76.
- HONOUR**, *sb.* 'Hir honour' = for her credit, 4511.
- HOO**, *adv.* how, 868. **HOUGH**, 1068.
- HOOLE**, *adv.* wholly, 124.
- HOOLE**, *adj.* whole, sound, 5205.
- HOOLY**, *adv.* wholly, 32, 6533.
- HOUGH**, *adv.* how, 1069.
- HOVYD**, *v. pret.* tarried, 4028.
- HUDE**, *sb.* hue, colour, 1560.
- HUSHT**, *adj.* hushed, silent; and so, secret, 320.
- HYE**, *v.* to go, 41, 1955, 3056, 5153, 5934.
- HYM**, *pron.* them, 2919, 3280, 4542, 6150, 6348.
- HYMSELF**, *pron.* themselves, 3083.
- HYNG**, *v. pret.* hung, 5236.
- LAPE**, *sb.* a jest, 3377.
- LAPYNG**, *sb.* jesting, jest, 6135.
- ICHE**, *pron.* each, 2662, 4381.
- ICHEON**, each one, 1800, 1942.
- ICHON**, 1691.
- IE**, 1980. **LEE**, *sb.* eye, 1874, 2772.
- LENTILEST**, *adj.* gentlest, 929.
- LENTILL**, *adj.* gentle, 3, 307, 664.
- LENTILLES**, *sb.* gentles, gentlemen, 1326.
- LENTILLY**, *adv.* gently, 1261.
- LENTELLY**, 3428.
- ILL FARYNG**, *adj.* ill-conditioned, ugly looking, 2152, 3020, 3025.
- IMAGENINGE**, *sb.* plotting, devising, 122.
- IMPORTABILL**, *adj.* intolerable, 1477.
- IN**. 'In swounyng,' 1257, 6754, 6787; 'In falling,' 4425.
- INCONTENENT**, *adv.* incontinently, immediately, 2865.
- INDE**, *sb.* India, 2.
- INDERLY**, *adv.* 675. Like **INLY**.
- INLY**, *adv.* inwardly, thoroughly, 3361, 4986. See **ENDLY**.
- I NOW**, *adv.* enough, 2006, 3637.

- INPERT**, *v.* to injure, 4480.  
**INPRENTID**, *pp.* imprinted, 6698.  
**INTENT**, *sb.* endeavour, 1263.  
**INTO**, *prep.* unto, 3593, 6166, 6271.  
**IOATAN**, a knight overthrown by Sir Darell, 4977.  
**IONATHAS**, a knight of Ethiopia, 3143.  
**Is**, *pron.* his, 237.  
**ISMAELL** the Savage, brother to Generydes and King of Thrace, 1344, 2621, 6914.  
**IT**. Apparently an error for 'yet,' 4723.  
**IUELL**. See **YUELL**.  
**IULYAN**, Emperor of Rome, 3402.  
**IURNAY**, *sb.* journey, 607.  
**I WIS**, *adv.* certainly, surely, 718, 732, 5448. **I WISE**, 2774.  
**KECHEWE**, an error for 'kerchewe,' a kerchief, 4424.  
**KEROHE**, *sb.* kerchief, 3827, 4398.  
**KIRTILL**, *sb.* kirtle, mantle, 4380, 4393, 4395.  
**KNOW**, 3365. **KNOWE**, *pp.* known, 262; *pret.* knew, 323, 450, 974, 1170.  
**KNOWIT**, *v. pres.* 3 *sing.* knoweth, 87. Probably an error of the scribe for 'knoweth it.'  
**KNOWITH**, acknowledgeth, 6621.  
**KNOWLAOHE**, *sb.* knowledge, 1251, 5050.  
**KNOWLACHING**, **KNOWLACHYNG**, *sb.* knowledge, 1236, 2182, 2606, 2640, 3218, 4118, &c.  
**KNOWLENGINGE**, *sb.* knowledge, 235, 277, 316.  
**KNYIGHTWOODE**, *sb.* knighthood, 5032.  
**LAMADONE**, King of Libya, 2171.  
**LAMADON**, 3123. **LAMEDON**, 4842, 5098.  
**LARGE**, *adj.* 'ij myle large,' a space of two miles, 3223.  
**LARGELY**, *adv.* liberally, 3418, 5296.  
**LATE**, *v.* to let; *inf.* 132; *imper.* 607, 940, 2806, 3592, 4405.  
**LAUGE**, *sb.* law, 6941.  
**LAUNDE**, *sb.* lawn, 73.  
**LAVENDER**, *sb.* laundress, 282 1167, 4363, 6969. **LAVENDERE**, 4354.  
**LAWDE**, *sb.* praise, 2877.  
**LAYEN**. 'Withoute layen,' without concealing, 2302.  
**LAYNE**, *v.* to conceal, 717, 772, 810, 2646. **LAYN**, 4385, 4885.  
**LECHE CRAFT**, *sb.* doctor's skill, 5658.  
**LEESE**, *sb.* falsehood, 5992.  
**LEFE**, *v.* to learn, 1316.  
**LEFE**, *adj.* In the phrase 'wheder she were lefe or lothe,' whether she were willing or unwilling, 5507.  
**LEKE**, *v. i.* to like, 2010.  
**LEKE**, *adv.* like, 6732.  
**LEKELY**, *adv.* likely, 670.  
**LEKID**, *v. pret.* liked, 661.  
**LENAGE**, *sb.* lineage, 413, 2438, 2639, 3114, 3873.  
**LENGER**, *adv.* longer, 190, 572, 2897, 5355. **LENGGER**, 2712.  
**LENGEST**, *adv.* longest, 4374.  
**LEPPE**, *v. pret.* leaped, 2262.  
**LESE**, *sb.* to lose, 13, 1133, 2573, 6057.  
**LESE**, *sb.* falsehood, 20, 289, 319, 794, 4936. **LEESE**, 2622, 2652.  
**LESING**, *sb.* falsehood, 4661. **LESYNG**, 5732.  
**LESSE**, *sb.* falsehood, 3902.  
**LESSE**, a mistake for **LESTE**, 39.  
**LEST**, *v.* to last, 899.  
**LEST**, *adj.* active, nimble. Fr. *leste*, 1923, 2146.  
**LESTE**, *subj.* would please, 406.  
**LET**, *v. pret.* let be, allowed it to be supposed, 5067.  
**LETE**, *v. imper.* let, 5731.  
**LETT**, 2200. **LETTE**, *sb.* hindrance, 11, 2873.  
**LETTE**, *v. t.* to hinder, stop, 1752,

- 2671, 6019; *v. i.* to stop, cease, 2470.
- LEVE, *v.* to believe, 186, 1389; to live, 589, 1074, 5948; *imper.* LEVITH, 5619.
- LEVING, *part.* living, 4210.
- LEVER, *adv.* rather, 5616.
- LEYNE, *v.* to conceal, 2284.
- LEYSER, *sb.* leisure, 358, 838. LEYSERE, 3276.
- LIFF, *sb.* life, 3181. LYFFE, 2699.
- LIFT, *v. pret.* left, 4131.
- LIGGING, *pr. p.* lying, 2475. LIGGENG, 3027.
- LIGHT, *v. pret.* lighted, 3046.
- LIKE, *v.* to please; *pret.* LIKID, 5165, 5653.
- LIKENG, *sb.* condition, 6760.
- LIST, *v.* to desire, 154, 656, 5758. 'What here lyst,' what she pleased, 266.
- LIST, *sb.* pleasure. 'On my list' = at my pleasure, 2459.
- LONDYD, *v. pret.* landed, 4193.
- LONG, *adv.* 'To think long' = to long, 6225.
- LONG, *v.* to belong; *pres.* LONGITH, 347; *pret.* LONGYD, 26.
- LOSE, *sb.* a string or lace, 5236.
- LOTHE, *adj.* loathsome, 4302.
- LUCAS, a knight of Persia, slain by Gwynan, 1652, 6028, 6964.
- LUCIDAS, daughter of Amelok, 4843.
- LYBIE, Libya, 2171.
- LYGHT, lieth, 1027.
- LYSTE, *v. pret.* desired, 33.
- LYVEZ. 'A lyvez creature' = a living creature, 3381. Compare Chaucer, Clerk's Tale.
- MADANE, King of Thrace, 2144. In the Roxburghe Club version he is called King of Greece. MADAN, 2920.
- MAGBY, *sb.* ill will, 877.
- MALIOHIAS, a knight of Persia, slain by Generydes, 938, 1484.
- MANASSEN, one of the King of Egypt's allies, 2169. Slain by Lucas, 2482. MANESSEN, 2476.
- MANER. 'Some maner trayne,' some kind of snare or plot, 83, 1438; 'In no maner a wyse,' 259; 'No maner harnesses,' no kind of armour, 2945; 'All maner vitayle,' all kinds of provisions, 3111; 'Some maner waye,' in some way or other, 4478; 'What maner thing,' 4708; 'All maner right,' 5472.
- MANERLY, *adv.* in a becoming maner, 653.
- MASEDEYN, Macedon, 1952. MASEDOYNE, 2085.
- MESSAGE, *sb.* message, 364, 2377, 3165, &c.
- MASSINGER, *sb.* messenger, 1892, 5162. MASSANGER, 3173, 3329. MASSINGER, 5152.
- MASTEREYS, *sb.* efforts, displays of skill, 2778.
- MEANE, *sb.* means, 594, 952, 3160, 6035.
- MECHE, *adj.* much, 1275, 1670, 1949, 5146; *adv.* 3199, 3419, 3445, 5635.
- MEDEN, Sereyne's maid, 264.
- MEDEYN, 274, 298, 299, 304. MEDEYNE, 281.
- MEDLED, *v. pret.* 'Medled with' = encountered, 6134.
- MERILL, *adv.* much, 6451.
- MEND, *sb.* mind, memory, 412, 1073, 3032, 6413; mention, 2506. 'Sithe tyme of mend' = since time within memory, 1772.
- MENDE, 3198, 3434, 4796, 6406. Rhyming with 'fynde,' 5698.
- MENY, *sb.* retinue, attendants, 277; company, 3002.
- MERCAUNDEZ, *sb.* merchants, 4203.
- MERTHIS, *sb.* joyful songs and cries, 3563.
- MERVELYS, *sb.* marvels, 109.
- MESELL, *sb.* a leper, 4237, 4311.
- MESSAVENTURE, *sb.* misadventure, 3848.



- METELY**, *adj.* Of good measure, tall, 432; moderate, 768.  
**ME THINK**, methinks, 2362, 3243.  
**MEVE**, *v. t.* to move, 1760, 4909.  
**MIRABELL**, Clarionas's maid, 716, &c. **MYRABELL**, 797. **MIRABILL**, 3804.  
**Mo**, *adj.* more, 2722, 3908.  
**MOAB**, King of Cappadocia, 1954.  
**MONNE**, *sb.* sorrow, complaint, 2695. 'To make mone' = to complain, lament, 2662.  
**MONPERSON**, a town of Persia, 5987. **MONPERSONE**, 6058. **MOUNPERSON**, 6190.  
**Moo**, *adj.* more, 955, 1110, 1977.  
**MORE**, with a comparative, more bolder, 1628; more wrother, 1568; more stronger, 2160.  
**MORELL**, the name of King Belen's horse, 3286.  
**MORTUALL**, *adj.* mortal, deadly, 6399.  
**MOST**, with a superlative, 929.  
**MOST**, *adj.* greatest, 2708.  
**MOTE**, *v. may*, 668. 'So mote I goo,' 2900, 4639, 5043.  
**MOUNTENER**, the chief city of Persia, 639, &c.  
**MYDDES**, *sb.* midst, 538, 852, 6042.  
**MYNDE**, *sb.* 'To make mynde' = to make mention, 2131. **MYND**, 3016, 4866.  
**MYSGOVERNAUNCE**, *sb.* misgovernment, 4873.  
**MYSTREST**, *v.* to mistrust, 1399, 1413.  
**MYSTREST**, *sb.* mistrust, 1673.  
**MYSTROST**, *sb.* mistrust. An error for 'mystrest,' as it rhymes with 'list,' 5760, 6184.  
**MYSTROSTE**, *v.* to mistrust, 5695, 5762; *pp.* **MYSTROSTID**, 6238.  
**NATANELL**, tutor to Generydes, 337, &c.  
**NAY** or **NAYE**. 'That is noo nay,' there is no denying it, 2277; 'This is noo nay,' 4159, 4288, 4539; 'Said nay' = opposed, 4755, 5456.  
**NAYED**, *pp.* denied, refused, 1797. **NAYDE**, 5248.  
**NE**, *conj.* nor, 4368.  
**NEDE**, *v.* 'That hym nede,' that may be needful for him, 350; 'Them nede,' they needed, 4400.  
**NEE**, *conj.* nor, 3317.  
**NEER**, *adv.* nearer, 5715.  
**Negative**, double, 3317, 3413, 4205, 5361, 5374.  
**New**. 'We are new to begynne,' we have to begin anew, 3108.  
**NICOMEDE**, Nicomedia, 1940. **NY-COMEDE**, 2073.  
**NONYS**. 'For the nonys,' for the occasion, 3289, 5139.  
**NORISE**, *sb.* nurse, 288. **NORYSE**, 286.  
**NOT FOR THY**, *adv.* nevertheless, 235, 813, 917, 3127.  
**NOTHER**, *conj.* neither, 1749, 1817, 3181.  
**NOTHER**, *pron.* other, 1749.  
**NOWNBER**, *v. t.* to number, 1561.  
**NOYETH**, *v. pres.* annoyeth, 5728.  
**NOYTER**, *conj.* neither, 4470.  
**NYE HANDE**, *adv.* near, 2273.  
**NYERE**, *adv.* near, 2531.  
**NYGH HANDE**, *adv.* near, 62, 6335.  
**NYHAND**, *adv.* near, 951.  
**O**. 'o length' = at length, 1778; 'o trough' = in truth, 4286, 4501; 'o my trowth,' 4723.  
**OBEISEAUNCE**, *sb.* obedience, 1096.  
**OBEYSAUNCE**, 6630. **OBYSEAUNCE**, 2435.  
**OBESEAUNCE**, *sb.* obeisance, 652.  
**OBEYSAUNCE**, 2020, 6897.  
**OBETH**, King of Sicily, 1934.  
**OBEY**, *to*, *v.* For this construction see 19, 5782.  
**OBSERVAUNCE**, *sb.* 'To do observance' = to shew respect, 6655.  
**OF** = for, in construction with 'beseech,' 325, 6315, 6498; 'thank,' 5093; 'praye,' 6263, 6432; = on, in construction with

- 'avenge,' 565; 'Sory of,' 597; 'To be of assent' = to assent, 3609; 'Abiding of,' 4328; 'Purveyd of' = provided with, 4649.
- OF, *prep.* off, 2798.
- OFFEND, followed by 'to,' 6171.
- ON. In the phrases 'on huntynge,' 962, 965, 3765, 3775, 5966; 'On lyve' = alive, 3375; 'On sleppe' = asleep, 4063.
- ON, *adj.* one, 1316, 4791; redundant in 2909, 6978.
- ON, *prep.* in. 'On twayn' = in two, 2242, 2632, 4569, 4926; 'On twoo,' 2933, 4598. Of, 4597.
- ON- in compounds = un.
- ONCOPELYD, *pp.* uncoupled, 42.
- ONFORTUNE, *sb.* misfortune, 5339.
- ONHAPPY, *adj.* unhappy, unlucky, 4874; mischievous, 5561.
- ONHORSID, *pp.* unhorsed, 2464.
- ONNESE, *adv.* perhaps for 'vn-  
nethe,' scarcely, 3453.
- ONNETHE, *adv.* scarcely, 977.
- ONTO, *prep.* unto, until, 282, 1288, 3136, 5178.
- ON TOKE, *v. pret.* took on, 3951.
- ONTREW, *adj.* untrue, 120.
- ONTROWTH, *sb.* untruth, 4896.
- ONYS, *adv.* once, 1182, 2492, 2785, 4242, 4303, 5401.
- O PECE, *adv.* quietly, uninterruptedly (? Fr. *en paix*), 1385, 1681, 2417, 2544, 2620, 2766, 3739, 3755, 3920, 4189, 4323, 4581, 4911, 5254, 5627, 6182, 6237, 6347, 6719. OPEESE, 2313. OPESE, 3391, 3500, 4512, 4618.
- OR, *prep.* before, 1185.
- OR, *adv.* before, 917, 1005, 2232, 2968, 6540. OR EUER, 6459.
- ORDENAUNCE, *sb.* array, 2084, 2142; arrangement, 4769.
- ORKENAY, Orkney, 1961.
- OSTAGE, *sb.* hostelry, 64.
- OTHER, *pl.* others, 1587, 3132.
- OTRAN, king of Spain, 3064, 5957.
- OUEB, *adj.* upper, 2996.
- OUEBTHOWE, *pp.* overthrown, 4979.
- OUEB WHARTE, *prep.* across, 6604.
- OUGHT. 'As hym ought,' as was due to him, 142.
- OUREZ, *pron.* ours, 2989; *sb.* hours, 4201.
- OUTRAYTH, outrageth, 2426.
- OWE, *v.* to regard as owing or due, 922, 1329.
- OWTTRAYED, *pp.* outraged, violently treated, beaten, 3491.
- OUTRAYED, 4841. OVTRAYDE, 6068.
- OYTHEB, *conj.* either, 2610.
- PACIENT, *adj.* 'In pacient' = patiently, 6748.
- PALES, *sb.* palace, 4247, 6759.
- PARAVENTURE, *adv.* peradventure, perhaps, 2586.
- PARDE, *int.* verily! Fr. *par dieu*, 731, 3441.
- PARENTYNE, the chief city of India, 5771. PARENTYNN, 378. PAREYNTYN, 970.
- PARTID, *v. pret.* departed, set out, 2113.
- PARTISE, *sb.* parts, 1706.
- PASSITH, *v. pres.* exceedith, 5954.
- PAYDE, *adj.* pleased, 2246.
- PAYN. 'On a payn,' in 1727, is on pain of something which is not mentioned.
- PAYN, *sb.* pains, 68, 1018, 5213. PAYNE, 3412.
- PECE, *adj.* quiet, 320.
- PEERLYS, *sb.* pearls, 3306.
- PEKYS, *sb.* pikes or pickaxes, 2509. See 2161.
- PENSELL, *sb.* a small penon or flag, 2686, 2947, 3245.
- PEOPILL, *sb.* a body of people, 2670.
- PEOPLE. 'A grete people' = a large multitude, 5279.
- PERAVENTURE, *adv.* perchance, 153, 781. PERAVENTOUR, 888.
- PERCE, Persia, 6780.
- PERISSHED, *v. pret.* pierced, 3367.
- PERSE, *sb.* Persia, 620, &c.
- PETEUSE, *adj.* piteous, 3586.

- PETEVOUS, 3953. PETUOSE, 5594, 6584. PETUESE, 6622.
- PETEVOUSLY, *adv.* piteously, 1529.
- PHARES, one of the Sultan of Persia's allies, 2097.
- PIGHT, *v. pret.* pitched, 5134.
- PITEVOUS, *adj.* piteous, 2954.
- PLAYN, *adj.* honest, 6948.
- PLEASE IT = may it please, 3720, 6843. PLEASE IT, 4309, 5400. PLEASIT, 4060.
- PLENTEVOUS, *adj.* plenteous, 620, 1031.
- PLESAUNCE, *sb.* pleasure, delight, 31, 126, 654, 4650, 5114, 6711.
- PONYSSHENG, *sb.* punishing, 6662.
- Possessive case, mark of, omitted, 'Suster sonne,' 283; 'Hevyn kyng,' 2642, 4002, 4427; 'Sowdon powre,' 3420; 'maister harnes,' 3845; 'nyghte rest,' 4030; 'auferius right,' 4134; 'auferius comyng,' 4772; 'prince sonne,' 5185.
- POSTRENE, *sb.* a postern, 2559.
- POYNTE DEVISE, ATTE, perfectly, completely, 3307, 5995.
- POYNTED, *v. pret.* appointed, 2125, 2149.
- POYNTEMENT, *sb.* appointment. 'In ther poyntement,' under their command, 2100, 2178; arrangement, 3006, 3086, 4762.
- PRATYE, *adj.* pretty, 302. PRATY, 4422.
- PRECE, *sb.* crowd, 2453, 6641.
- PREFF, *sb.* proof, 1453, 1496.
- PRELETYS, *sb.* prelates, 3561.
- PRESE, *sb.* press, crowd, 538, 852, 2708, 2726, 5311. PREESE, 2299, 6277.
- PRESENT. 'In present' = present, 3104.
- PREUYD, *pp.* proved, 4.
- PREVYED, *pp.* provided, 5887.
- PRICE, *sb.* value, worth, 2036.
- PRIUITE, *sb.* secrecy, 263.
- PROCESSE, *sb.* story, narrative, 1509, 4615, 5911, 6213.
- PROMES, *sb.* promise, 1328; *v.* to promise, 4654.
- PROWSE, *sb.* prowess, 4231, 4950.
- PUESSENCE, *sb.* puissance, power, 3419.
- PURCHASE, *v.* to acquire, procure, 877, 5198, 5260; *sb.* acquisition, 2812.
- PURVAYE, *v.* to provide, 59, 1026, 1365; *pret.* PURVAYDE, provided, 1298. PURVAYED, 1288; *pp.* PURVAYDE, provided, 1771.
- PURVEY, *v.* to provide, 6455; *pret.* PURVEID, provided, 5310. PURVEYD, 3220, 4276; *pp.* PURVEID, provided, 2082. PURVEYD, 1115, 2889, 3196, 4649, 5139.
- PURVYAUNCE, *sb.* providence, 272.
- PUSAUNCE, *sb.* power, 1951. PUSAUNCE, 1970.
- PUT TO, *v.* to apply, 4948, 5213.
- PYTUES, *adj.* piteous, 6283.
- QUARELL, *sb.* cause of quarrel, claim, 3536, 4561.
- QUETE, *v. pret.* acquitted, 2861.
- QUYK, *adj.* alive, 2576.
- QUYTE, *v. t.* to acquit, 1500; to requite, 3498, 5700; *pret.* requited, 2327; acquitted, 3013; yielded, gave up, 3608; *pp.* requited, 3495, 6975.
- QUYTE AND OLENE, 6364, 6376.
- REAMES, *sb.* realms, 4332.
- REANE, *sb.* rein, 3474.
- REBELL, *adj.* rebellious, 6421.
- RECOMAUNDID, *v. pret.* commended, 5907, 6174.
- REDE, *v.* to advise, 625, 871, 2575.
- REDELY, *adj.* ready, 6305.
- REDEN, *pp.* ridden, 5597.
- REDY, *adj.* near, 3706, 6890.
- REDYEST, *adj.* quickest, nearest, 3700.
- REHERSID, *pp.* mentioned, 1114.
- Relative omitted, 5272.
- REME, *sb.* realm, 19, 496, 1028, 2649, &c.

- REMEMBRYD**, *pp.* reminded. 'Am remembryd' = remember, 619, 2690, 5290.  
**REMEVE**, *v. t.* to remove from, 3223.  
**REMEVID**, *v. pret.* removed, 3015.  
**REMEVYNG**, *part.* removing, 5069.  
**RENNE**, *v. to run*, 930.  
**REPORTE**, *v. to refer*, 4526.  
**REPREFF**, *sb.* reproof, 1451.  
**REQUERE**, *v. to require*, 619, 6586.  
**RESAN**, *sb.* reason, 1061.  
**RESKEWSE**, *sb.* rescue, 4928.  
**RETEYNE**, *v. t.* to restrain, 1543.  
**REVER**, *sb.* river, 1151.  
**REWITH**, *v. pres.* repenteth, 3971.  
**REWLE**, *sb.* revel, 5592. The line is corrupt. Order, 6629.  
**REWLE**, *v. to rule*, 5892.  
**REYNYNG**, running, 3825.  
**RIALL**, *adj.* royal, 1950.  
**RIALLY**, *adv.* royally, 1308, 6910.  
**RIGHTWISE**, *adj.* righteous, 1322; Rightful, 2960, 6669, 6934.  
**RISSE**, *sb.* rush, 1680.  
**RODE**, *sb.* rood, 2445; roadstead, 4106.  
**ROMANS**, *sb.* romances, 1.  
**ROUGHT**, *v. pret.* recked, cared, 50, 1076.  
**ROWNDE**, *adv.* direct, straight, 3364; and so, swiftly. 'Ranne to rownde,' 2627. **ROUNDE**, 3362, 4922.  
**RUBEN**, son of Manassen, 2170, 2792.  
**RUMBER**, *sb.* turmoil, 1377.  
**RYALL**, *adj.* royal, 245.  
**RYNESHED**, *v. pret.* rinsed, 1182.  
**SAD**, *adj.* grave, serious, 3926. **SADDE**, 5832.  
**SADNESSE**, *sb.* soberness, gravity, 1346, 3141.  
**SAFF**, *adj.* safe, 3147.  
**SAMPSON**, one of the King of Egypt's knights, 6053; slain by Generydes, 6362, 6365. **SAMPSONE**, 3138.  
**SANYK**, King of Africa, and father of Serenydes, 2136, 2931, 4864.  
**SAUGYS**, *sb.* sages, wise men, 88.  
**SAVE**, *adv.* safe, 6470.  
**SAVELY**, *adv.* safely, 6127, 6456.  
**SAYE**, *v. pret.* said, 6017.  
**SCOMFITE**, *pp.* discomfited, 570.  
**SEASONE**, *sb.* 'Take your seassone' = take your time, 5825.  
**SECHE**, *v. to seek*, 3997, 4150, 5566. **SECHETH** = seeketh, 2451.  
**SECHING**, *part.* seeking, 5812.  
**SECRETLY**, *adv.* secretly, 3786.  
**SEIGH**, *v. to sigh*, 1416.  
**SEKE**, *adj.* sick, 714, 6632, 6759.  
**SEKERLY**, *adv.* secretly, 359, 867, 5298, 5538; certainly, 2095, 2911, 3695, 3840, 5373. **SEKYRLY**, 6273.  
**SEME**, *v.* 'Him seme,' appear to him, 1981; 'Me semyth' = it seemeth to me, 2427; 'Ye semes' = it seems to you, 6007; 'Her semyth' = she seemeth, 6846.  
**SEMELY**, *adj.* comely, 1918, 2000, 4827.  
**SEMLANTE**, *sb.* semblance, appearance, 4019.  
**SEMYD**. 'Hym semyd' = it seemed to him, 40, 1988; = he seemed, 3311.  
**SEMYNG**, *sb.* 'To his semyng,' as he thought, 4986.  
**SENDE**, *v. pret.* sent, 1896.  
**SENT**, sendeth, 445, 2812, 3334.  
**SEOSYNNE**, *sb.* season, 271.  
**SERENYDES**, wife of Auferius and afterwards of Amelok; daughter of the King of Africa, 21.  
**SEREYNE**, the mother of Generydes, and Queen of Syria, 255; her death, 6638.  
**SERTEYN**. 'In serteyn,' 4978.  
**SERUAGE**, *sb.* servitude, 1848.  
**SERVAGE**, *sb.* slavery, 3344.  
**SERYS**, *sb.* sirs, 6018.  
**SESE**, *v. t.* to cease, 941; *pp.* 6399.  
**SESE**, *v. t.* to stop, 1489, 6435.

- SESILL, Sicily, 1933.  
 SETT, 680. SETTE, *pp.* seated, 387.  
 SEVRE, a city of Syria given to Natanell on his marriage, 6955.  
 SHAPE, *pp.* shapen, 175.  
 SHENDE, *v. t.* to injure, ruin, 1657, 4403; *pp.* SHENT, 4669.  
 SHETT, *pp.* shut, 5773.  
 SHETTE, *v. pret.* shut, 5133, 5876.  
 SICHE, *adj.* such, 1126.  
 SIDE, *adj.* long and flowing, 4398.  
 SITHE, *conj.* since, 587, 800, 805, 1215. In 800 'a' is repeated in error.  
 SKAPE, *v. t.* to escape, 2534, 2849, 5781; *pret.* SKAPID, 4567.  
 SLEE, *v. to* slay, 520, 2367. SLE, 3913, 3927, 4591.  
 SLEPPE, *v. pret.* slept, 3934, 3937, 4037.  
 SLEPPYD, *v. pret.* slept, 161.  
 SMETE, *v. pret.* smote, 2388, 6110.  
 SMETTE, 2355; *pp.* smitten, 579.  
 SMETTE, 6378. SMETYN, 553.  
 So, *adv.* as, 4837.  
 SOFTELY, *adv.* gently, quietly, 2528.  
 SOKYD, *pp.* 234.  
 SOMTYME, *adv.* at one time, 4801.  
 SONE VPPON, *adv.* soon after, 243.  
 SONNER, *adv.* sooner, 6329, 6330.  
 SORGEONS, *sb.* surgeons, 3572.  
 SOTHE, *sb.* truth, 507, 612, 4885.  
 SOTH, 996.  
 SOTHFASTNES, *sb.* truth, 4834, 5612.  
 SOTILTE, *sb.* subtilty, 122; trick, device, 1538.  
 SOWDON, *sb.* sultan, 640, &c.  
 SOWNNE, *v. i.* to sound, tend, 1750.  
 SOWNYNG, *part.* 6339.  
 SPACE, *sb.* 'While I haue lyffe and space' = while I live and move, 2699, 3181.  
 SPECIALLY, error for 'special,' 3570.  
 SPERKELYD, *v. pret.* dispersed, scattered themselves, 6049.  
 SPOBYD, *v. pret.* spurred, 217.  
 STERE, *v. to* stir, move, 6156.  
 STERT, *sb.* 'Made a stert' = rushed, 6699.  
 STOND, *v. to* stand, 4373. STOND-ENG, *part.* 5323.  
 STORE, *sb.* story, 3481.  
 STORY, *sb.* history, 2167.  
 STOUND, *sb.* space of time, 5659.  
 STRAKE, *pret.* struck, 2793, 2794, 2946, 3366, 5126, 6375.  
 STRAYTE, *adv.* strictly, 1462.  
 STRENTHE, *sb.* strength, 6821. A doubtful reading.  
 STRIFF, *sb.* strife, 3160.  
 STROKE, *pret.* struck, 2628, 3514.  
 STRONGETH, an error for 'strongest,' 5779.  
 STRYFF, *v. to* strive, 3373.  
 SUERTE, *sb.* surety, certainty, 2264; security, 4444.  
 SURAUCE, *sb.* an assurance, bond, 6252.  
 SURE, *adj.* secure, safe, 2732, 4575, 4605.  
 SURRE, Syria, 93. SURRY, 99.  
 SUSTELY, 5070. Perhaps an error for 'softely.'  
 SUSTER, *sb.* sister, 4937.  
 SWARD, *sb.* sword, 519, 3400, 3406, 3921. SWARDE, 3480. SWERD, 2707, 3486.  
 SWONNE, *sb.* swoon, 2359.  
 SWORN BROTHER. Knights who had taken an oath of brotherhood to each other were called 'sworn brothers,' 4834.  
 SWOUNE, *sb.* swoon, 4095, 6605.  
 SWOUNYD, *v. pret.* swooned, 4099.  
 SWOUNYNG, *sb.* an error for 'swoune,' 6569; in swounyng, 1257, 6754.  
 SYGHENYNG, *sb.* sighing, 162.  
 SYGREM, a herald, 2256, 4987, 5001, 5044. SEGREM, 6764. SEGRYM, 5986. SEGYREM, 5983.  
 TAK, *pp.* taken, 887.  
 TAKE, *v. to* deliver, 361, 447. TOKE, *pret.* 907.

- TAKE**, *pp.* taken, 226, 946, 2566, 3240, 3977, 5472, 5763, 6882; *pret.* took, 4070, 5536, 6422.  
**TARED**, *v. pret.* tarried, 1287, 2757, 2926, 3352, 4347. **TARYD**, 2240, 2950.  
**TARYNG**, *sb.* tarrying, 1293, 2513.  
**TEGER**, Tigris, 1738.  
**TENDER**, *v.* to treat kindly, 3734; to propose, 5210.  
**THANK**, *sb.* thanks, 2879, 5915. **THANKE**, 3093, 3645.  
**THAT**, redundant in 'what thing that euer fall,' 6789; 'what that she was,' 6832.  
**THE**, *pron.* thy, 4086.  
**THEDER**, *adv.* thither, 217, 1337, 6278.  
**THEDERWARD**, *adv.* thitherward, 1269.  
**THEE**, *v.* to thrive, 668.  
**THEMSELF**, *pron.* themselves, 2596, 3057.  
**THER AS**, *adv.* where, 2668.  
**THERFRO**, *adv.* therefrom, 893.  
**THEYRS**, *pron.* theirs, 2989.  
**THING**, *sb.* things, 1153.  
**THINK**. 'Me think' = I think, 3243, 5408. **THYNK**. 'Vs thynk' = we think, 1782; 'Thinkith me' = seemeth to me, 3337; 'Hym thought' = seemed to him, 5639, 6861.  
**THIS**, *pron.* these, 4402. **THISE**, 1706.  
**THO**, *pron.* those, 26, 2486. **THOO**, 888, 1965, 2958, 4090, 4525, &c.  
**THO**, *adv.* then, 2828.  
**THORE**, *adv.* there, 3394, 4316.  
**THOROUGH**, *prep.* through, 557, 2452.  
**THOROUGHOWT**, *adv.* throughout, 2946.  
**THOUGHT**, *sb.* anxiety, trouble of mind, 2725, 2985, 3234, 4612, 6647.  
**THREFFTE**, *adj.* thriving, 280, 1342.  
**THREFFTY**, *adj.* thrifty, 1134.  
**THRETE**, *v. pret.* threatened, 500.
- THRETING**, *part.* threatening, 539.  
**THRETYNG**, *sb.* threatening, 4086.  
**THROUGHELY**, *adv.* thoroughly, 388.  
**THYNG**, *sb. pl.* things, 202, 466.  
**TIDE**, *sb.* time, 5925.  
**TIDENG**, *sb.* tidings, 1159, 6619. **TIDING**, 2512.  
**To**, *prep.* until, 2781, 5714, 6012. 'Stroke to' = struck at, 3514; at, 6218; for, 6808.  
**TO AND TOO**, more and more, 3378. **TO AND TO**, 5550.  
**TO BRAST**, *v. pret.* broke asunder, 2356, 2495, 5837, 6107.  
**TODER**, *adj.* other, 67, 1504, 2338, 3002, 3012, 3454, 3929, 6736.  
**TO GEDER**, *adv.* together, 179, 1440.  
**TOKE**, *v. pret.* delivered, 683, 1184, 2716, 5238.  
**TOKENYNG**, *sb.* token, sign, 2608. **TOKENNING**, 4626.  
**TOKKYD**, *pp.* tucked, 4397.  
**TONE**, *adj.* one, 1957, 2338.  
**TOO**, *adj.* two, 5879.  
**TRACE**, *sb.* Thrace, 1028, &c. The Roxburghe Club version reads 'Tharse' in these passages, and this removes the difficulty in 2144 compared with 2288. **TRASE**, 2920.  
**TRAPPOUR**, *sb.* trappings, 3305.  
**TRAVELL**, *sb.* labour, toil, 111, 159.  
**TRAYN**, *sb.* stratagem, artifice, 1069, 2140, 4503, 5752, 6419. **TRAYNE**, 4027.  
**TRAYTURLY**, *adv.* traitorously, 2272, 4038, 6417. **TRAYTOURLY**, 6551. This is probably the reading in 2130.  
**TRESONE COLOUR**. If this be the true reading it seems to mean 'treasonable pretext,' 5474.  
**TREST**, *sb.* trust, 4621.  
**TRETE**, *v.* to entreat, 5853.  
**TRETE**, *sb.* treaty, 6355.  
**TREW**, rhyming with 'now,' 5793.  
**TREWAGE**, *sb.* tribute, 1792. **TREV-AGE**, 3343.

- TREWSE, *sb.* truce, 5887. TREWYS, 3006.
- TRIFFOLYS, *sb.* trifles, 4664.
- TROBELYD, *pp.* troubled, 54, 3737. TROBOLID, 3730. TROBOLYD, 5550.
- TROST, *sb.* trust, 265, 786, perhaps for 'tryst,' or 'trest,' as it rhymes with 'lyst.'
- TROST, *v.* to trust, 994, 3760. 'That is to trost' = that is to be trusted, 4356. Perhaps we should read 'trest,' as it rhymes with 'wist' and 'list,' as in 4621.
- TROUGH, *sb.* truth, 107, 816, 2279, 3722, 4473, 5447, &c. TROUGHT, 5437, 6316.
- TROW, *v. t.* to think, 1598, 5455, 5519.
- TROWLY, *adv.* truly, 144.
- TRUSE, *sb.* truss, 4425; truce, 5882.
- TRUSHED, *v. pret.* trussed, packed up, 605.
- TWAYN, *adj.* two, 65. TWAYNE, 108, 1218, 1763. TFWAYNE, 155.
- TWYES, *adv.* twice, 3952, 3969, 6641.
- TYME. 'To tyme,' or 'To the tyme' = until, 2471, 2746, 4228, 6755.
- VAILE, *sb.* valley, 216.
- VALOUR, *sb.* value, 6957.
- VARLAUNCE, *sb.* strife, 5756.
- VELANYE, *sb.* villany, 1358.
- VENGE, *v.* to avenge, 5149.
- Verb of motion omitted, 5282, 6606.
- VERY, *adj.* true, actual, 2623.
- VIAGE, *sb.* journey, 3146, 3331, 5162, 5271.
- VICE, a city of India, 4770, 5778.
- VISITE, *pp.* visited, 4293.
- VITALLE, *sb.* victuals, 3637.
- VMBLY, *adv.* humbly, 600. VM-BELY, 6170, 6567.
- VNCURTESE, *adj.* uncourteous, 6244.
- VNDERTAKE, *v. t.* to be surety for, 3583.
- VNKYLL, *sb.* uncle, 5017. VNKILL, 5028.
- VNNETHE, *adv.* scarcely, 2534, 4946.
- VNQUYTE, *adj.* unrequited, un-avenged, 6038.
- VNWURCHIPFULL, an error for 'And wurchipfull,' 4850.
- VNWYMPILL, *v.* to unveil, 6879.
- VOWARD, *sb.* vanguard, 2018.
- VOYDE, *v.* to avoid, remove oneself, 6101.
- VPON, an error for 'open,' 5721.
- VPPON, *adv.* after, in point of time; in the phrases 'sone vppon,' 1926, 1041; 'anon vppon,' 6009, 6632. On, 2035. 'Came so hastily vppon' = came upon him so hastily, 4787.
- VRE, *sb.* usage, custom, 2788, 4594; use, practice, 6825.
- VTERLY, *adv.* entirely, fully, 3516.
- WAGE, *sb.* wages, hire, 2441, 6511.
- WALOPING, *part.* galloping, 3325.
- WANNE, *v. pret.* won, 1133, 2130, 2237, 2609, 2814; conquered, 3688, 4766.
- WARANTISE, *sb.* 'O warantise,' of a surety, 5938, 6470.
- WARD. 'As to me-ward' = as regards me, 4331.
- WARE, *adj.* careful, cautious, 351, 1084; aware, 2315, 2625, 3040.
- WARENTICE, *sb.* 'O warentice,' of a surety, 174; 'O warentyce,' 287, 6803.
- WARK, *sb.* work, 1171.
- WAWIS, *sb.* waves, 91.
- WAX, *pret.* waxed, 2472.
- WAY, *pl.* 5923.
- WAYTITH AFTER = waiteth for, 2440.
- WEDDER, *sb.* weather, 1403.
- WEDE, *sb.* dress, 4258.
- WEIGHT, *sb.* wight, person, 331, 3852.
- WEIGHT, *adj.* active, nimble, 3361.
- WELCOMYNG, *sb.* welcome, 392, 663.

- WELE**, *adv.* well, 5733.  
**WELEWILLYNG**, *adj.* well-disposed, 964.  
**WELLYD**, *pp.* 'Wele wellyd,' well-disposed, 2089.  
**WENE**, *v.* to think, 4655; *pret.* WEND, 6317. WENDE, 3947.  
**WENYNG**, *part.* 2502, 5636.  
**WENT**, *pp.* gone, 2667, 6443.  
**WERRE**, *sb.* war, 898, 6153.  
**WERS**, *adj.* worse, 1365.  
**WESHT**, *v. pret.* washed, 1182.  
**WESSH**, 4316.  
**WETE**, *v.* to know, 132, 180, 333, 714, 4153, 4432; *pres.* WOTE, 739, 777, 778 (read 'Ye wote ye what;,' see 6858); WOOTE, 891; *pret.* WIST, 153; WYSTE, 53, 913; *imper.* 2 *pl.* WETE, 1300, 2739.  
**WEX**, *pret.* waxed, 3349, 5065, 6608. WEXE, 5173.  
**WEXEN**, *pp.* waxen, grown, 306, 430, 2765.  
**WHAT SOME EUER**, *pron.* whatsoever, 4556.  
**WHAT TYME**, whenever, 4225.  
**WHECHE**, *pron.* which, 5389.  
**WHEDER**, whether, 914.  
**WHEELS**, *adv.* whiles, 4037.  
**WHERE**, *adv.* whereas, 1134.  
**WHO IS**, whose, 353.  
**WIDDED**, *pp.* wedded, 1080.  
**WIGHT**, *sb.* weight, 2163.  
**WIGHT**, *adj.* nimble, swift, 3634, 4573, 5055.  
**WILL**, *adv.* well, 371, 899, 1835, 3698, 6941. WILE, 581. WILL, 'And it wilbe' = if it may be, 6516. See WOLD.  
**WISE**, *sb.* manner, 1036, 1045, 5780.  
**WITHOUTEN**, *prep.* without, 341, 794, 1171, 3706; WITHOUTYN, 20.  
**WITHOUTEN**, *adv.* without, 3917.  
**WITTE**, *sb.* blame, 869.  
**WITTELY**, *adv.* wisely, 1051.  
**WOLD**, would, 376, 1036. 'And it would be' = if it might be, 214, 6432; 'If it wold be,' 6500. WULD, 374.  
**WOLLE**, *v.* will, 4403, 4432.  
**WONDER**, *adj.* wonderful, 501, 1171, 1418, 2074, 4307, 5327; *adv.* wonderfully, 1414, 3447, 4696.  
**WONNE**, *pp.* conquered, 6398.  
**WOO**, *adj.* sorrowful, 915, 2371, 2578, 3484, 6652.  
**WOODE**, *adj.* furious, mad, 2983.  
**WOOTE**, *v. pres.* knoweth, 891; *imper.* know, 6858.  
**WORLD**. 'A world to here,' 2205.  
**WORTH**, in the phrase 'woo worth' = woe be to, 4871.  
**WOTE**, *v.* to know, 2696.  
**WOWETH**, *v. pres.* woeth, 4442.  
**WRAUGHT**, *sb.* wrath, 1373.  
**WREKE**, *pp.* avenged, 1824.  
**WULL**, *v.* will, 2807.  
**WURCHIPPE**, *sb.* honour, dignity, credit, reputation, 35, 404, 616, 882, 2896, 2911, 3417.  
**WURCHIPPE**, *v.* to honour, 5179.  
**WYMPELYD**, *pp.* wrapped in a wimple or veil, 6858.  
**WYNNE**, *v.* to conquer, 5159.  
**WYSE**, *sb.* manner, 34. 'In lyke wyse,' in like manner, 102.  
**YAE**, *int.* yea, 294.  
**YCHE**, *pron.* each, 698.  
**YDONYE**, a town of Persia, 6964.  
**YEDE**, *pret.* went, 2503, 3458.  
**YEE**, *sb.* eye, 4549, 4984.  
**YEFERUS**, King of Ermony, 1957. Called also Zeferus.  
**YEET**, *sb.* gift, 3441; *pl.* YEETEZ, 3569. YEFTYS, 3094.  
**YELDE**, *pp.* yielded, 4781. YELD, 6620.  
**YENDER**, *adv.* yonder, 1027, 2318, 2425, 2869, 4552, &c.; *adj.* 2777, 3704, 6019.  
**YMAGENING**, *sb.* device, plot, 5747.



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>YMAGENYNG, <i>pr. p.</i> plotting, designing, 963.</p> <p>YND, <i>sb.</i> India, 375, 2505, 5598.</p> <p>YNDLY, <i>adv.</i> 3096. See INLY.</p> <p>YOUB, <i>pron.</i> yours, 5096.</p> <p>YOUBEZ, <i>pron.</i> yours, 2869.</p> | <p>YSORES, son of Sanyk, 4869.</p> <p>YUELL the Barn, a knight of Egypt, 3618, 4167. IUELL, 3717.</p> <p>ZEFERUS, King of Ermony. Called also Yeferus, 2092.</p> |
|--|--|

---

ERRATUM.

p. 235, col. 2, line 12, under HUDE, *for* hue, colour, *read* hide.

*YueLL*  
*YUELL*  
*YUELL*

*YueLL*  
*YUELL*  
*YUELL*  
*YUELL*  
*YUELL*

*The Publications for 1870 (one guinea) are :—*

40. English Gilda, their Statutes and Customs, 1389 A.D. Edit. Toulmin Smith and Lucy T. Smith, an Essay on Gilds and Trades-Unions, by Dr. L. Brentano. 21s.
41. William Lander's Minor Poems. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 3s.
42. Bernardus De Cura Rei Familiaris, Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s.
43. Ratis Raving, and other Moral and Religious Pieces. Ed. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 3s.

*The Publications for 1871 (one guinea) are :—*

44. The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathe, or The Holy Grail: from the Vernon MS.; W. de Worde's and Pynson's Lives of Joseph; ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 5s.
45. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, by Henry Sweet, Esq., B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. 10s.
46. Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross Poems, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.
47. Sir David Lyndesay's Works, Part V., ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 3s.
48. The Times' Whistle, and other Poems, by R. C., 1616; ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s.

*The Publications for 1872 (one guinea) are :—*

49. An Old English Miscellany, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, Religious Poems of the 15th cent., ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 10s.
50. King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. Part II. 10s.
51. The Life of St Juliana, 2 versions, A.D. 1230, with translations; ed. T. O. Cockayne and E. Broock.
52. Palladius on Husbandrie, english (ab. 1420 A.D.), ed. Rev. Barton Lodge, M.A. Part I. 10s.

*The Publications for 1873 (one guinea) are :—*

53. Old-English Homilies, Series II., and three Hymns to the Virgin and God, 13th-century, with music to two of them, in old and modern notation; ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. 8s.
54. The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C: Richard the Redeles (by William, the author of the *Vision* and *The Crowned King*; ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18s.
55. Generydes, a Romance, ed. ab. 1440 A.D., W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part I. 3s.

*The Publications for 1874 (one guinea) are :—*

56. The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy, in alliterative verse; ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and late Rev. G. A. Panton. Part II. 10s. 6d.
57. The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"; in four Texts, edited by the Rev. R. M. M.A., LL.D. Part I, with 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d.
58. The Blioking Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. Part I. 8s.

*The Publications for 1875 (one guinea) are :—*

59. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 15s.
60. Meditacyons on the Soper of Our Lorde (perhaps by Robert of Brunno), edited from the MSS. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 2s. 6d.
61. The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Erceuldoune, printed from five MSS.; edited by Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d.

*The Publications for 1876 (one guinea) are :—*

62. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III. 15s.
63. The Blioking Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part II. 4s.
64. Francis Thynne's Emblemes and Epigrams, A.D. 1600, ed. F. J. Furnivall. 4s.
65. Be Domes Dunge (Bede's *De Die Judicii*), &c., ed. J. R. Lumby, B.D. 2s.

*The Publications for 1877 (one guinea) are :—*

66. The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part IV, with 2 autotypes. 10s.
67. Notes on Piers Plowman, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. Part I. 21s.

EXTRA SERIES.

*The Publications for 1867 (one guinea) are :—*

- I. William of Palerne; or, William and the Werwolf. Re-edited from the unique MS. in King's Col. Cambridge, by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 13s.
- II. Early English Pronunciation, with especial Reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part I. 10s.

*The Publications for 1868 (one guinea) are :—*

- III. Caxton's Book of Curtesye, in Three Versions. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 7s. 6d.
- IV. Havelok the Dane. Re-edited by the Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s.
- V. Chaucer's Boethius. Edited from the two best MSS. by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 12s.
- VI. Chevelere Assigne. Re-edited from the unique MS. by H. H. Gibbs, Esq., M.A. 3s.

*The Publications for 1869 (one guinea) are :—*

- VII. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part II. 10s.
- VIII. Queen Elizabeth's Academy, &c. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. Essays on early Italian and German B. of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti and Dr. E. Oswald. 13s.
- IX. Awdeley's Fraternite of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat, &c. Ed. E. Viles and F. J. Furnivall. 7s.

*The Publications for 1870 (one guinea) are :—*

- X. Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, Dyetary of Helth, 1542, Barnes in Defence of the B. 1542-3. Ed. F. J. Furnivall. 18s.
- XI. Barbour's Bruce, Part I. Ed. from MSS. and editions, by Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s.

*The Publications for 1871 (one guinea) are :—*

- XII. England in Henry VIII.'s Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole and Lupset, by Thomas Stait Chaplain to Henry VIII. Ed. J. M. Cowper. Part II. 12s. (Part I. is preparing.)
- XIII. A Supplicacyon of the Beggars, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., ed. F. J. Furnivall; with a Supplicacyon to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde; A Supplicacyon of the Poore Commons; and The Decaye of England's Great Multitude of Sheep, ed. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s.
- XIV. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part III. 10s.

# Early English Text Society.

The Subscription, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year [and £1 1s. (Large per, £2 12s. 6d.) additional for the EXTRA SERIES], due in advance on the 1st of FEBRUARY, and should be paid either to the Society's Account at the Head Office of the Bank, Princes Street, London, E.C., or by Cheque or Money-Order (made payable to the Chief Office, London) to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 9, Milner Street, London, N., and crossed 'Union Bank.' (United-States Subscribers must pay duty and carriage to the States, 3s. a year extra for the Original Series, and 2s. a year for the Extra Series.) The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after in the Lists.

## ORIGINAL SERIES.

*The Publications for 1878 will be:—*

The "Cursor Mundi," in 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part V. 25s.  
Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s.  
Generydes, a Romance, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Part II. 4s.

*Preparing:—*

Selected English Works of Wyclif, ed. F. D. Matthew.  
Tall of Rauf Colyyear, ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray.  
Lay Folk's Mass-Book, four texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons.  
Lilias, Part IV., containing Preface, Index, and Glossary. Edited by H. B. Wheatley.  
Psalms, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. John Wood.  
Blicking Homilies, 971 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. Part III.  
Wayne Poems, ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A.  
Liam of Nassington's Mirror of Life, ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A.  
The Early English Verse Lives of Saints, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann.  
Primer of the Lyf of Manhode, in the Northern Dialect, ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A.  
Old-Saxon and Early English Psalters, ed. W. Aldis Wright and J. Wood.  
Old-Saxon Metrical Lives of Saints, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat.  
Early English Homilies, 13th century, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.  
The Gospel of Nicodemus, ed. Prof. Wülcker.  
The Golden Age, ed. H. B. Wheatley and S. J. Herrtage, B.A. [At Press].  
The Chantier's Quadrilogus, englished, ed. H. Cromie, B.A.  
The Legend of the Holy Grail, ed. H. B. Wheatley and S. J. Herrtage, B.A. [At Press].

## EXTRA SERIES.

*The Publications for 1878 will be chosen from:—*

X. Lancelot's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall. Part IV. 15s.  
XI. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. 6s.  
XII. The Romanorum (englished ab. 1440), ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. [At Press].  
XIII. The "England in Henry VIII's time." Part I. Starkey's Life and Letters, ed. S. J. Herrtage.  
XIV. The Bruce, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat. Part IV.

*Preparing:—*

XV. Charlemagne Romances:—I. Sir Ferumbras, from the Ashm. MS. 33, ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. [At Press].  
II. The Devis of Hamton, ed. Dr. E. Kölbing. Ipomyden, ed. J. Wood.  
XVI. The Legend of Brunne's Handlyng Synne, A.D. 1363, ed. F. J. Furnivall.  
XVII. The Legend of Warwick (14th cent. or Auchinleck MS. version), ed. Dr. J. A. H. Murray & Prof. Zupitza. Part I. [At Press].

XVIII. The Alliterative Romance of Alexander, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A.

*The Publications for 1872 (one guinea) are:—*

I. Robert Crowley's Thirty-One Epigrams, *Voyce of the Last Trumpet*, *Way to Wealth*, &c., 1550-1 A.D., edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s.  
II. Chaucer's Treatise on the Astrolabe. Ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 6s.  
III. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., with an Appendix of four contemporary English Tracts (1542-48), edited by Dr. J. A. H. Murray. Part I. 10s.

*The Publications for 1873 (one guinea) are:—*

IV. The Complaynt of Scotlande, 1549 A.D., ed. Dr. Murray. Part II. 8s.  
V. Our Ladyes Myroure, A.D. 1530, ed. Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A. 24s.

*The Publications for 1874 (one guinea) are:—*

VI. Lancelot's History of the Holy Grail (ab. 1450 A.D.), from the French of Sires Robiers de Borron, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. Part I. 8s.  
VII. Barbour's Bruce, Part II., ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s.  
VIII. Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderick Mors (ab. 1542); and The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Cite of London, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s.  
IX. Early English Pronunciation, by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. Part IV. 10s.

*The Publications for 1875, 1876, and 1877 (one guinea each year) are:*

X. Lancelot's History of the Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall, Esq. Part II. 10s. 1875  
XI. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. 20s. 1875  
XII. Guy of Warwick, 15th-century Version, ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part II. 14s. 1876  
XIII. The English Works of John Fisher, Bp of Rochester (died 1535), edited by Prof. J. E. B. Mayor, M.A. Part I, the Text. 36s. 1876  
XIV. Lancelot's Holy Grail, ed. F. J. Furnivall. Part III. 10s. 1877  
XV. Barbour's Bruce. Part III, ed. Rev. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s. 1877

LONDON: N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.  
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.

■  
!







This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

DUE SEP 22 1972

2295

CANCELLED

CANCELLED  
NOV 20 1979  
NOV 20 1973 H

3090768

NOV 6 1970 H

CANCELLED

WIDENER  
BOOK DUE  
FEB 8 1982  
72 FEB 10 1982

31844000

DEC 07 1970 H

CANCELLED

WIDENER  
BOOK DUE  
MAY 4 1981  
MAY 4 1981



11472.55  
Generydes,  
Widener Library

002995547



3 2044 086 713 237